

# ***DrayTek***

## **Vigor/PPBX 2820 Series**



*Your reliable networking solutions partner*

## ***User's Guide***

**V2.2**



# **Vigor*IPPBX* 2820 Series User's Guide**

**Version: 2.2**

**Based on Firmware Version: V3.5.4**

**Date: 02/02/2010**

## Copyright Information

### Copyright Declarations

Copyright 2010 All rights reserved. This publication contains information that is protected by copyright. No part may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language without written permission from the copyright holders.

### Trademarks

The following trademarks are used in this document:

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
- Windows, Windows 95, 98, Me, NT, 2000, XP, Vista and Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corp.
- Apple and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Other products may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective manufacturers.

## Safety Instructions and Approval

### Safety Instructions

- Read the installation guide thoroughly before you set up the router.
- The router is a complicated electronic unit that may be repaired only be authorized and qualified personnel. Do not try to open or repair the router yourself.
- Do not place the router in a damp or humid place, e.g. a bathroom.
- The router should be used in a sheltered area, within a temperature range of +5 to +40 Celsius.
- Do not expose the router to direct sunlight or other heat sources. The housing and electronic components may be damaged by direct sunlight or heat sources.
- Do not deploy the cable for LAN connection outdoor to prevent electronic shock hazards.
- Keep the package out of reach of children.
- When you want to dispose of the router, please follow local regulations on conservation of the environment.

### Warranty

We warrant to the original end user (purchaser) that the router will be free from any defects in workmanship or materials for a period of two (2) years from the date of purchase from the dealer. Please keep your purchase receipt in a safe place as it serves as proof of date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, we will, at our discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components, without charge for either parts or labor, to whatever extent we deem necessary to restore the product to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be offered solely at our discretion. This warranty will not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions. The warranty does not cover the bundled or licensed software of other vendors. Defects which do not significantly affect the usability of the product will not be covered by the warranty. We reserve the right to revise the manual and online documentation and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation to notify any person of such revision or changes.

### Be a Registered Owner

Web registration is preferred. You can register your Vigor router via <http://www.draytek.com>.

### Firmware & Tools Updates

Due to the continuous evolution of DrayTek technology, all routers will be regularly upgraded. Please consult the DrayTek web site for more information on newest firmware, tools and documents.

<http://www.draytek.com>

## European Community Declarations

Manufacturer: DrayTek Corp.

Address: No. 26, Fu Shing Road, HuKou Township, HsinChu Industrial Park, Hsin-Chu County, Taiwan 303

Product: VigorIPPBX 2820

DrayTek Corp. declares that VigorIPPBX 2820 of routers are in compliance with the following essential requirements and other relevant provisions of R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EEC.

The product conforms to the requirements of Electro-Magnetic Compatibility (EMC) Directive 2004/108/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN55022/Class B and EN55024/Class B.

The product conforms to the requirements of Low Voltage (LVD) Directive 2006/95/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN60950-1.

## Regulatory Information

### Federal Communication Commission Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device may accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Please visit <http://www.draytek.com/user/AboutRegulatory.php>.



This product is designed for DSL, ISDN, and POTS network throughout the EC region and Switzerland with restrictions in France. Please see the user manual for the applicable networks on your product.

## Table of Contents

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>Chapter 1: Preface .....</b>  | <b>1</b>  |
| 1.1 Web Configuration Buttons Explanation .....                                | 1         |
| 1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors .....  | 2         |
| 1.2.1 For VigorIPPBX 2820 .....  | 3         |
| 1.2.2 For VigorIPPBX 2820n .....   | 5         |
| 1.3 Hardware Installation .....  | 7         |
| 1.4 ISDN Phone Adapter Installation .....                                      | 8         |
| 1.5 Printer Installation .....   | 9         |
| <b>Chapter 2: Configuring Basic Settings .....</b>                             | <b>15</b> |
| 2.1 Changing Password .....  | 15        |
| 2.2 Quick Start Wizard .....   | 17        |
| 2.2.1 PPPoE/PPPoA .....  | 18        |
| 2.2.2 1483 Bridged IP .....  | 20        |
| 2.2.3 1483 Routed IP .....   | 21        |
| 2.3 IPPBX Wizard .....   | 22        |
| 2.3.1 Extension & Group Setup .....  | 22        |
| 2.3.2 SIP Trunk Setup .....  | 24        |
| 2.3.3 Office Hours Setup .....   | 25        |
| 2.4 Online Status .....  | 27        |
| 2.5 Saving Configuration .....   | 30        |
| <b>Chapter 3: Applications .....</b>   | <b>31</b> |
| 3.1 The Registration of 50 IP-based Telephone/Extensions .....                 | 31        |
| 3.2 The IP Registration from Remote Site (through WAN Connection) .....        | 32        |
| 3.3 The Integration IP Registration with SIP Server .....                      | 33        |
| 3.4 The Integration VoIP Communications via SIP Server .....                   | 34        |
| 3.5 The Integration with PSTN telephony .....                                  | 35        |
| 3.6 The Added ISDN Telephony .....   | 36        |
| 3.7 The Integrated ISDN line .....   | 37        |
| 3.8 The 4 B Channels of Two ISDN Lines .....                                   | 38        |
| 3.9 The Integration of ISDN PBX with One ISDN Line .....                       | 39        |
| 3.10 The Integration of ISDN PBX with One ISDN Line-2 .....                    | 40        |
| 3.11 The Deployment of ISDN PBX and PSTN Network .....                         | 41        |
| 3.12 The Integration of ISDN Telephony and PSTN Network .....                  | 42        |
| 3.13 The Integration of ISDN Telephony, PSTN Network and VoIP Connection ..... | 43        |
| <b>Chapter 4: Tutorial .....</b>   | <b>45</b> |
| 4.1 Create a LAN-to-LAN Connection Between Remote Office and Headquarter ..... | 45        |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 4.2 Create a Remote Dial-in User Connection Between the Teleworker and Headquarter.....        | 53  |
| 4.3 QoS Setting Example.....   | 57  |
| 4.4 LAN – Created by Using NAT .....   | 61  |
| 4.5 Upgrade Firmware for Your Router .....   | 63  |
| 4.6 Request a certificate from a CA server on Windows CA Server .....                          | 66  |
| 4.7 Request a CA Certificate and Set as Trusted on Windows CA Server .....                     | 70  |
| 4.8 How to achieve DID (Direct Inward Dialing) with SIP Alias?.....                            | 72  |
| 4.9 How to use Call Parking?.....  | 76  |
| 4.10 How to set up VigorPhone 350 with Vigor/PPBX2820 series by using Auto-Provisioning? ..... | 78  |
| 4.11 How to configure Hunt Group?.....   | 83  |
| 4.12 How to use Auto Attendant?.....   | 87  |
| 4.13 How to use Voice Mail? .....  | 93  |
| 4.14 How to configure and use the MWI on Vigor/PPBX 2820? .....                                | 99  |
| 4.15 How to register extensions to Vigor/PPBX 2820? .....                                      | 102 |

---

## **Chapter 5: Reference - Advanced Web Configuration..... 107**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 5.1 WAN .....                                       | 107 |
| 5.1.1 Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network..... | 107 |
| 5.1.2 Network Connection by 3G USB Modem .....      | 108 |
| 5.1.3 General Setup.....                            | 108 |
| 5.1.4 Internet Access .....                         | 111 |
| 5.1.5 Multi-PVCs .....                              | 127 |
| 5.1.6 Load-Balance Policy .....                     | 132 |
| 5.2 LAN .....                                       | 134 |
| 5.2.1 Basics of LAN .....                           | 134 |
| 5.2.2 General Setup.....                            | 136 |
| 5.2.3 Static Route .....                            | 139 |
| 5.2.4 VLAN.....                                     | 141 |
| 5.2.5 Bind IP to MAC .....                          | 143 |
| 5.3 NAT .....                                       | 144 |
| 5.3.1 Port Redirection .....                        | 145 |
| 5.3.2 DMZ Host.....                                 | 147 |
| 5.3.3 Open Ports.....                               | 149 |
| 5.4 Firewall .....                                  | 151 |
| 5.4.1 Basics for Firewall.....                      | 151 |
| 5.4.2 General Setup.....                            | 153 |
| 5.4.3 Filter Setup .....                            | 155 |
| 5.4.4 DoS Defense .....                             | 162 |
| 5.5 Objects Settings .....                          | 165 |
| 5.5.1 IP Object .....                               | 165 |
| 5.5.2 IP Group .....                                | 167 |
| 5.5.3 Service Type Object .....                     | 169 |
| 5.5.4 Service Type Group.....                       | 170 |
| 5.5.5 Keyword Object .....                          | 171 |
| 5.5.6 Keyword Group.....                            | 172 |
| 5.5.7 File Extension Object.....                    | 173 |
| 5.5.8 IM Object .....                               | 175 |

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| 5.5.9 P2P Object.....                 | 177 |
| 5.5.10 Misc Object .....              | 178 |
| 5.6 CSM .....                         | 179 |
| 5.6.1 IM/P2P Filter Profile.....      | 181 |
| 5.6.2 URL Content Filter Profile..... | 181 |
| 5.6.3 Web Content Filter Profile..... | 186 |
| 5.7 Bandwidth Management .....        | 188 |
| 5.7.1 Sessions Limit.....             | 188 |
| 5.7.2 Bandwidth Limit .....           | 189 |
| 5.7.3 Quality of Service.....         | 190 |
| 5.8 Applications .....                | 197 |
| 5.8.1 Dynamic DNS .....               | 197 |
| 5.8.2 Schedule .....                  | 199 |
| 5.8.3 RADIUS .....                    | 201 |
| 5.8.4 UPnP.....                       | 202 |
| 5.8.5 IGMP .....                      | 204 |
| 5.8.6 Wake on LAN.....                | 205 |
| 5.9 VPN and Remote Access.....        | 206 |
| 5.9.1 Remote Access Control.....      | 206 |
| 5.9.2 PPP General Setup .....         | 207 |
| 5.9.3 IPSec General Setup.....        | 208 |
| 5.9.4 IPSec Peer Identity .....       | 209 |
| 5.9.5 Remote Dial-in User .....       | 211 |
| 5.9.6 LAN to LAN.....                 | 214 |
| 5.9.7 Connection Management.....      | 223 |
| 5.10 Certificate Management.....      | 224 |
| 5.10.1 Local Certificate .....        | 224 |
| 5.10.2 Trusted CA Certificate .....   | 226 |
| 5.10.3 Certificate Backup.....        | 227 |
| 5.11 ISDN .....                       | 227 |
| 5.11.1 Basic Concept.....             | 227 |
| 5.11.2 General Setup.....             | 228 |
| 5.11.3 Dial to Single ISP.....        | 231 |
| 5.11.4 Dial to Dual ISPs.....         | 232 |
| 5.11.5 Call Control .....             | 233 |
| 5.12 IP PBX.....                      | 235 |
| 5.12.1 Extension .....                | 236 |
| 5.12.2 Line Setting.....              | 240 |
| 5.12.3 Dial Plan .....                | 245 |
| 5.12.4 PBX System.....                | 249 |
| 5.12.5 PBX Status .....               | 272 |
| 5.13 Wireless LAN .....               | 273 |
| 5.13.1 Basic Concepts.....            | 273 |
| 5.13.2 General Setup.....             | 275 |
| 5.13.3 Security .....                 | 278 |
| 5.13.4 Access Control.....            | 280 |
| 5.13.5 WPS.....                       | 281 |
| 5.13.6 WDS.....                       | 283 |
| 5.13.7 Advanced Setting.....          | 286 |
| 5.13.8 AP Discovery .....             | 287 |
| 5.13.9 Station List .....             | 288 |



|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| 5.14 System Maintenance.....       | 289 |
| 5.14.1 System Status.....          | 289 |
| 5.14.2 TR-069 .....                | 291 |
| 5.14.3 Administrator Password..... | 292 |
| 5.14.4 Configuration Backup .....  | 292 |
| 5.14.5 Syslog/Mail Alert .....     | 294 |
| 5.14.6 Time and Date .....         | 295 |
| 5.14.7 Management.....             | 296 |
| 5.14.8 Reboot System .....         | 297 |
| 5.14.9 Firmware Upgrade .....      | 298 |
| 5.15 Diagnostics.....              | 299 |
| 5.15.1 Dial-out Trigger .....      | 299 |
| 5.15.2 Routing Table .....         | 300 |
| 5.15.3 ARP Cache Table .....       | 300 |
| 5.15.4 DHCP Table.....             | 301 |
| 5.15.5 NAT Sessions Table .....    | 301 |
| 5.15.6 Ping Diagnosis.....         | 302 |
| 5.15.7 Data Flow Monitor.....      | 303 |
| 5.15.8 Traffic Graph.....          | 304 |
| 5.15.9 Trace Route .....           | 305 |

---

## **Chapter 6: Trouble Shooting.....307**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 6.1 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not.....                               | 307 |
| 6.2 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not ..... | 308 |
| 6.3 Pinging the Router from Your Computer .....                                     | 310 |
| 6.4 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not.....                                 | 312 |
| 6.5 Problems for 3G Network Connection .....  | 315 |
| 6.6 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary .....                           | 316 |
| 6.7 Contacting Your Dealer .....  | 316 |

---

## **Appendix: Hardware Specifications.....317**



# Chapter 1: Preface

---

VigorIPPBX 2820 is an ADSL and broadband router with WAN interface. It provides policy-based load-balance, fail-over and BOD (Bandwidth on Demand), also it integrates IP layer QoS, NAT session/bandwidth management to help users control works well with large bandwidth.

By adopting hardware-based VPN platform and hardware encryption of AES/DES/3DS, the router increases the performance of VPN greatly, and offers several protocols (such as IPSec/PPTP/L2TP) with up to 32 VPN tunnels.


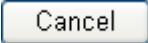
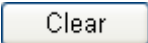
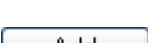


The object-based design used in SPI (Stateful Packet Inspection) firewall allows users to set firewall policy with ease. CSM (Content Security Management) provides users control and management in IM (Instant Messenger) and P2P (Peer to Peer) more efficiency than before. By the way, DoS/DDoS prevention and URL/Web content filter strengthen the security outside and control inside.

VigorIPPBX 2820 can provide up to 50 extensions setup to let all registered IP phones in LAN or remote sites around the world to have unlimited free calls through Internet. Moreover, VigorIPPBX 2820 is able to establish multiple networking architectures corresponding to your current desire and future needs of growing communication. Its ISDN/PSTN compatibility lets you move from simple VoIP solution such as IP phone and Softphone to integrate with comprehensive networking infrastructure, such as ISDN and Analog phone line any time you need.

Object-based firewall is flexible and allows your network be safe. In addition, through VoIP function, the communication fee for you and remote people can be reduced.

## 1.1 Web Configuration Buttons Explanation

Several main buttons appeared on the web pages are defined as the following:

|   |  |
|---|--|
|  | Save and apply current settings.   |
|  | Cancel current settings and recover to the previous saved settings.  |
|  | Clear all the selections and parameters settings, including selection from drop-down list. All the values must be reset with factory default settings. |
|  | Add new settings for specified item.   |
|  | Edit the settings for the selected item.   |
|  | Delete the selected item with the corresponding settings.  |

**Note:** For the other buttons shown on the web pages, please refer to Chapter 4 for detailed explanation.

## 1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors

Before you use the Vigor router, please get acquainted with the LED indicators and connectors first.

The displays of LED indicators and connectors for the routers are different slightly. The following sections will introduce them respectively. If the model of router you have does not support ISDN and/or VoIP function, simply ignore the relational description.

### Definitions for ISDN Ports

Below shows the names that displayed on front panel of the device and the WEB UI of this device.

Both **ISDN1** and **ISDN2** port on front panel of the device are configurable for connecting phone or accessing Internet according to the settings that you adjust on WEB UI.

**ISDN1-TE /ISDN2-TE** (shown on WEB UI) is a port that used to connect ISDN line.

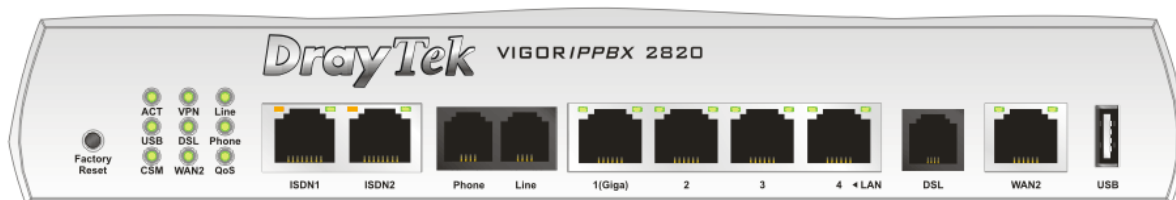
**ISDN1-S0/ISDN2-S0** (shown on WEB UI) is a port that used to connect ISDN phone.

Please refer to **IP PBX>>PBX System>>Phone Settings** in this User's Guide for detailed information.



**Warning:** When the orange LED lights (means ISDN NT mode), the ISDN port can be used to connect phone only. Wrong ISDN connection might cause severe damage on your device.

## 1.2.1 For VigorIPPBX 2820



| LED            | Status   | Explanation   |
|----------------|----------|---|
| ACT (Activity) | Blinking | The router is powered on and running normally.  |
|                | Off      | The router is powered off.  |
| USB            | On       | A USB device is connected and active.   |
|                | Blinking | The data is transmitting.   |
| CSM            | On       | The profile of CSM (Content Security Management) for IM/P2P application is enabled from <b>Firewall &gt;&gt; General Setup</b> . (Such profile is established under <b>CSM</b> menu). |
| VPN            | On       | VPN tunnel is up and down.  |
| DSL            | On       | The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link.  |
|                | Blinking | Slowly: The modem is ready.<br>Quickly: The connection is training.   |
| WAN 2          | On       | The WAN2 connection is ready.   |
|                | Blinking | It will blink while transmitting data.  |
| Line           | On       | A PSTN phone call comes (in and out). However, when the phone call is disconnected, the LED will be off about six seconds later.  |
|                | Off      | There is no PSTN phone call.  |
| Phone          | On       | The phone connected to this port is off-hook.   |
|                | Off      | The phone connected to this port is on-hook.  |
|                | Blinking | A phone call comes.   |
| QoS            | On       | The QoS function is active.   |

### LED on Connector

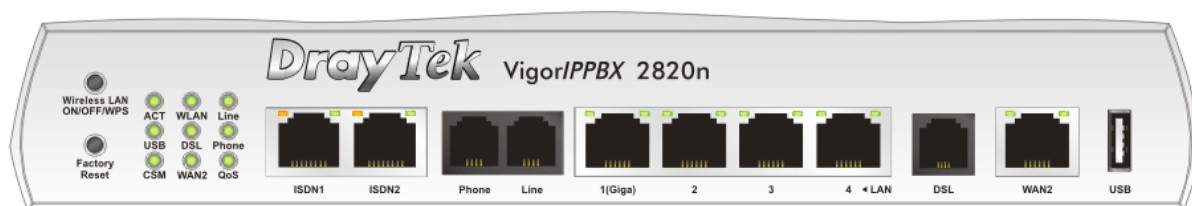
|             |                   |          |   |
|-------------|-------------------|----------|---|
| ISDN1/2     | Left LED (Orange) | On       | ISDN-S0 (ISDN-NT) mode is active configured from <b>IP PBX&gt;&gt;PBX System&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> and an ISDN phone adapter is connected.                  |
|             |                   | Blinking | ISDN S0 (ISDN-NT) mode configured from <b>IP PBX&gt;&gt;PBX System&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> is active and an ISDN phone adapter is not connected.              |
|             |                   | Off      | It means ISDN TE mode is active which is configured from <b>IP PBX&gt;&gt;PBX System&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> .  |
|             | Right LED (Green) | On       | A phone adapter with phone set has been connected (ISDN-S0) or ISDN line has been connected (ISDN-TE).  |
|             |                   | Blinking | ISDN-S0 (ISDN-NT) mode, it means an ISDN phone is off-hook or a phone call comes.<br>In ISDN-TE mode, it means data, fax or voice (phone call) is transmitting. |
|             |                   | Off      | It will be off if there is nothing connected.   |
| LAN 1(Giga) | Left LED (Green)  | On       | The port is connected.  |
|             |                   | Off      | The port is disconnected.   |
|             |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.   |
|             | Right LED (Green) | On       | The port is connected with 1000Mbps.  |
|             |                   | Off      | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps.  |

|           |                   |          |                                     |
|-----------|-------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|
| LAN 2/3/4 | Left LED (Green)  | On       | The port is connected.              |
|           |                   | Off      | The port is disconnected.           |
|           |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.           |
|           | Right LED (Green) | On       | The port is connected with 100Mbps. |
|           |                   | Off      | The port is connected with 10Mbps.  |
| WAN 2     | Left LED (Green)  | On       | The port is connected.              |
|           |                   | Off      | The port is disconnected.           |
|           |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.           |
|           | Right LED (Green) | On       | The port is connected with 100Mbps. |
|           |                   | Off      | The port is connected with 10Mbps.  |
|           |                   |          |                                     |



| Interface     | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Factory Reset | Restore the default settings.<br>Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration. |
| ISDN1/2       | Connector for ISDN line or ISDN phone adapter in particular condition. Refer to section 2.2 for more details.  |
| Phone         | Connector for PSTN phone.  |
| Line          | Connector for PSTN life line.  |
| LAN (1-4)     | Connectors for local networked devices.  |
| DSL           | Connector for accessing the Internet through ADSL2/2+.   |
| WAN 2         | Connector for remote networked devices.  |
| USB           | Connector for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer).  |
| PWR           | Connector for a power adapter.   |
| ON/OFF        | Power Switch.  |

## 1.2.2 For VigorIPPBX 2820n



| LED            | Status   | Explanation   |
|----------------|----------|---|
| ACT (Activity) | Blinking | The router is powered on and running normally.  |
|                | Off      | The router is powered off.  |
| USB            | On       | A USB device is connected and active.   |
|                | Blinking | The data is transmitting.   |
| CSM            | On       | The profile of CSM (Content Security Management) for IM/P2P application is enabled from <b>Firewall &gt;&gt; General Setup</b> . (Such profile is established under <b>CSM</b> menu).                                 |
| WLAN           | On       | Wireless access point is ready.   |
|                | Blinking | It will blink while wireless traffic goes through. If ACT and WLAN LEDs blink simultaneously when WPS is working, and it will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.) |
| DSL            | On       | The router is ready to access Internet through DSL link.  |
|                | Blinking | Slowly: The modem is ready.<br>Quickly: The connection is training.   |
| WAN 2          | On       | The WAN2 connection is ready.   |
|                | Blinking | It will blink while transmitting data.  |
| Line           | On       | A PSTN phone call comes (in and out). However, when the phone call is disconnected, the LED will be off about six seconds later.  |
|                | Off      | There is no PSTN phone call.  |
| Phone          | On       | The phone connected to this port is off-hook.   |
|                | Off      | The phone connected to this port is on-hook.  |
|                | Blinking | A phone call comes.   |
| QoS            | On       | The QoS function is active.   |

### LED on Connector

|         |                   |          |   |
|---------|-------------------|----------|---|
| ISDN1/2 | Left LED (Orange) | On       | ISDN-S0 (ISDN-NT) mode is active configured from <b>IP PBX&gt;&gt;PBX System&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> and an ISDN phone adapter is connected.                  |
|         |                   | Blinking | ISDN S0 (ISDN-NT) mode configured from <b>IP PBX&gt;&gt;PBX System&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> is active and an ISDN phone adapter is not connected.              |
|         |                   | Off      | It means ISDN TE mode is active which is configured from <b>IP PBX&gt;&gt;PBX System&gt;&gt;Phone Settings</b> .  |
|         | Right LED (Green) | On       | A phone adapter with phone set has been connected (ISDN-S0) or ISDN line has been connected (ISDN-TE).  |
|         |                   | Blinking | ISDN-S0 (ISDN-NT) mode, it means an ISDN phone is off-hook or a phone call comes.<br>In ISDN-TE mode, it means data, fax or voice (phone call) is transmitting. |
|         |                   | Off      | It will be off if there is nothing connected.   |

|             |                   |          |  |
|-------------|-------------------|----------|--|
| LAN 1(Giga) | Left LED (Green)  | On       | The port is connected.                 |
|             |                   | Off      | The port is disconnected.              |
|             |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.              |
|             | Right LED (Green) | On       | The port is connected with 1000Mbps.   |
|             |                   | Off      | The port is connected with 10/100Mbps. |
|             |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.              |
| LAN 2/3/4   | Left LED (Green)  | On       | The port is connected.                 |
|             |                   | Off      | The port is disconnected.              |
|             |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.              |
|             | Right LED (Green) | On       | The port is connected with 100Mbps.    |
|             |                   | Off      | The port is connected with 10Mbps.     |
|             |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.              |
| WAN 2       | Left LED (Green)  | On       | The port is connected.                 |
|             |                   | Off      | The port is disconnected.              |
|             |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.              |
|             | Right LED (Green) | On       | The port is connected with 100Mbps.    |
|             |                   | Off      | The port is connected with 10Mbps.     |
|             |                   | Blinking | The data is transmitting.              |



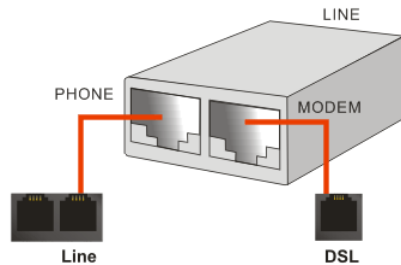
| Interface     | Description  |
|---------------|--|
| Factory Reset | Restore the default settings.<br>Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration. |
| ISDN1/2       | Connector for ISDN line or ISDN phone adapter in particular condition. Refer to section 2.2 for more details.  |
| Phone         | Connector for PSTN phone.  |
| Line          | Connector for PSTN life line.  |
| LAN (1-4)     | Connectors for local networked devices.  |
| DSL           | Connector for accessing the Internet through ADSL2/2+.   |
| WAN 2         | Connector for remote networked devices.  |
| USB           | Connector for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer).  |
| PWR           | Connector for a power adapter.   |
| ON/OFF        | Power Switch.  |



## 1.3 Hardware Installation

Before starting to configure the router, you have to connect your devices correctly.

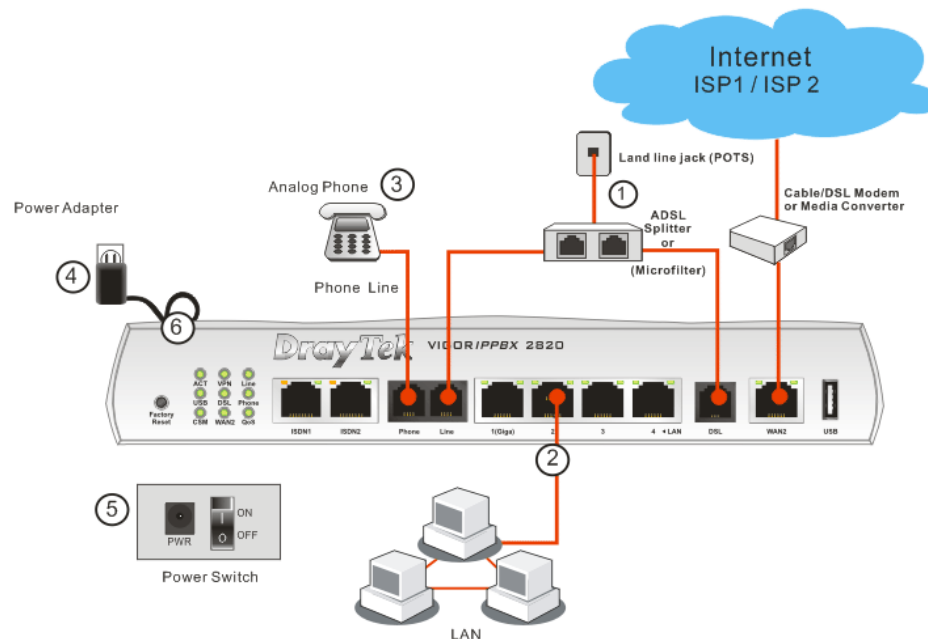
1. Connect the ADSL interface to the external ADSL splitter with an ADSL line cable. Also, connect Line interface to an external ADSL splitter.



For second WAN, connect the cable Modem/DSL Modem/Media Converter to WAN2 port of router with Ethernet cable (RJ-45).

2. Connect one end of an Ethernet cable (RJ-45) to one of the **LAN** ports of the router and the other end of the cable (RJ-45) into the Ethernet port on your computer.
3. Connect the telephone sets with phone lines (for using VoIP function). For the model without phone ports, skip this step.
4. Connect one end of the power adapter to the router's power port on the rear panel, and the other side into a wall outlet.
5. Power on the device by pressing down the power switch on the rear panel.
6. The system starts to initiate. After completing the system test, the **ACT** LED will light up and start blinking.

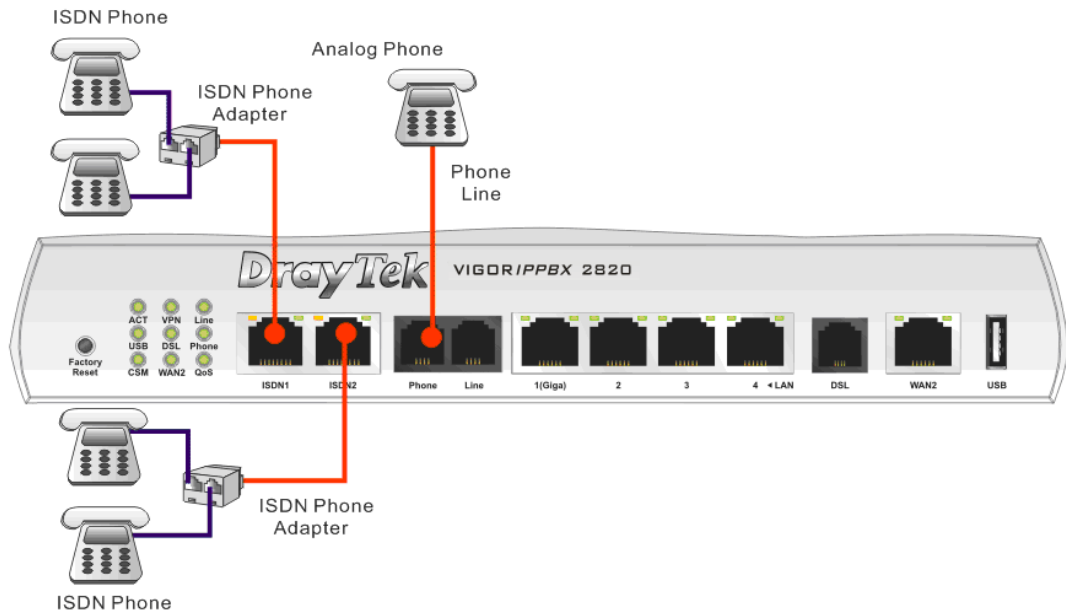
(For the detailed information of LED status, please refer to section 1.2.)



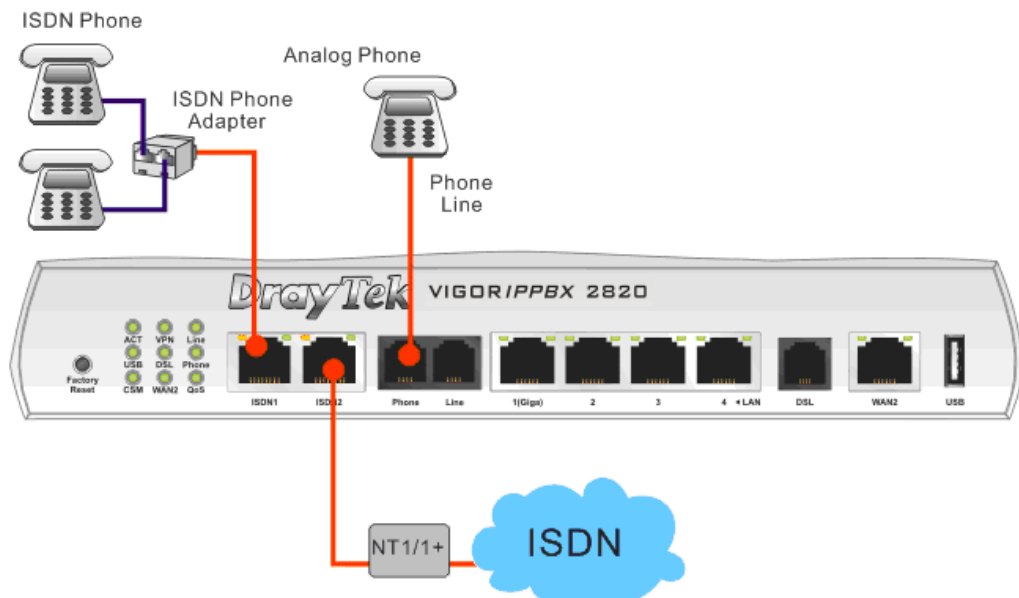
**Caution:** Each of the Phone ports can be connected to an analog phone only. Do not connect the phone ports to the telephone wall jack. Such connection might damage your router.

## 1.4 ISDN Phone Adapter Installation

ISDN1/2 port is configurable as NT or TE mode. When the user configures ISDN port as NT mode in **IP PBX>>PBX System>>Phone Settings**, the **orange** LED will light on to indicate **ISDN-NT** is selected. And by using ISDN phone adapters (coming from the router package), the user can connect several phones to the router for communication. Refer to the following figure for reference.



Yet, if the user configures ISDN port as TE Mode in **IP PBX>>PBX System>>Phone Settings**, the **green** LED will light on to indicate **ISDN-TE** is selected. Then, the port is specified for ISDN line only. Refer to the following figure for reference.

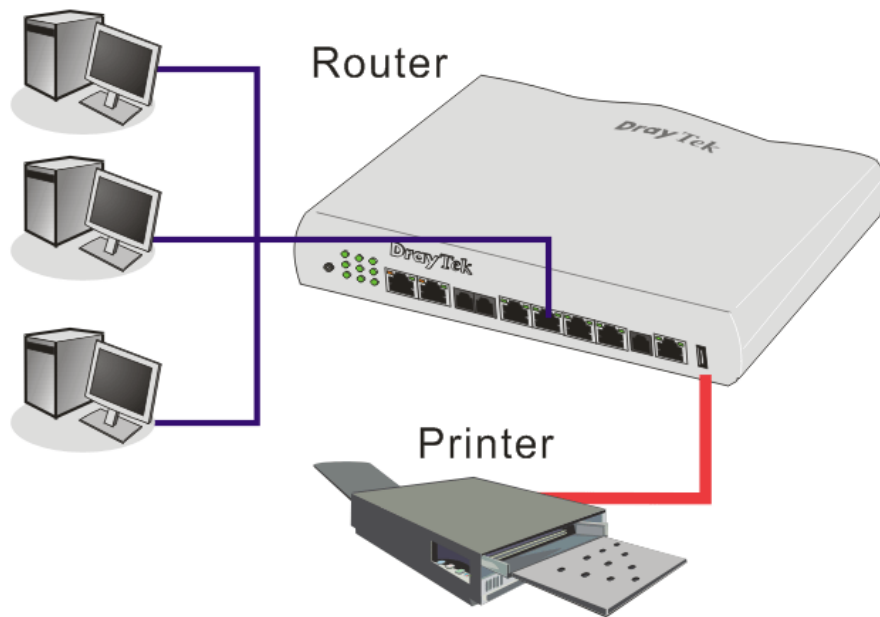


**Note:** ISDN Phone **MUST** be connected to ISDN port via an ISDN Phone Adapter. Do not connect the ISDN phone(s) to the ISDN port of the router directly for it cannot be used normally.

## 1.5 Printer Installation

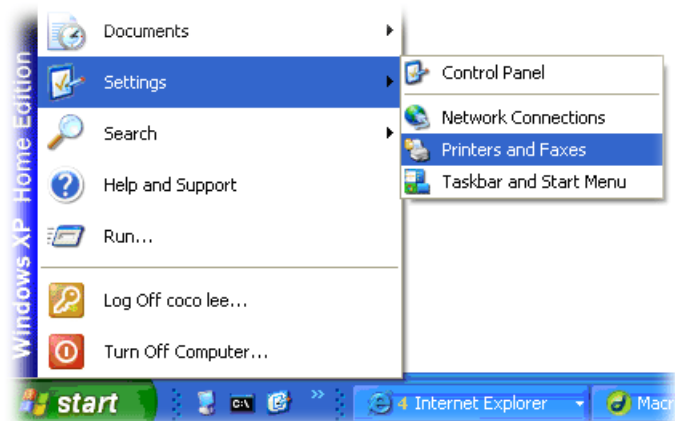
You can install a printer onto the router for sharing printing. All the PCs connected this router can print documents via the router. The example provided here is made based on Windows XP/2000. For Windows 98/SE, please visit [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com).

Printer Name: 192.168.1.1  
Port Name: IP\_192.168.1.1

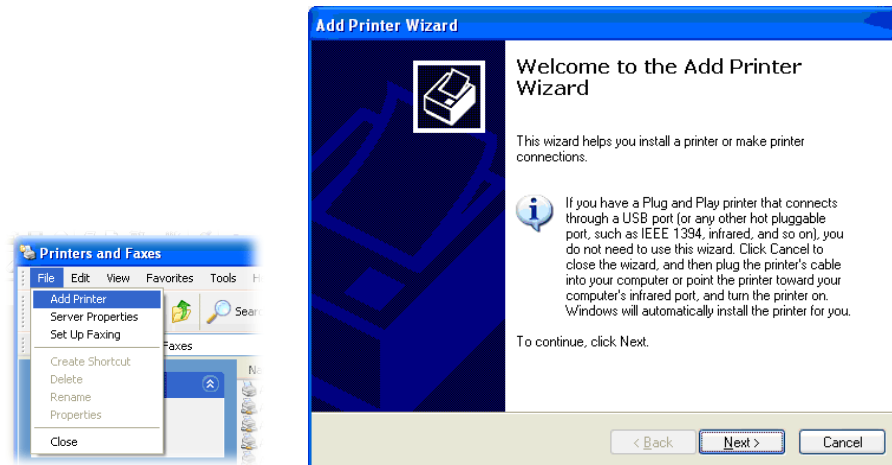


Before using it, please follow the steps below to configure settings for connected computers (or wireless clients).

1. Connect the printer with the router through USB/parallel port.
2. Open **Start>>Settings>>Printer and Faxes**.



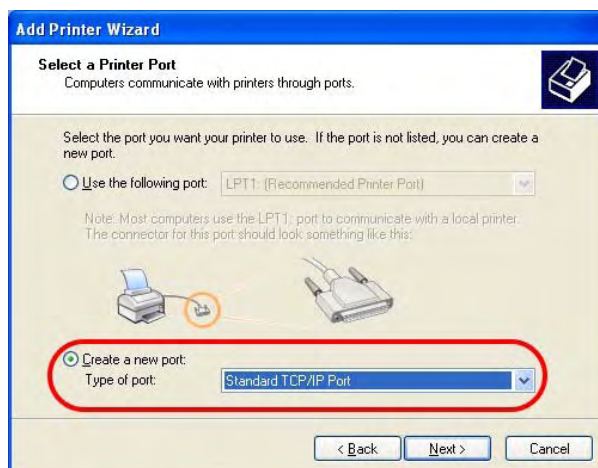
3. Open **File>>Add a New Computer**. A welcome dialog will appear. Please click **Next**.



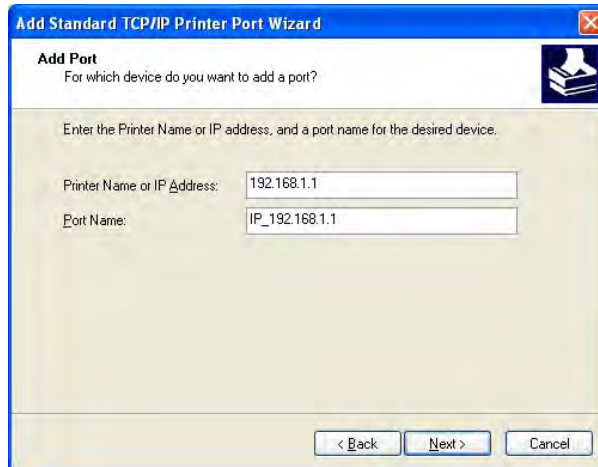
4. Click **Local printer attached to this computer** and click **Next**.



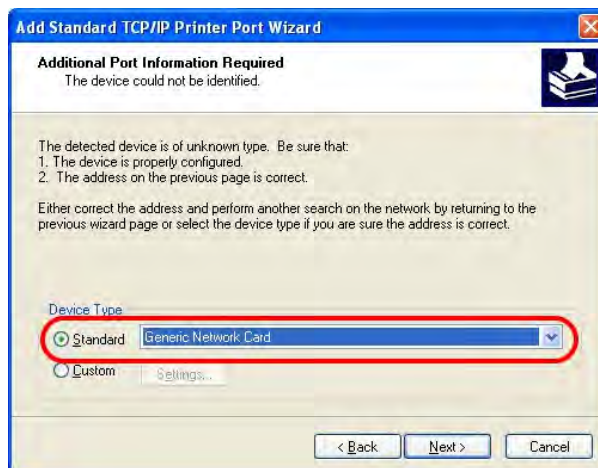
5. In this dialog, choose **Create a new port Type of port** and use the drop down list to select **Standard TCP/IP Port**. Click **Next**.




6. In the following dialog, type **192.168.1.1** (router's LAN IP) in the field of **Printer Name or IP Address** and type **IP\_192.168.1.1** as the port name. Then, click **Next**.



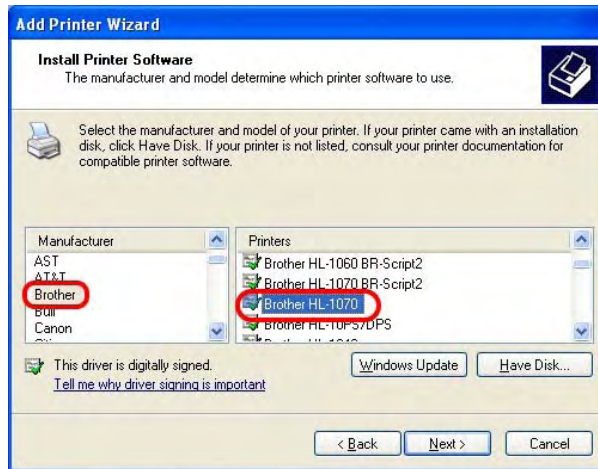
7. Click **Standard** and choose **Generic Network Card**.



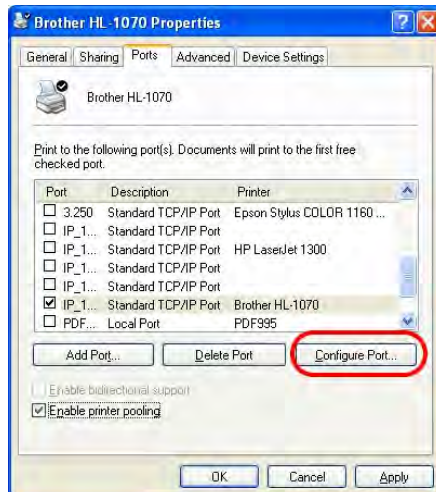
8. Then, in the following dialog, click **Finish**.



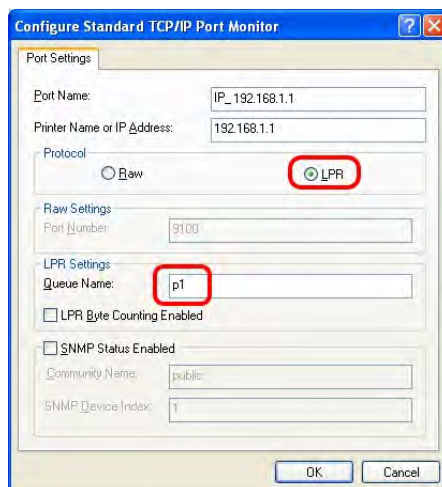
9. Now, your system will ask you to choose right name of the printer that you installed onto the router. Such step can make correct driver loaded onto your PC. When you finish the selection, click **Next**.



10. For the final stage, you need to go back to **Control Panel >> Printers** and edit the property of the new printer you have added.



11. Select **LPR** on Protocol, type **p1** (number 1) as Queue Name. Then click **OK**. Next please refer to the red rectangle for choosing the correct protocol and UPR name.



The printer can be used for printing now. Most of the printers with different manufacturers are compatible with vigor router.



**Note 1:** Some printers with the fax/scanning or other additional functions are not supported. If you do not know whether your printer is supported or not, please visit [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com) to find out the printer list. Open **Support >>FAQ**; find out the link of **Printer Server** and click it; then click the **What types of printers are compatible with Vigor router?** link.

Home > Support > [FAQ](#)

**FAQ - Basic**

- 01. What are the differences among these firmware file formats ?
- 02. How could I get the telnet command for routers ?
- 03. How can I backup/restore my configuration settings ?
- 04. How do I reset/clear the router's password ?
- 05. How to bring back my router to its default value ?
- 06. How do I tell the type of my Vigor Router is AnnexA or AnnexB? ( For ADSL model only )
- 07. Ways for firmware upgrade.
- 08. Why is SNMP removed in firmware 2.3.6 and above for Vigor2200 Series routers?
- 09. I failed to upgrade Vigor Router's firmware from my Mac machine constantly, what should I do?
- 10. How to upgrade firmware of Vigor Router remotely ?

**FAQ**

- Basic
- Advanced
- VPN
- DHCP
- Wireless
- VoIP
- QoS
- ISDN
- Firewall / IP Filter
- Printer Server**
- USB/ISDN TA
- ICSR

**FAQ - Printer Server**

- 01. How do I configure LPR printing on Windows2000/XP ?
- 02. How do I configure LPR printing on Windows98/Me ?
- 03. How do I configure LPR printing on Linux boxes ?
- 04. Why there are some strange print-out when I try to print my documents through Vigor210 4P / 2300's print server?
- 05. What types of printers are compatible with Vigor router?**
- 06. What are the limitations in the USB Printer Port of Vigor Router ?
- 07. What is the printing buffer size of Vigor Router ?
- 08. How do I configure LPR printing on Mac OSX ?
- 09. How do I configure LPR printing on My Windows Vista ?

**Note 2:** Vigor router supports printing request from computers via LAN ports but not WAN port.

This page is left blank.



# Chapter 2: Configuring Basic Settings

---

For use the router properly, it is necessary for you to change the password of web configuration for security and adjust primary basic settings.

This chapter explains how to setup a password for an administrator, how to adjust basic settings for accessing Internet successfully and how to configure IPPBX settings via IPPBX wizard. Be aware that only the administrator can change the router configuration.

## 2.1 Changing Password

To change the password for this device, you have to access into the web browser with default password first.

1. Make sure your computer connects to the router correctly.

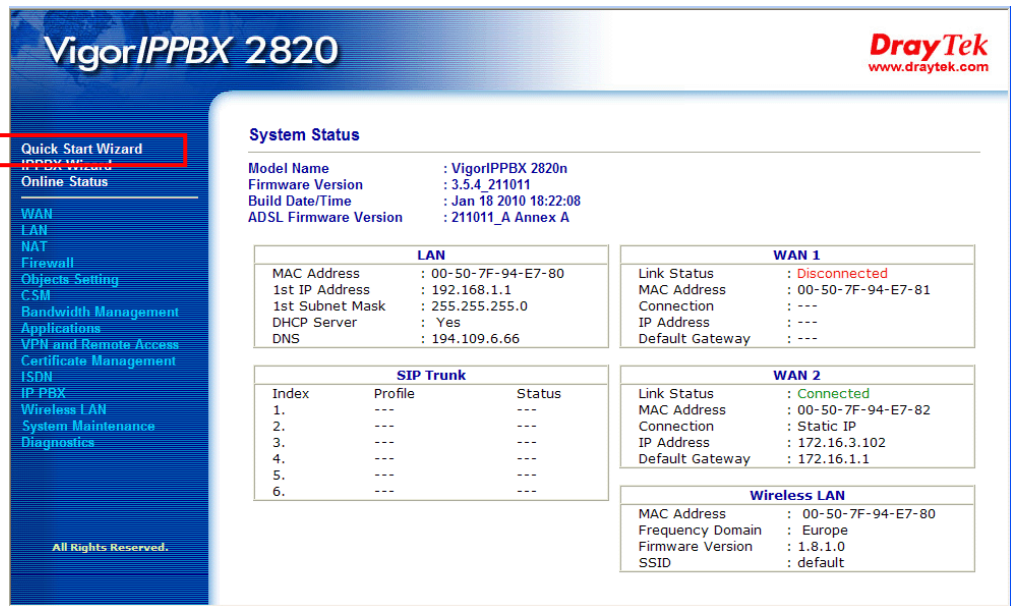


**Notice:** You may either simply set up your computer to get IP dynamically from the router or set up the IP address of the computer to be the same subnet as **the default IP address of Vigor router 192.168.1.1**. For the detailed information, please refer to the later section - Trouble Shooting of this guide.

2. Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1**. A pop-up window will open to ask for username and password. Please type “admin” as the username and leave blank for the password on the window. Next click **OK** for next screen.



3. Now, the **Main Screen** will pop up.



**Note:** The home page will change slightly in accordance with the router you have.

- Go to **System Maintenance** page and choose **Administrator Password**.

#### System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup

##### Administrator Password

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Old Password     | <input type="text"/> |
| New Password     | <input type="text"/> |
| Confirm Password | <input type="text"/> |

OK

- Enter the login password (the default is blank) on the field of **Old Password**. Type **New Password**. Then click **OK** to continue.
- Now, the password has been changed. Next time, use the new password to access the Web Configurator for this router.



## 2.2 Quick Start Wizard

If your router can be under an environment with high speed NAT, the configuration provide here can help you to deploy and use the router quickly. The first screen of **Quick Start Wizard** is entering login password. After typing the password, please click **Next**.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Enter login password

Please enter an alpha-numeric string as your **Password** (Max 23 characters).

New Password

••••

Confirm Password

••••

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

On the next page as shown below, please select the WAN interface (WAN 1 or WAN2) that you use. If DSL interface is used, please choose WAN1; if WAN2 interface is used, please choose WAN2. Choose **Auto negotiation** as the physical type for your router. Then click **Next** for next step.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### WAN Interface

WAN Interface:

WAN1

Display Name:

Physical Mode:

ADSL

Physical Type:

Auto negotiation

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

On the next page as shown below, please select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface. Then click **Next** for next step.

#### Quick Start Wizard

##### Connect to Internet

**WAN 1**

VPI: 0 [Auto detect]

VCI: 33

Protocol / Encapsulation: PPPoE LLC/SNAP

Fixed IP: ☐ Yes ☒ No(Dynamic IP)

IP Address: [ ]

Subnet Mask: [ ]

Default Gateway: [ ]

Primary DNS: [ ]

Second DNS: [ ]

< Back   Next >   Finish   Cancel

PPPoE LLC/SNAP

PPPoE LLC/SNAP

PPPoE VC MUX

PPPoA LLC/SNAP

PPPoA VC MUX

1483 Bridged IP LLC

1483 Routed IP LLC

1483 Bridged IP VC-Mux

1483 Routed IP VC-Mux (IPoA)

1483 Bridged IP (IPoE)

In the **Quick Start Wizard**, you can configure the router to access the Internet with different protocol/modes such as **PPPoE/PPPoA**, **1483 Bridged IP** or **1483 Routed IP**. The router supports the DSL WAN interface for Internet access.

### 2.2.1 PPPoE/PPPoA

PPPoE stands for **Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet**. It relies on two widely accepted standards: PPP and Ethernet. It connects users through an Ethernet to the Internet with a common broadband medium, such as a single DSL line, wireless device or cable modem. All the users over the Ethernet can share a common connection.

PPPoE is used for most of DSL modem users. All local users can share one PPPoE connection for accessing the Internet. Your service provider will provide you information about user name, password, and authentication mode.

If your ISP provides you the **PPPoE** connection, please select **PPPoE** for this router. The following page will be shown:

#### Quick Start Wizard

##### Set PPPoE / PPPoA

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| <b>WAN 1</b>     |   |
| User Name        | <input type="text" value="84005756@hinet.net"/> |
| Password         | <input type="password" value="••••••••"/>       |
| Confirm Password | <input type="password" value="••••••••"/>       |

**User Name** Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP.

**Password** Assign a valid password provided by the ISP.

**Confirm Password** Retype the password.

Click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

#### Quick Start Wizard

##### Please confirm your settings:

|                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| WAN Interface:            | WAN1             |
| Physical Mode:            | ADSL             |
| Physical Type:            | Auto negotiation |
| VPI:                      | 8                |
| VCI:                      | 35               |
| Protocol / Encapsulation: | PPPoA / VCMUX    |
| Fixed IP:                 | No               |
| Primary DNS:              | undefined        |
| Secondary DNS:            | undefined        |

Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

#### Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!

## 2.2.2 1483 Bridged IP

Click **1483 Bridged IP** as the protocol. Type in all the information that your ISP provides for this protocol.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Connect to Internet

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>WAN 1</b>             |   |
| VPI                      | <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="button" value="Auto detect"/> |
| VCI                      | <input type="text" value="33"/>   |
| Protocol / Encapsulation | <input type="text" value="1483 Bridged IP LLC"/>                          |
| Fixed IP                 | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No(Dynamic IP) |
| IP Address               | <input type="text"/>  |
| Subnet Mask              | <input type="text"/>  |
| Default Gateway          | <input type="text"/>  |
| Primary DNS              | <input type="text" value="168.95.1.1"/>                                   |
| Second DNS               | <input type="text"/>  |

Click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

### Quick Start Wizard

#### Please confirm your settings:

|                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| WAN Interface:            | WAN1             |
| Physical Mode:            | ADSL             |
| Physical Type:            | Auto negotiation |
| VPI:                      | 0                |
| VCI:                      | 33               |
| Protocol / Encapsulation: | 1483 Bridge LLC  |
| Fixed IP:                 | No               |
| Primary DNS:              | 168.95.1.1       |
| Secondary DNS:            |                  |

Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

### Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!

### 2.2.3 1483 Routed IP

Click **1483 Routed IP** as the protocol. Type in all the information that your ISP provides for this protocol.

#### Quick Start Wizard

##### Connect to Internet

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>WAN 1</b>             |   |
| VPI                      | <input type="text" value="8"/> <input type="button" value="Auto detect"/> |
| VCI                      | <input type="text" value="35"/>   |
| Protocol / Encapsulation | <input type="text" value="1483 Routed IP LLC"/>                           |
| Fixed IP                 | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No(Dynamic IP) |
| IP Address               | <input type="text" value="192.168.3.10"/>                                 |
| Subnet Mask              | <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/>                                |
| Default Gateway          | <input type="text" value="192.168.3.1"/>                                  |
| Primary DNS              | <input type="text" value="undefined"/>                                    |
| Second DNS               | <input type="text" value="undefined"/>                                    |

After finishing the settings in this page, click **Next** to see the following page.

#### Quick Start Wizard

##### Please confirm your settings:

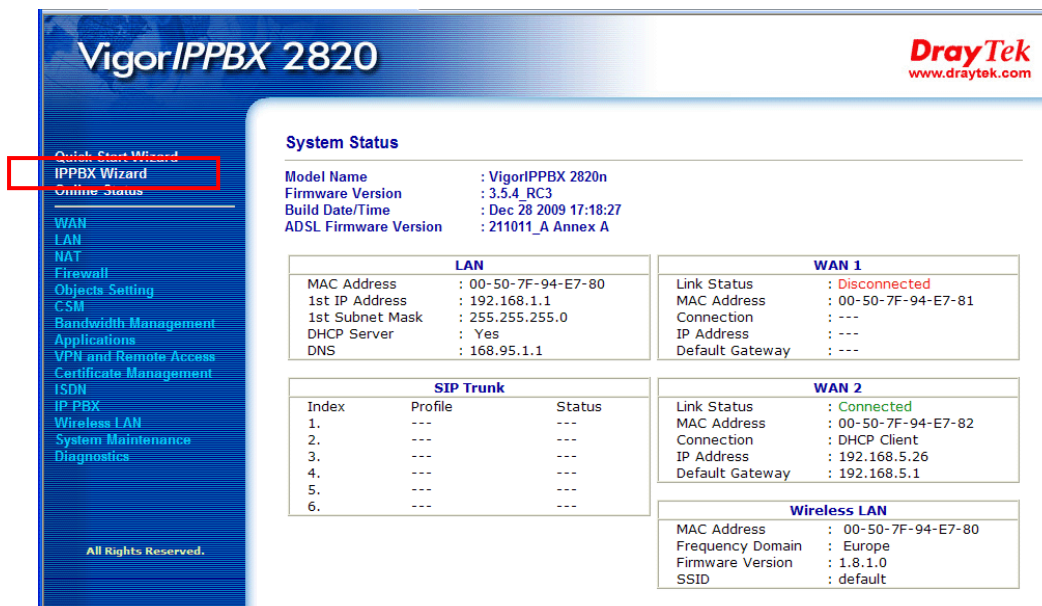
|                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| WAN Interface:            | WAN1             |
| Physical Mode:            | ADSL             |
| Physical Type:            | Auto negotiation |
| VPI:                      | 8                |
| VCI:                      | 35               |
| Protocol / Encapsulation: | 1483 Route LLC   |
| Fixed IP:                 | Yes              |
| IP Address:               | 192.168.3.10     |
| Subnet Mask:              | 255.255.255.0    |
| Default Gateway:          | 192.168.3.1      |
| Primary DNS:              | undefined        |
| Secondary DNS:            | undefined        |

Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

#### Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!

## 2.3 IPPBX Wizard

IPPBX Wizard can guide the user to configure the required settings for this router within several steps. All the settings, also, can be configured by using **IP PBX** menu. However, the wizard is the most convenient and easy method for users.



### 2.3.1 Extension & Group Setup

Click **IPPBX Wizard**. You can get the first screen as shown below.

#### IPPBX Wizard

##### Extension & Groups Setup : Index 1

|                                      |                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Extension Group Name:                | <input type="text"/> | (for example : sales)        |
| Extension Group Number:              | <input type="text"/> | (for example : 100)          |
| Start Number of the extension Group: | <input type="text"/> | (for example : 101)          |
| Number of extensions in this group:  | <input type="text"/> | (for example : 10, max = 20) |
| Extension Password in this group:    | <input type="text"/> |                              |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/>    |                      |                              |

| Index | Group Name | Group Extension | Hunt List(Max 20 Extension) |
|-------|------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1.    |            |                 |                             |
| 2.    |            |                 |                             |
| 3.    |            |                 |                             |
| 4.    |            |                 |                             |
| 5.    |            |                 |                             |
| 6.    |            |                 |                             |
| 7.    |            |                 |                             |
| 8.    |            |                 |                             |
| 9.    |            |                 |                             |
| 10.   |            |                 |                             |

**Extension Group Name**

Type a name as a display for this extension group.

**Extension Group Number**

Type the number of extension for such group.



- Start Number of the extension Group** Type the start extension number for such group.
- Number of extension in this group** Type the total number of the extension for such group.
- Extension Password in this group** Type the password for this extension group, which will be used in registration done by IP Phone.

When you finish the settings of group name, group number, start number, number of extension fields, please click **OK** to save them. The new added group will be displayed on the screen. You can set 10 groups for using in different conditions. Then click **Next** to access into next web page.

Below shows an example for your reference:

#### IPPBX Wizard

##### Extension & Groups Setup : Index 5

|                                      |                                   |                              |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Extension Group Name:                | <input type="text" value="TSS"/>  | (for example : sales)        |
| Extension Group Number:              | <input type="text" value="205"/>  | (for example : 100)          |
| Start Number of the extension Group: | <input type="text" value="2051"/> | (for example : 101)          |
| Number of extensions in this group:  | <input type="text" value="4"/>    | (for example : 10, max = 20) |
| Extension Password in this group:    | <input type="text"/>              |                              |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/>    |                                   |                              |

| Index               | Group Name | Group Extension | Hunt List(Max 20 Extension) |
|---------------------|------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  | SMB E      | 201             | 2011-2015                   |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  | SMB W      | 202             | 2021-2026                   |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  | Gov C      | 203             | 2031-2037                   |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  | Healthcare | 204             | 2041-2043                   |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  | TSS        | 205             | 2051-2054                   |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |            |                 |                             |

## 2.3.2 SIP Trunk Setup

This page allows you to set profiles for six SIP outside lines at one time.

### IPPBX Wizard

#### Sip Trunk Setup : Index 1

|                                   |                                  |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| Profile Name:                     | <input type="text"/>             | (11 characters max.) |
| Domain/Realm:                     | <input type="text"/>             | (63 characters max.) |
| Proxy:                            | <input type="text"/>             | (63 characters max.) |
| Account Number/Name:              | <input type="text"/>             | (63 characters max.) |
| Password:                         | <input type="text"/>             | (63 characters max.) |
| Trunk number:                     | <input type="text" value="001"/> | (3 characters max.)  |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> |                                  |                      |

| Index              | Profile Name | Domain/Realm | Proxy | Account Number/Name | Trunk Number |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-------|---------------------|--------------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 001          |
| <a href="#">2.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 002          |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 003          |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 004          |
| <a href="#">5.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 005          |
| <a href="#">6.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 006          |

#### Profile Name

Type a name for this profile for identifying.

#### Domain/Realm

Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server.

#### Proxy

Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server. By the time you can type **:port number** after the domain name to specify that port as the destination of data transmission (e.g., **nat.draytel.org:5065**)

#### Account Number/Name

Enter your account name of SIP Address, e.g. every text before @.

#### Password

Type the password which will be used in registration for SIP service for this profile.

#### Trunk Number

There are two ways to dial outside lines for an extension number. First, dial a short number and wait for a while. When dial tone appears, please dial the real outside line number. Second, dial a short number and then the real outside line number without waiting for dial tone. The short number is defined here as Trunk Number.

When you finish the settings of profile name, domain/realm, proxy, account number/name, password and trunk number fields, please click **OK** to save them. The new added profile will be displayed on the screen.

| Index              | Profile Name | Domain/Realm | Proxy                | Account Number/Name | Trunk Number |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> | SalesMarket  | 192.168.1.55 | nat.draytel.org:5065 | salesgroup          | 001          |
| <a href="#">2.</a> |              |              |                      |                     | 002          |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |              |              |                      |                     | 003          |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |              |              |                      |                     | 004          |
| <a href="#">5.</a> |              |              |                      |                     | 005          |
| <a href="#">6.</a> |              |              |                      |                     | 006          |

[< Back](#)
[Next >](#)
[Finish](#)
[Cancel](#)

You can set 6 profiles for using in different conditions. Then click **Next** to access into next web page.

### 2.3.3 Office Hours Setup

This page allows you to set office hours including starting point, ending point on duty day(s).

#### IPPBX Wizard

##### Office Hours Setup

Now, You can make the work time schedule of your office.

|  |   |                                 |
|--|---|---------------------------------|
|  | Hour :  | Min                             |
| When do you start working in the morning   | <input type="text" value="00"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| When do you have a rest at noon            | <input type="text" value="00"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| When do you start working in the afternoon | <input type="text" value="00"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| When do you leave the office               | <input type="text" value="00"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| Is this schedule available at weekend?     | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No |                                 |

[< Back](#)
[Next >](#)
[Finish](#)
[Cancel](#)

**When do you start working in the morning** Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the starting point in the morning.

**When do you have a rest at noon** Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the ending point in the morning.

**When do you start working in the afternoon** Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the starting point in the afternoon.

**When do you leave the office** Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the ending point in the afternoon.

**Is this schedule available at the weekend** If such schedule will be available in the weekend, simply click **Yes**, otherwise, click **No**.

When you finish the settings, click **Finish** to save the settings and exit the wizard.

work time schedule of your office.

|                      | Hour :  | Min  |
|----------------------|---|------|
| ing in the morning   | 08 ▾  | 00 ▾ |
| st at noon           | 12 ▾  | 00 ▾ |
| ing in the afternoon | 13 ▾  | 00 ▾ |
| office               | 17 ▾  | 30 ▾ |
| e at weekend?        | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No |      |

< Back

Next >

Finish

Cancel

## 2.4 Online Status

The online status shows the system status, WAN status, ADSL Information and other status related to this router within one page. If you select **PPPoE/PPPoA** as the protocol, you will find out a link of **Dial PPPoE** or **Drop PPPoE** in the Online Status web page.

### Online status for PPPoE (WAN2)

#### Online Status

| System Status                                      |                |                           |                  | System Uptime: 3:18:44        |              |           |
|--|----------------|---------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Primary  |                | Secondary                 |                  |                               |              |           |
| LAN Status   |                | Primary DNS: 192.168.66.1 |                  | Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1     |              |           |
| IP Address   | TX Packets     | RX Packets                |                  |                               |              |           |
| 192.168.1.1  | 749            | 552                       |                  |                               |              |           |
| WAN 1 Status                                       |                |                           |                  | >> <a href="#">Release</a>    |              |           |
| Enable   | Line           | Name                      | Mode             | Up Time                       |              |           |
| Yes  | ADSL           |                           | DHCP Client      | 0:00:00                       |              |           |
| IP   | GW IP          | TX Packets                | TX Rate(Bps)     | RX Packets                    | RX Rate(Bps) |           |
| 192.168.66.10                                      | 192.168.66.1   | 1                         | 9                | 1                             | 0            |           |
| WAN 2 Status                                       |                |                           |                  | >> <a href="#">Drop PPPoE</a> |              |           |
| Enable   | Line           | Name                      | Mode             | Up Time                       |              |           |
| Yes  | Ethernet       |                           | PPPoE            | 0:00:22                       |              |           |
| IP   | GW IP          | TX Packets                | TX Rate(Bps)     | RX Packets                    | RX Rate(Bps) |           |
| 218.160.234.238                                    | 61.216.116.254 | 14                        | 16               | 15                            | 41           |           |
| ADSL Information (ADSL Firmware Version: 211011_A) |                |                           |                  |                               |              |           |
| ATM Statistics                                     | TX Blocks      | RX Blocks                 | Corrected Blocks | Uncorrected Blocks            |              |           |
|  | 18             | 23                        | 0                | 0                             |              |           |
|  |                |                           |                  |                               |              |           |
| ADSL Status  | Mode           | State                     | Up Speed         | Down Speed                    | SNR Margin   | Loop Att. |
|  | G.DMT          | SHOWTIME                  | 1024000          | 11936000                      | 0            | 0         |

### Online status for PPTP (for WAN2)

#### Online Status

| System Status                                      |               |                         |                  | System Uptime: 3:18:44    |              |           |
|--|---------------|-------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Primary  |               | Secondary               |                  |                           |              |           |
| LAN Status   |               | Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1 |                  | Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1 |              |           |
| IP Address   |               | TX Packets              |                  | RX Packets                |              |           |
| 192.168.1.1  |               | 480                     |                  | 339                       |              |           |
| WAN 1 Status                                       |               |                         |                  |                           |              |           |
| Enable   | Line          | Name                    | Mode             | Up Time                   |              |           |
| Yes  | ADSL          |                         | Static IP        | 0:00:00                   |              |           |
| IP   | GW IP         | TX Packets              | TX Rate(Bps)     | RX Packets                | RX Rate(Bps) |           |
| 192.168.66.52                                      | 192.168.66.1  | 1                       | 9                | 1                         | 16           |           |
| WAN 2 Status                                       |               |                         |                  |                           |              |           |
| Enable   | Line          | Name                    | Mode             | Up Time                   |              |           |
| Yes  | Ethernet      |                         | PPTP             | 0:00:28                   |              |           |
| IP   | GW IP         | TX Packets              | TX Rate(Bps)     | RX Packets                | RX Rate(Bps) |           |
| 192.168.129.11                                     | 192.168.129.1 | 8                       | 12               | 10                        | 9            |           |
| ADSL Information (ADSL Firmware Version: 211011_A) |               |                         |                  |                           |              |           |
| ATM Statistics                                     | TX Blocks     | RX Blocks               | Corrected Blocks | Uncorrected Blocks        |              |           |
|  | 4             | 3                       | 0                | 2                         |              |           |
|  |               |                         |                  |                           |              |           |
| ADSL Status  | Mode          | State                   | Up Speed         | Down Speed                | SNR Margin   | Loop Att. |
|  | G.DMT         | SHOWTIME                | 1024000          | 12000000                  | 8            | 0         |

## Online status for Static IP (for WAN1)

### Online Status

| System Status                                       |               |                         |                  | System Uptime: 3:18:44    |              |           |
|---|---------------|-------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Primary   |               | Secondary               |                  |                           |              |           |
| LAN Status  |               | Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1 |                  | Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1 |              |           |
| IP Address  | TX Packets    | RX Packets              |                  |                           |              |           |
| 192.168.1.1   | 480           | 339                     |                  |                           |              |           |
| WAN 1 Status  |               |                         |                  |                           |              |           |
| Enable  | Line          | Name                    | Mode             | Up Time                   |              |           |
| Yes   | ADSL          |                         | Static IP        | 0:00:00                   |              |           |
| IP  | GW IP         | TX Packets              | TX Rate(Bps)     | RX Packets                | RX Rate(Bps) |           |
| 192.168.66.52                                       | 192.168.66.1  | 1                       | 9                | 1                         | 16           |           |
| WAN 2 Status  |               |                         |                  |                           |              |           |
| Enable  | Line          | Name                    | Mode             | Up Time                   |              |           |
| Yes   | Ethernet      |                         | PPTP             | 0:00:28                   |              |           |
| IP  | GW IP         | TX Packets              | TX Rate(Bps)     | RX Packets                | RX Rate(Bps) |           |
| 192.168.129.11                                      | 192.168.129.1 | 8                       | 12               | 10                        | 9            |           |
| ADSL Information ( ADSL Firmware Version: 211011_A) |               |                         |                  |                           |              |           |
| ATM Statistics                                      | TX Blocks     | RX Blocks               | Corrected Blocks | Uncorrected Blocks        |              |           |
|   | 4             | 3                       | 0                | 2                         |              |           |
|   |               |                         |                  |                           |              |           |
| ADSL Status   | Mode          | State                   | Up Speed         | Down Speed                | SNR Margin   | Loop Att. |
|   | G.DMT         | SHOWTIME                | 1024000          | 12000000                  | 8            | 0         |

## Online status for DHCP (WAN1)

### Online Status

| System Status                                       |                |                           |              | System Uptime: 3:18:44        |                    |           |
|---|----------------|---------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| Primary   |                | Secondary                 |              |                               |                    |           |
| LAN Status  |                | Primary DNS: 192.168.66.1 |              | Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1     |                    |           |
| IP Address  |                | TX Packets                |              | RX Packets                    |                    |           |
| 192.168.1.1   |                | 749                       |              | 552                           |                    |           |
| WAN 1 Status  |                |                           |              | >> <a href="#">Release</a>    |                    |           |
| Enable  | Line           | Name                      | Mode         | Up Time                       |                    |           |
| Yes   | ADSL           |                           | DHCP Client  | 0:00:00                       |                    |           |
| IP  | GW IP          | TX Packets                | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets                    | RX Rate(Bps)       |           |
| 192.168.66.10                                       | 192.168.66.1   | 1                         | 9            | 1                             | 0                  |           |
| WAN 2 Status  |                |                           |              | >> <a href="#">Drop PPPoE</a> |                    |           |
| Enable  | Line           | Name                      | Mode         | Up Time                       |                    |           |
| Yes   | Ethernet       |                           | PPPoE        | 0:00:22                       |                    |           |
| IP  | GW IP          | TX Packets                | TX Rate(Bps) | RX Packets                    | RX Rate(Bps)       |           |
| 218.160.234.238                                     | 61.216.116.254 | 14                        | 16           | 15                            | 41                 |           |
| ADSL Information ( ADSL Firmware Version: 211011_A) |                |                           |              |                               |                    |           |
| ATM Statistics                                      | TX Blocks      | RX Blocks                 |              | Corrected Blocks              | Uncorrected Blocks |           |
|   | 18             | 23                        |              | 0                             | 0                  |           |
|   |                |                           |              |                               |                    |           |
| ADSL Status   | Mode           | State                     | Up Speed     | Down Speed                    | SNR Margin         | Loop Att. |
|   | G.DMT          | SHOWTIME                  | 1024000      | 11936000                      | 0                  | 0         |

## Online status for ISDN enabled

|  |                     |            |                  |                    |               |             |
|--|---------------------|------------|------------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------|
| Enable   | Line                | Name       | Mode             | Up Time            |               |             |
| Yes  | Ethernet            |            | Static IP        | 00:00:00           |               |             |
| IP   | GW IP               | TX Packets | TX Rate(Bps)     | RX Packets         | RX Rate(Bps)  |             |
| 172.17.3.43  | 172.17.3.2          | 0          | 0                | 0                  | 0             |             |
| ADSL Information ( ADSL Firmware Version: 2121501_A) |                     |            |                  |                    |               |             |
| ATM Statistics                                       | TX Blocks           | RX Blocks  | Corrected Blocks | Uncorrected Blocks |               |             |
|  | 0                   | 0          | 0                | 0                  |               |             |
| ADSL Status  | Mode                | State      | Up Speed         | Down Speed         | SNR Margin    | Loop Att.   |
|  | ----                | READY      | 0                | 0                  | 0             | 0           |
| ISDN Status  |                     |            |                  | >> Dial ISDN       | >> Drop B1    | >> Drop B2  |
| Channel  | Active Connection   | TX Pkts    | TX Rate (Bps)    | RX Pkts            | RX Rate (Bps) | Up Time AOC |
| ISDN1-B1   | Idle [---]          | 0          | 0                | 0                  | 0             | 0:0:0 0     |
| ISDN1-B2   | Idle [---]          | 0          | 0                | 0                  | 0             | 0:0:0 0     |
| ISDN1-D  | UP                  |            |                  |                    |               |             |
| ISDN2-B1   | 2930 [192.168.3.10] | 19         | 9                | 10                 | 3             | 0:0:36 0    |
| ISDN2-B2   | Idle [---]          | 0          | 0                | 0                  | 0             | 0:0:0 0     |
| ISDN2-D  | UP                  |            |                  |                    |               |             |

Detailed explanation is shown below:

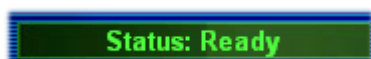
|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Primary DNS</b>          | Displays the IP address of the primary DNS.                         |
| <b>Secondary DNS</b>        | Displays the IP address of the secondary DNS.                       |
| <b>LAN Status</b>           |   |
| <b>IP Address</b>           | Displays the IP address of the LAN interface.                       |
| <b>TX Packets</b>           | Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface.        |
| <b>RX Packets</b>           | Displays the total number of received packets at the LAN interface. |
| <b>WAN1/2 Status</b>        |   |
| <b>Line</b>                 | Displays the physical connection (Ethernet) of this interface.      |
| <b>Name</b>                 | Displays the name set in WAN1/WAN web page.                         |
| <b>Mode</b>                 | Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., PPPoE).                  |
| <b>Up Time</b>              | Displays the total uptime of the interface.                         |
| <b>IP</b>                   | Displays the IP address of the WAN interface.                       |
| <b>GW IP</b>                | Displays the IP address of the default gateway.                     |
| <b>TX Packets</b>           | Displays the total transmitted packets at the WAN interface.        |
| <b>TX Rate</b>              | Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the WAN interface.      |
| <b>RX Packets</b>           | Displays the total number of received packets at the WAN interface. |
| <b>RX Rate</b>              | Displays the speed of received octets at the WAN interface.         |
| <b>ISDN Status</b>          |   |
| <b>Channel Active Conn.</b> | Displays the active connection status for each channel.             |
| <b>TX Pkts</b>              | Displays the total transmitted packets at the ISDN interface.       |
| <b>TX Rate</b>              | Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the ISDN interface.     |

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>RX Pkts</b> | Displays the total number of received packets at the ISDN interface. |
| <b>RX Rate</b> | Displays the speed of received octets at the ISDN interface.         |
| <b>Up Time</b> | Displays the total uptime of the interface.                          |
| <b>AOC</b>     | Displays the charge information of the interface.                    |

**Note:** The words in green mean that the WAN connection of that interface (WAN1/WAN2) is ready for accessing Internet; the words in red mean that the WAN connection of that interface (WAN1/WAN2) is not ready for accessing Internet.

## 2.5 Saving Configuration

Each time you click **OK** on the web page for saving the configuration, you can find messages showing the system interaction with you.



**Ready** indicates the system is ready for you to input settings.

**Settings Saved** means your settings are saved once you click **Finish** or **OK** button.

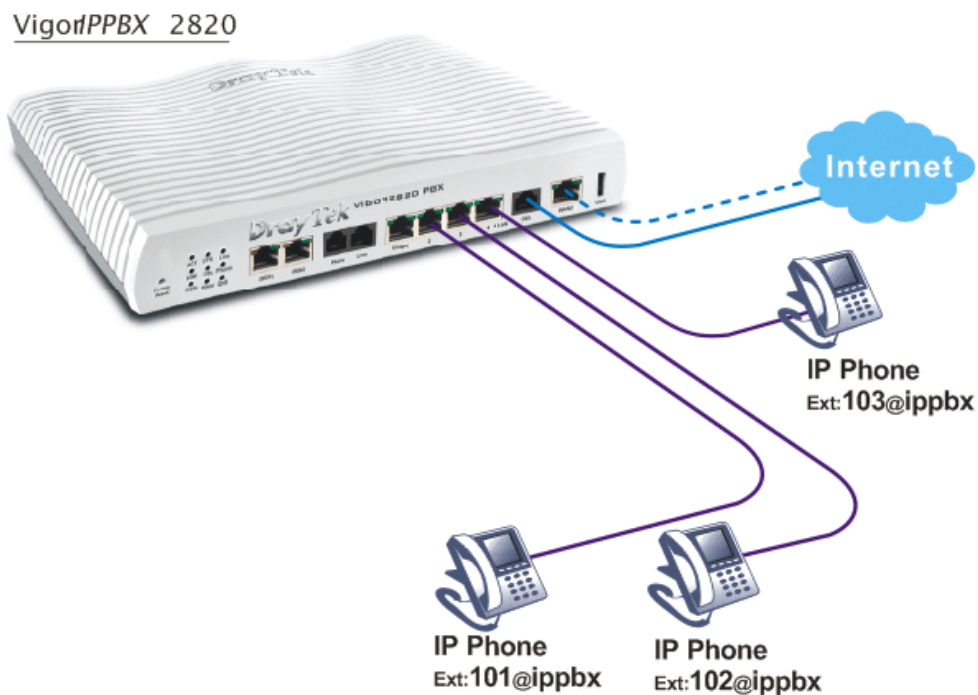


# Chapter 3: Applications

---

This chapter shows several scenarios for your reference to configure IP PBX for different purposes.

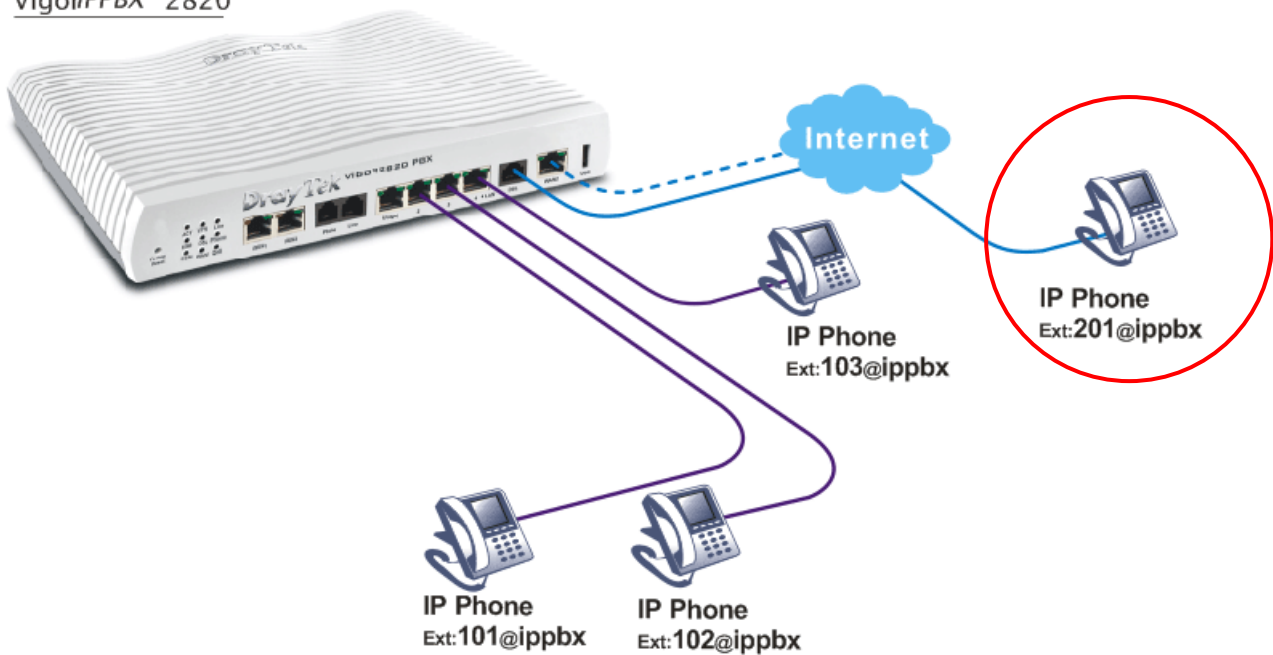
## 3.1 The Registration of 50 IP-based Telephone/Extensions



- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.

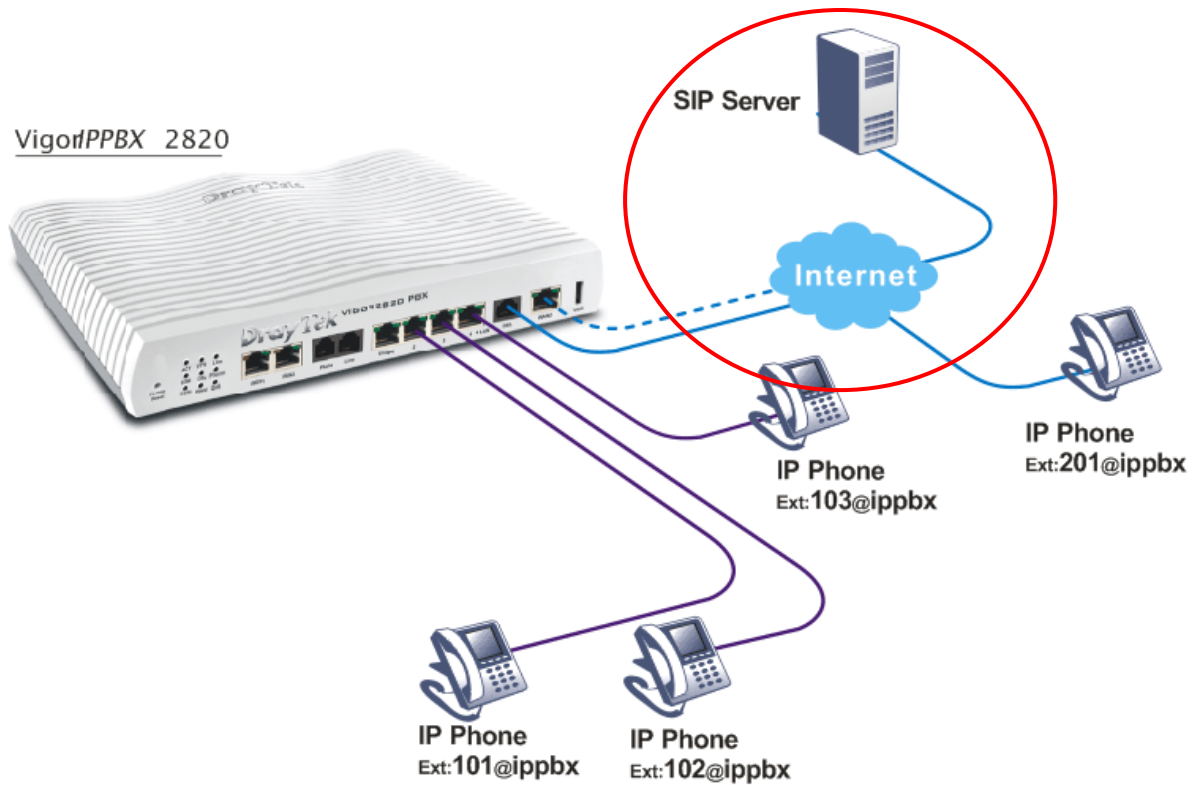
### 3.2 The IP Registration from Remote Site (through WAN Connection)

VigorIPPBX 2820



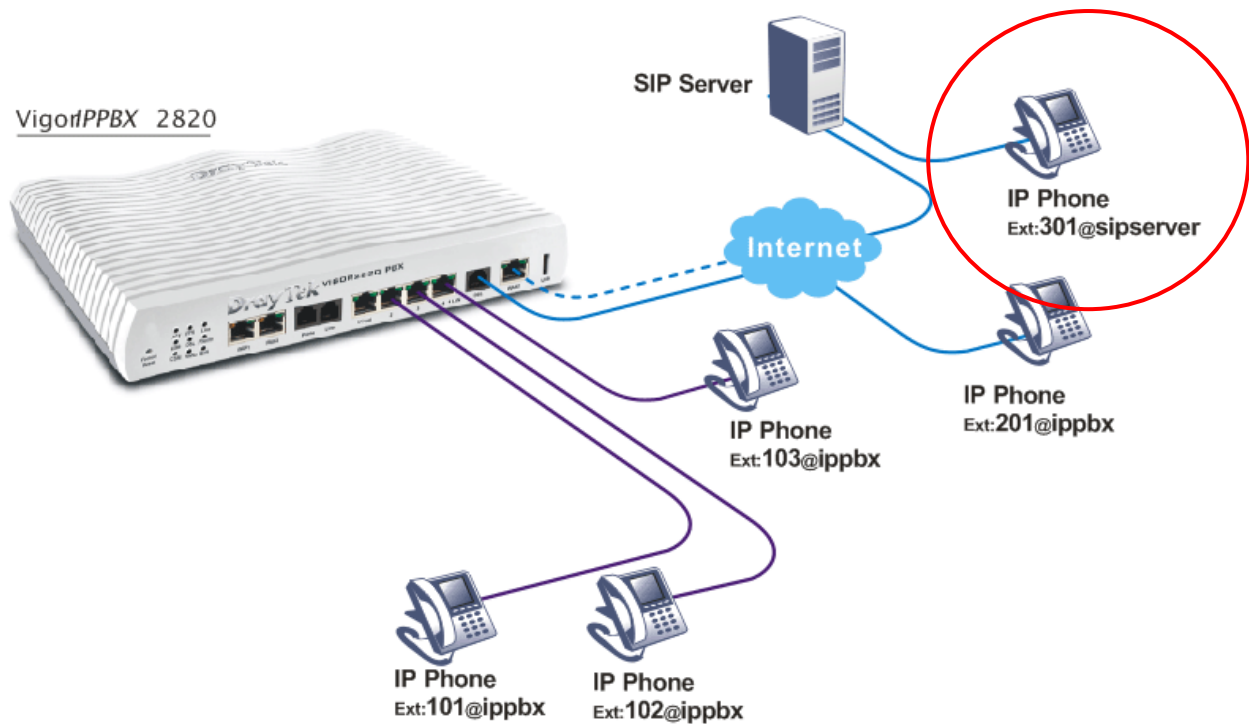
- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- **The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.**

### 3.3 The Integration IP Registration with SIP Server



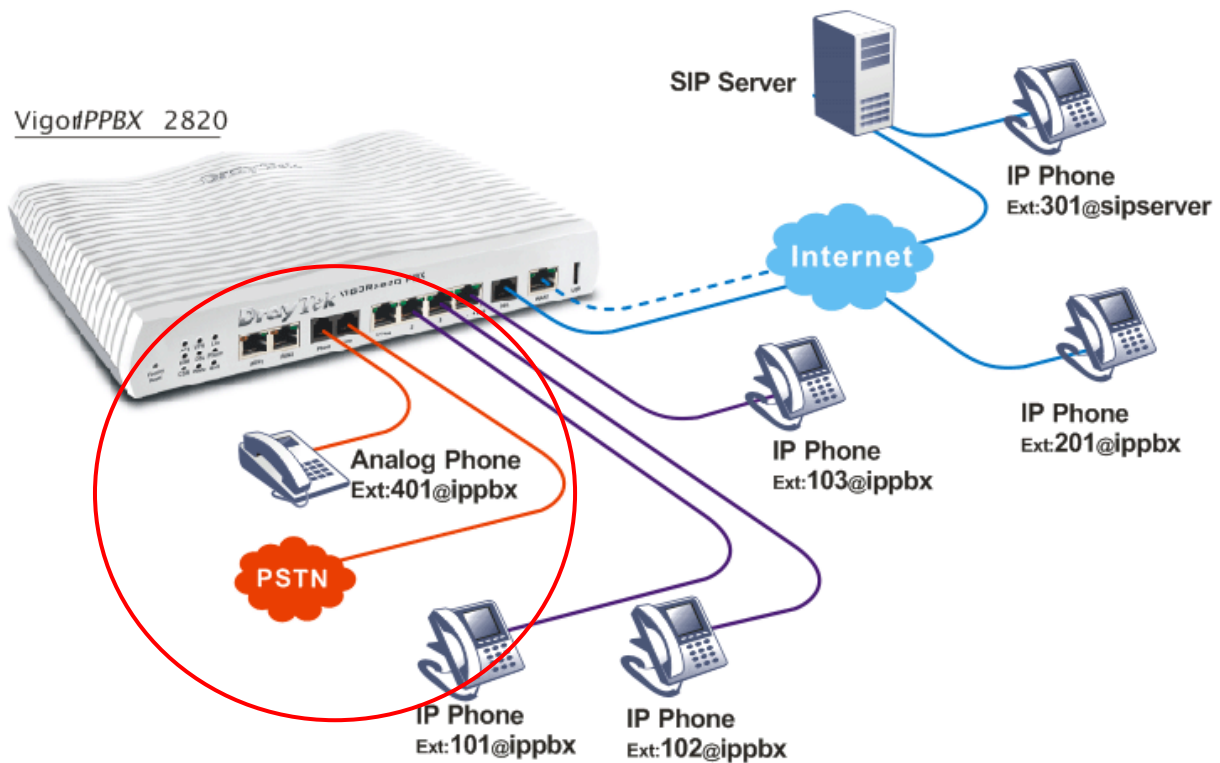
- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- **The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).**

### 3.4 The Integration VoIP Communications via SIP Server



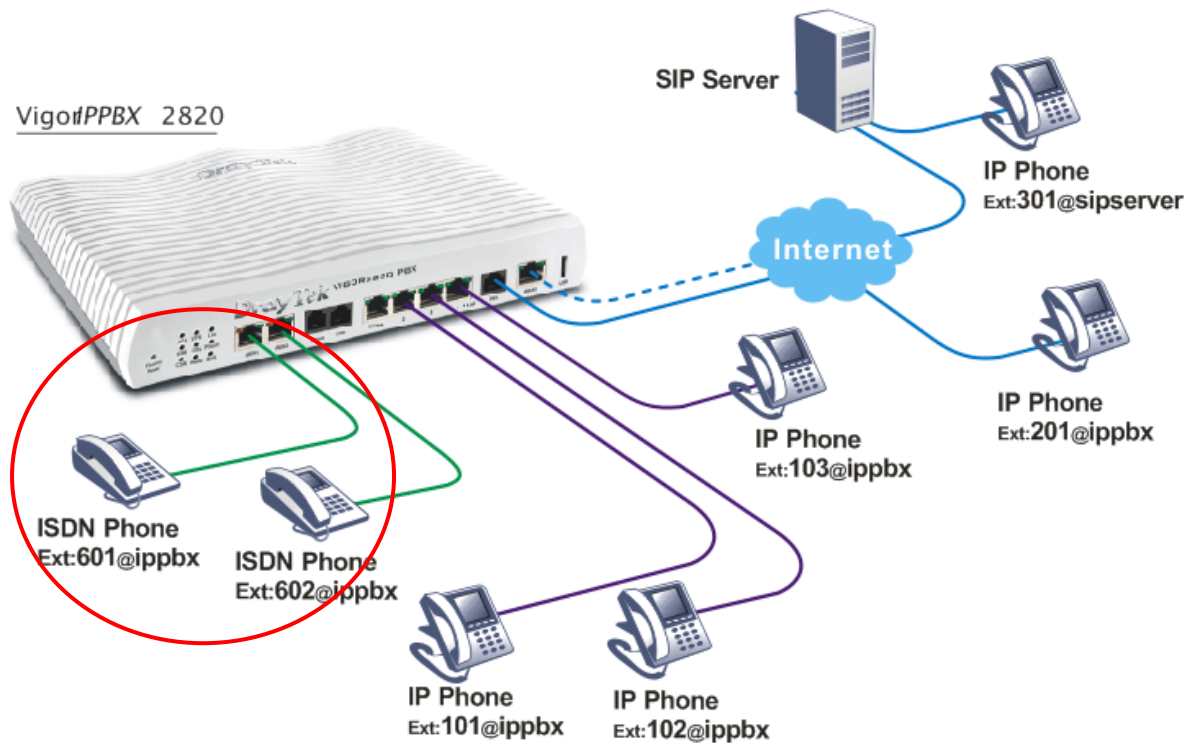
- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- **The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.**

### 3.5 The Integration with PSTN telephony



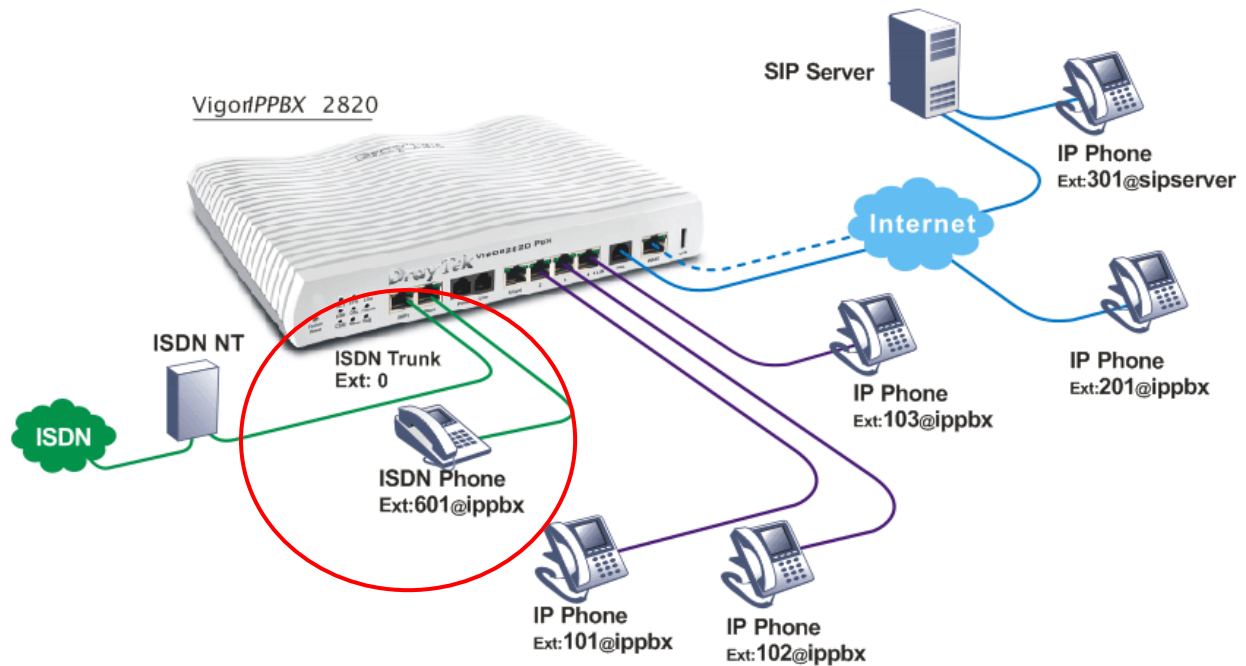
- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- **The analog land line is connected to the Line port.**
- **The analog phone is connected to the Phone port and is using ext. no. 401 at the VigorIPPBX 2820.**

### 3.6 The Added ISDN Telephony



- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- **The ISDN phones with ext. no. 601 and 602 are connected to NT-interface of the VigorIPPBX 2820.**

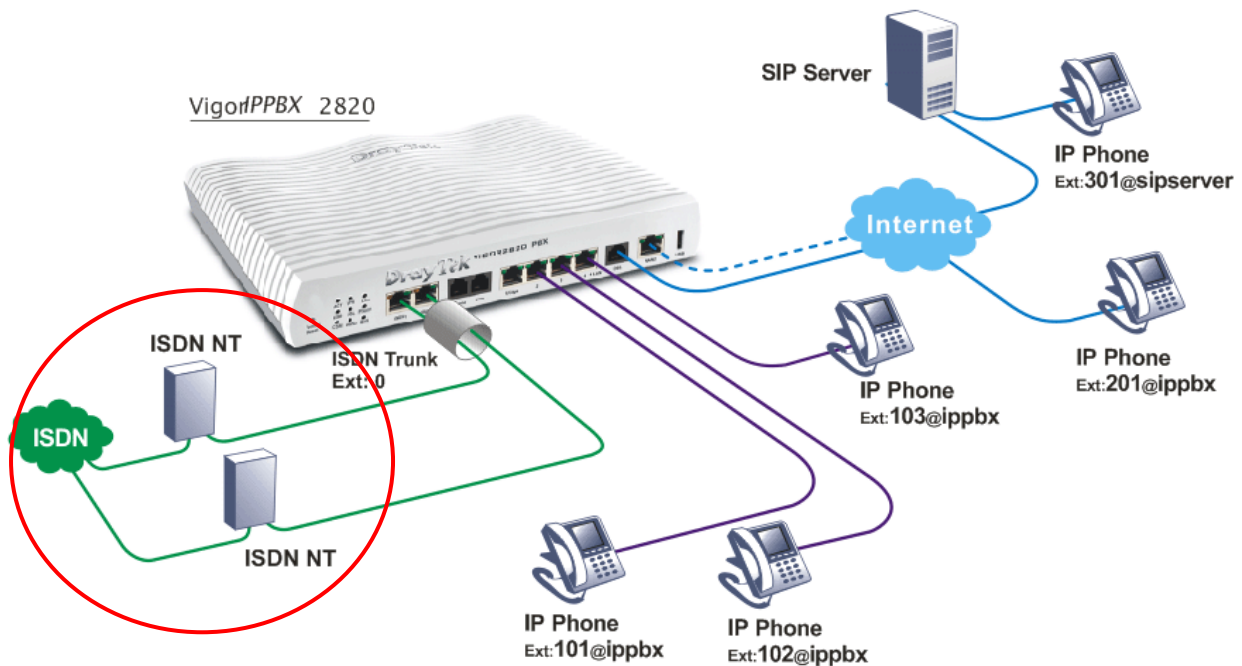
### 3.7 The Integrated ISDN line



- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- **The ISDN line is connected to TE-interface of the VigorIPPBX 2820.**
- **The ISDN phone with ext. no. 601 is connected to NT-interface of the VigorIPPBX 2820.**



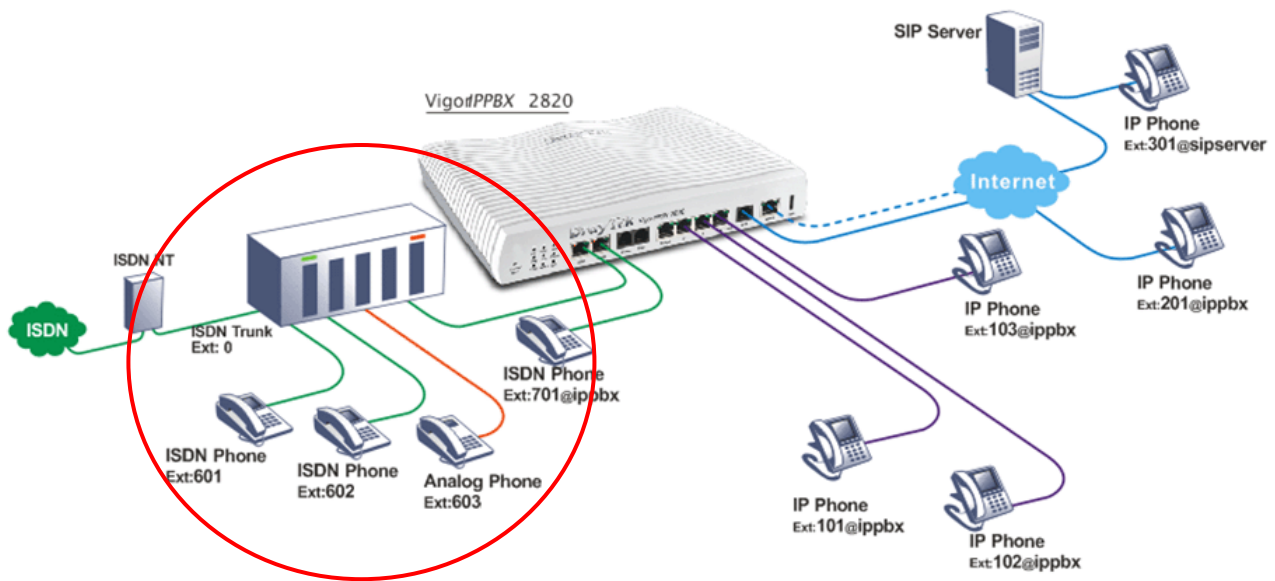
### 3.8 The 4 B Channels of Two ISDN Lines



- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- **The two ISDN lines are connected to two TE-interfaces of the VigorIPPBX 2820.**

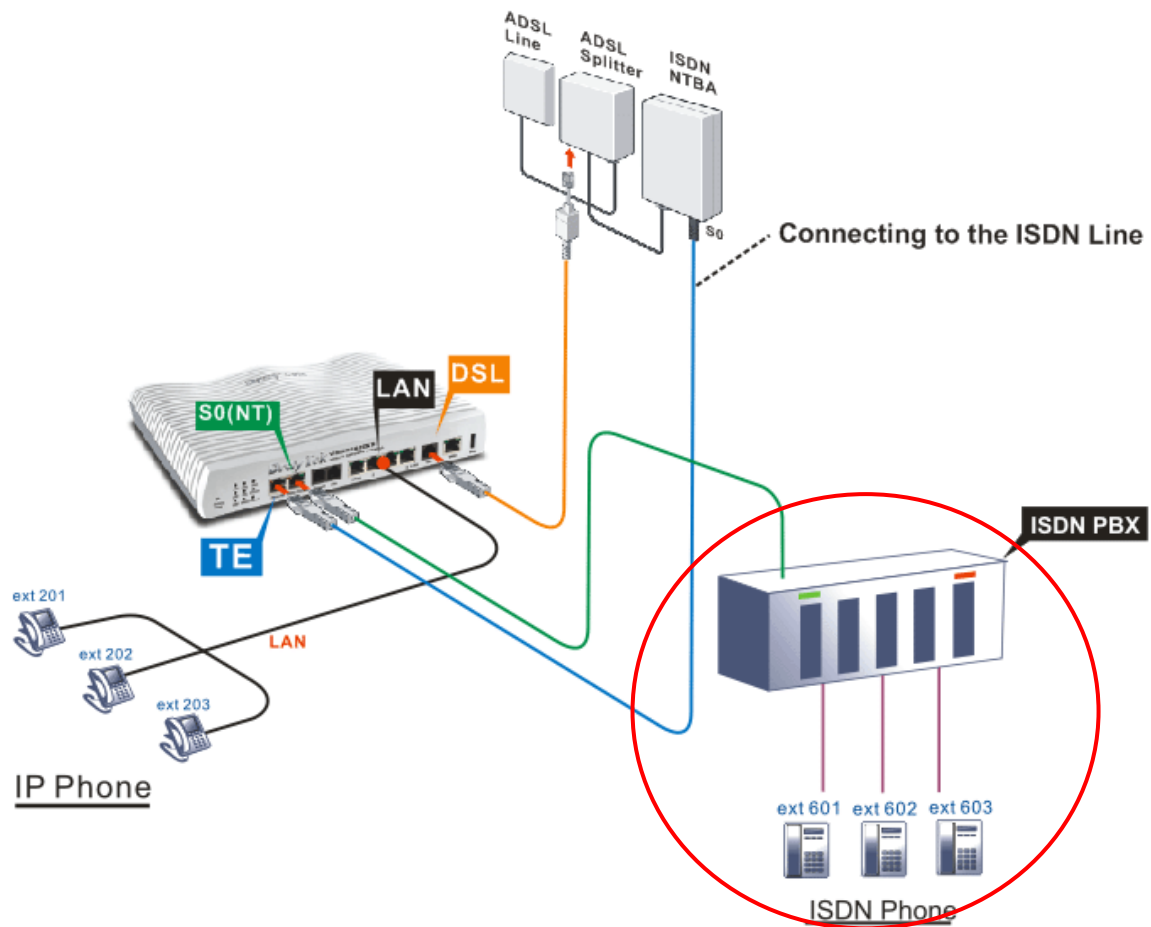


### 3.9 The Integration of ISDN PBX with One ISDN Line



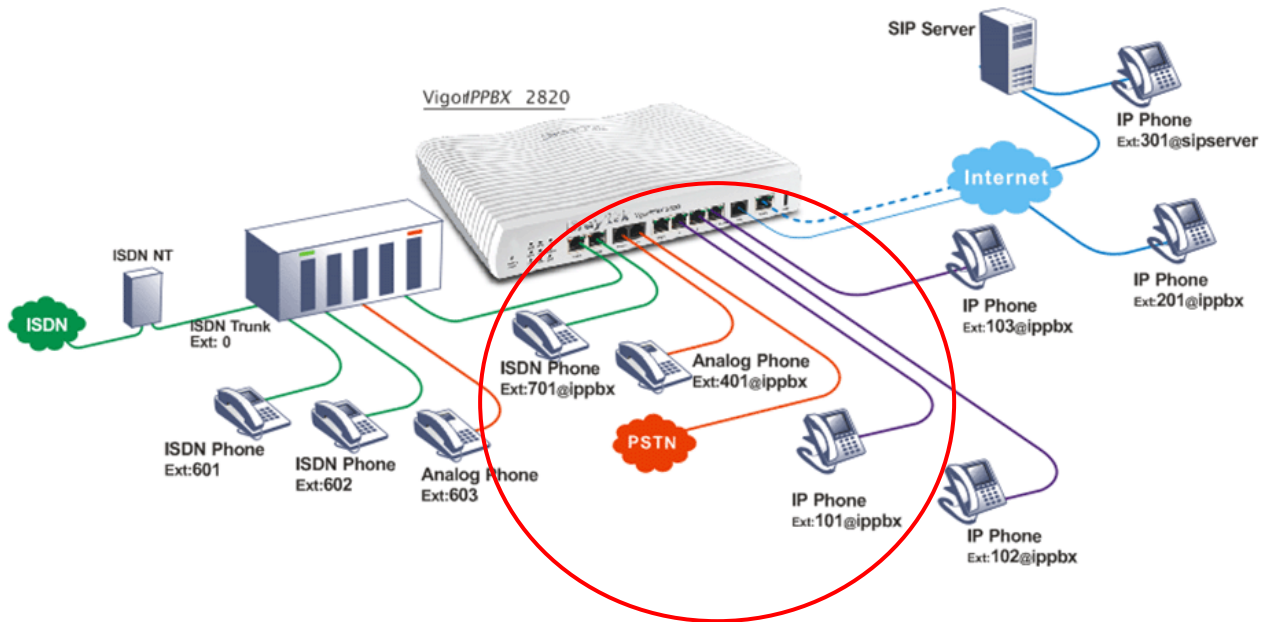
- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered On the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- **The ISDN phone with ext. no. 701 is connected to NT-interface of the VigorIPPBX 2820.**
- **The ISDN PBX is connected to TE-interface of the VigorIPPBX 2820. The ISDN phones with ext. no. 601 and 602 are connected to ISDN PBX.**
- **The ISDN PBX also provides analog extensions to allow analog phones to be connected. The analog phone with ext. no. 603 is connected at the ISDN PBX.**

### 3.10 The Integration of ISDN PBX with One ISDN Line-2



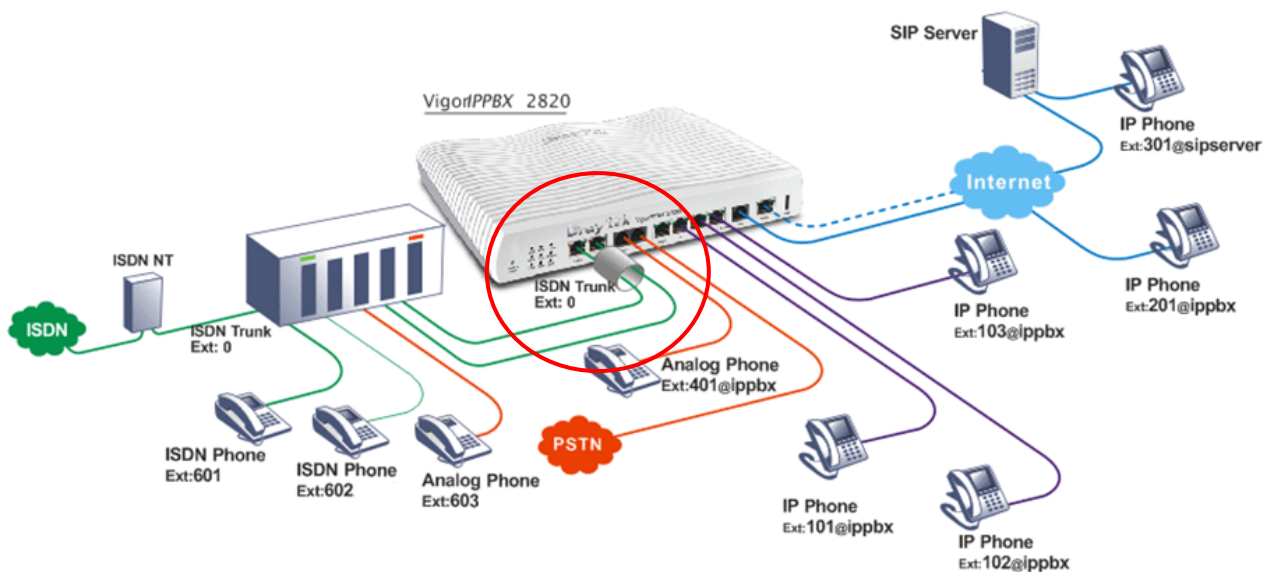
- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (201, 202, and 203) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the Vigor*IPPBX* 2820.
- The Vigor*IPPBX* 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- **The ISDN PBX is connected to S0-interface of the Vigor*IPPBX* 2820. The ISDN phones with ext. no. 601 and 602 are connected to ISDN PBX.**
- **The ISDN line is connected to TE-interface of the Vigor*IPPBX* 2820.**

### 3.11 The Deployment of ISDN PBX and PSTN Network



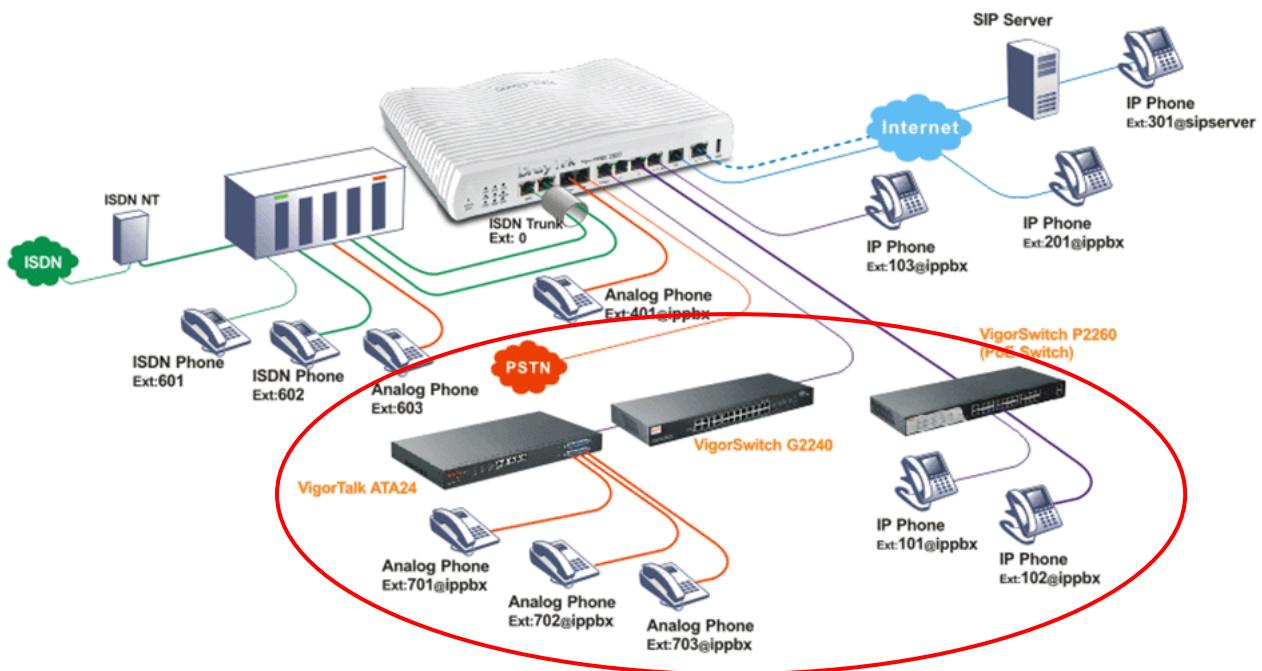
- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- The ISDN phone with ext. no. 701 is connected to NT-interface of the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The ISDN PBX is connected to TE-interface of the VigorIPPBX 2820. The ISDN phones with ext. no. 601 and 602 are connected to ISDN PBX.
- The ISDN PBX also provides analog extensions to allow analog phones to be connected. The analog phone with ext. no. 603 is connected at the ISDN PBX.
- **The analog land line is connected to the Line port.**
- **The analog phone is connected to the Phone port and is using ext. no. 401 at the VigorIPPBX 2820.**

### 3.12 The Integration of ISDN Telephony and PSTN Network



- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones are connected to LAN ports and set with ext. no. 101, 102 & 103.
- The IP-based telephones (101, 102, and 103) and remote IP-based phone are registered on VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- The ISDN phones with ext. no. 601 and 602 are connected to ISDN PBX.
- The ISDN PBX also provides analog extensions to allow analog phones to be connected. The analog phone with ext. no. 603 is connected at the ISDN PBX.
- The analog land line is connected to the Line port.
- The analog phone is connected to the Phone port and is using ext. no. 401 at VigorIPPBX 2820.
- **The ISDN PBX's two internal lines are connected to the TE-interfaces of the VigorIPPBX 2820.**

### 3.13 The Integration of ISDN Telephony, PSTN Network and VoIP Connection



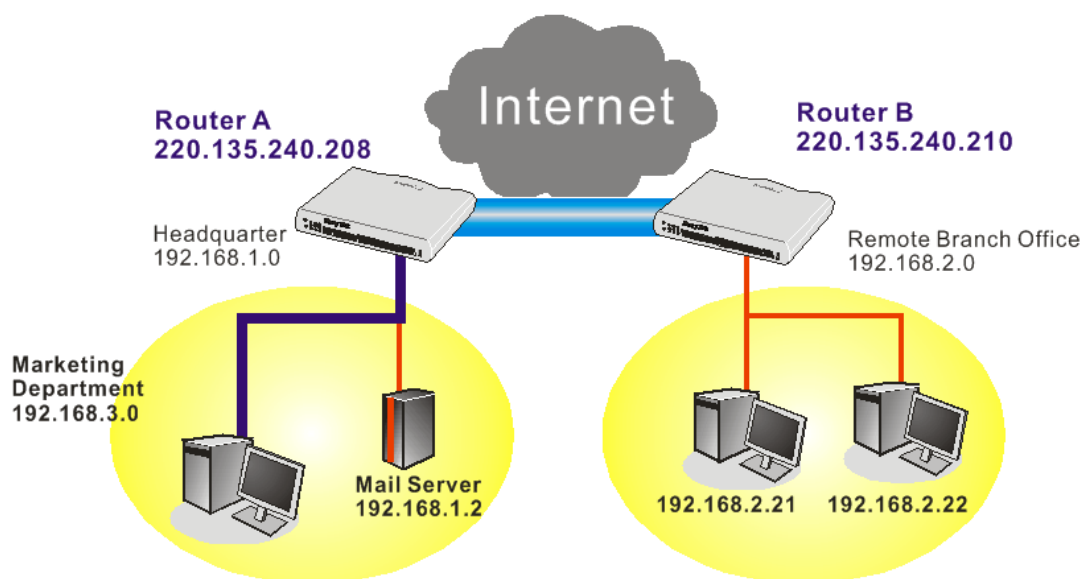
- The establishment through DSL Internet.
- Flexible second WAN for back-up.
- IP-based telephones with ext. no. 101 & 102 are connected to LAN ports of the **VigorSwitch**. **Analog telephones with ext. no. 701, 702 & 703 are connected to the VigorTalk ATA24 and are registered at the VigorIPPBX 2820.**
- The IP-based telephone with ext. no. 103 and remote IP-based phone ext. no. 201 are registered on the VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The IP-based phone with ext. no. 201 is at remote site.
- The VigorIPPBX 2820 seamlessly integrate with ITSP services (allow you to register at a SIP server).
- The remote IP-based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- The ISDN phones with ext. no. 601 and 602 are connected to ISDN PBX.
- The ISDN PBX also provides analog extensions to allow analog phones to be connected. The analog phone with ext. no. 603 is connected at the ISDN PBX.
- The analog land line is connected to the Line port.
- The analog phone is connected to the Phone port and is using ext. no. 401 at VigorIPPBX 2820.
- The ISDN PBX's two internal lines are connected to the TE-interfaces of the VigorIPPBX 2820.

This page is left blank.

# Chapter 4: Tutorial

## 4.1 Create a LAN-to-LAN Connection Between Remote Office and Headquarter

The most common case is that you may want to connect to network securely, such as the remote branch office and headquarter. According to the network structure as shown in the below illustration, you may follow the steps to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. These two networks (LANs) should NOT have the same network address.



### Settings in Router A in headquarter:

1. Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
2. Then,

For using **PPP** based services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

| PPP General Setup  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>PPP/MP Protocol</b>   |   |
| Dial-In PPP Authentication   | PAP or CHAP   |
| Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)  | Optional MPPE   |
| Mutual Authentication (PAP)  | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No |
| Username   | <input type="text"/>  |
| Password   | <input type="text"/>  |
| <b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users (When DHCP Disable set)</b> |   |
| Start IP Address   | 192.168.1.200   |

OK

For using **IPSec**-based service, such as IPSec or L2TP with IPSec Policy, you have to set general settings in **IPSec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both parties have known.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

##### VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup

Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>IKE Authentication Method</b>  |  |
| Pre-Shared Key  | .....  |
| Confirm Pre-Shared Key  | .....  |
| <b>IPSec Security Method</b>  |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)   |  |
| Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.  |  |
| High (ESP)  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES |
| Data will be encrypted and authentic.   |  |
| <div style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div> |  |

- Go to **LAN-to-LAN**. Click on one index number to edit a profile.
- Set **Common Settings** as shown below. You should enable both of VPN connections because any one of the parties may start the VPN connection.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

##### Profile Index : 1

##### 1. Common Settings

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Profile Name <input type="text" value="Branch1"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile | Call Direction <input checked="" type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-In<br><input type="checkbox"/> Always on<br>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)<br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive<br>PING to the IP <input type="text"/> |
| VPN Connection Through: <input type="button" value="WAN1 First"/>                                 |   |
| Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block           |   |



- Set **Dial-Out Settings** as shown below to dial to connect to Router B aggressively with the selected Dial-Out method.

If an **IPSec-based** service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-Out connection.

#### 2. Dial-Out Settings

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Type of Server I am calling</b><br><input type="radio"/> ISDN<br><input type="radio"/> PPTP<br><input checked="" type="radio"/> IPSec Tunnel<br><input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span> |  | Link Type <span>64k bps</span><br>Username <span>???</span><br>Password <span></span><br>PPP Authentication <span>PAP/CHAP</span><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off |
| Dial Number for ISDN or Server IP/Host Name for VPN.<br>(such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)<br><input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/>  |  | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key<br>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/><br><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><span>None</span>             |
|   |  | <b>IPSec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH)<br><input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <span>DES without Authentication</span><br><input type="button" value="Advanced"/>                 |
|   |  | Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br><input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>   |
|   |  | <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback<br><input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote  |

If a **PPP-based service** is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, PPP Authentication and VJ Compression for this Dial-Out connection.

#### 2. Dial-Out Settings

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <b>Type of Server I am calling</b><br><input type="radio"/> ISDN<br><input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP<br><input type="radio"/> IPSec Tunnel<br><input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span> |  | Link Type <span>64k bps</span><br>Username <span>draytek</span><br>Password <span>*****</span><br>PPP Authentication <span>PAP/CHAP</span><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off |
| Dial Number for ISDN or Server IP/Host Name for VPN.<br>(such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)<br><input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/>  |  | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key<br>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/><br><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><span>None</span>                      |
|   |  | <b>IPSec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH)<br><input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <span>DES without Authentication</span><br><input type="button" value="Advanced"/>                          |
|   |  | Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br><input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>  |
|   |  | <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback<br><input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote   |

6. Set **Dial-In settings** to as shown below to allow Router B dial-in to build VPN connection.

If an **IPSec-based** service is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in **IPSec General Setup** above.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> ISDN<br><input type="checkbox"/> PPTP<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel<br><input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span><br><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway<br>Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP<br><input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/><br>or Peer ID <input type="text"/> | Username <input type="text" value="???"/><br>Password <input type="text"/><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off<br><br><b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key<br><span>IKE Pre-Shared Key</span> <input type="text"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><span>None</span><br><br><b>IPSec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)<br>High (ESP)<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES<br><br><b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function<br><input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback<br>Callback Number <input type="text"/><br>Callback Budget <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s) |
|--|--|

If a **PPP-based service** is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> ISDN<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP<br><input type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel<br><input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span><br><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway<br>Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP<br><input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/><br>or Peer ID <input type="text"/> | Username <input type="text" value="draytek"/><br>Password <input type="text" value="....."/><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off<br><br><b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key<br><span>IKE Pre-Shared Key</span> <input type="text"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><span>None</span><br><br><b>IPSec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)<br>High (ESP)<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES<br><br><b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function<br><input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback<br>Callback Number <input type="text"/><br>Callback Budget <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s) |
|--|--|

- At last, set the remote network IP/subnet in **TCP/IP Network Settings** so that Router A can direct the packets destined to the remote network to Router B via the VPN connection.

#### 4. TCP/IP Network Settings

|                                     |  |  |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| My WAN IP                           | <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>       | RIP Direction  | <input type="button" value="Disable"/> |
| Remote Gateway IP                   | <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>       | From first subnet to remote network, you have to do  |  |
| Remote Network IP                   | <input type="text" value="192.168.2.0"/>   | <input type="button" value="Route"/>   |  |
| Remote Network Mask                 | <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> |  |  |
| <input type="button" value="More"/> |  | <input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this ) |  |

#### Settings in Router B in the remote office:

- Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
- Then, for using **PPP based** services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>PPP General Setup</b>   |   |
| <b>PPP/MP Protocol</b><br>Dial-In PPP Authentication <input type="button" value="PAP or CHAP"/><br>Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE) <input type="button" value="Optional MPPE"/><br>Mutual Authentication (PAP) <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No<br>Username <input type="text"/><br>Password <input type="text"/> | <b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users (When DHCP Disable set)</b><br>Start IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.2.200"/> |

For using **IPSec-based** service, such as IPSec or L2TP with IPSec Policy, you have to set general settings in **IPSec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both parties have known.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <b>VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup</b>   |                                    |
| Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).  |                                    |
| <b>IKE Authentication Method</b>   |                                    |
| Pre-Shared Key   | <input type="text" value="....."/> |
| Confirm Pre-Shared Key   | <input type="text" value="....."/> |
| <b>IPSec Security Method</b>   |                                    |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)<br>Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.  |                                    |
| High (ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES<br>Data will be encrypted and authentic. |                                    |

- Go to **LAN-to-LAN**. Click on one index number to edit a profile.

- Set **Common Settings** as shown below. You should enable both of VPN connections because any one of the parties may start the VPN connection.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

##### Profile Index : 1

##### 1. Common Settings

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Profile Name <input type="text" value="Branch1"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile | Call Direction <input checked="" type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-In<br><input type="checkbox"/> Always on<br>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)<br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive<br>PING to the IP <input type="text"/> |
| VPN Connection Through: <input type="text" value="WAN1 First"/>                                   |   |
| Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block           |   |

- Set **Dial-Out Settings** as shown below to dial to connect to Router B aggressively with the selected Dial-Out method.

If an **IPSec-based** service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-Out connection.

##### 2. Dial-Out Settings

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Type of Server I am calling</b><br><input type="radio"/> ISDN<br><input type="radio"/> PPTP<br><input checked="" type="radio"/> IPSec Tunnel<br><input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> | Link Type <input type="text" value="64k bps"/><br>Username <input type="text" value="draytek"/><br>Password <input type="text"/><br>PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP/CHAP"/><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off |
| Dial Number for ISDN or<br>Server IP/Host Name for VPN.<br>(such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)<br><input type="text" value="220.135.240.208"/>   | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key<br><input type="text" value=""/><br><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><input type="text" value="None"/>  |
|   | <b>IPSec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH)<br><input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <input type="text" value="DES without Authentication"/><br><input type="button" value="Advanced"/>  |
|   | Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br><input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>  |
|   | <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback<br><input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote   |

If a **PPP-based** service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, PPP Authentication and VJ Compression for this Dial-Out connection.

## 2. Dial-Out Settings

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Type of Server I am calling</b><br><input type="radio"/> ISDN<br><input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP<br><input type="radio"/> IPsec Tunnel<br><input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span>None</span> |  | Link Type <span>64k bps</span><br>Username <span>draytek</span><br>Password <span>••••••</span><br>PPP Authentication <span>PAP/CHAP</span><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off |
| Dial Number for ISDN or Server IP/Host Name for VPN.<br>(such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)<br><input type="text" value="220.135.240.208"/>  |  | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key<br>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/><br><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><span>None</span>                       |
|   |  | <b>IPsec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH)<br><input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <span>DES without Authentication</span><br><input type="button" value="Advanced"/>                           |
|   |  | Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br><input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>   |
|   |  | <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback<br><input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote  |

- Set **Dial-In settings** to as shown below to allow Router A dial-in to build VPN connection.

If an **IPSec-based** service is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPsec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in **IPsec General Setup** above.

## 3. Dial-In Settings

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> ISDN<br><input type="checkbox"/> PPTP<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel<br><input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <span>None</span> |  | Username <span>draytek</span><br>Password <input type="text"/><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway<br>Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP<br><input type="text" value="220.135.240.208"/><br>or Peer ID <input type="text"/>               |  | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key<br>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><span>None</span>                                     |
|  |  | <b>IPsec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)<br>High (ESP)<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES                       |
|  |  | <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function<br><input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback<br>Callback Number <input type="text"/><br>Callback Budget <input type="text"/> minute(s) |

If a **PPP-based** service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> ISDN<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP<br><input type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel<br><input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <span>None</span> |  | Username <span>draytek</span><br>Password <span>••••••</span><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway<br>Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP<br><span>220.135.240.208</span><br>or Peer ID <span></span>                                      |  | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key<br>IKE Pre-Shared Key <span></span><br><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><span>None</span>                               |
|  |  | <b>IPSec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)<br>High (ESP)<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES          |
|  |  | <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function<br><input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback<br>Callback Number <span></span><br>Callback Budget <span>0</span> minute(s) |

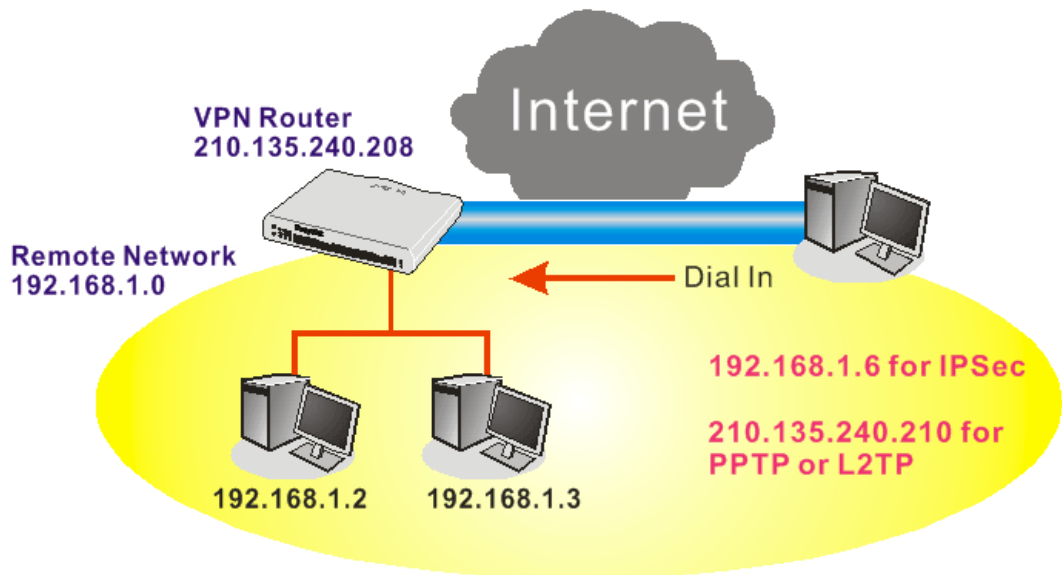
- At last, set the remote network IP/subnet in **TCP/IP Network Settings** so that Router B can direct the packets destined to the remote network to Router A via the VPN connection.

### 4. TCP/IP Network Settings

|   |   |
|---|---|
| My WAN IP <span>0.0.0.0</span><br>Remote Gateway IP <span>0.0.0.0</span><br>Remote Network IP <span>192.168.1.0</span><br>Remote Network Mask <span>255.255.255.0</span><br><input type="button" value="More"/> | RIP Direction <span>Disable</span><br>From first subnet to remote network, you have to do<br><span>Route</span><br><input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this ) |
|---|---|

## 4.2 Create a Remote Dial-in User Connection Between the Teleworker and Headquarter

The other common case is that you, as a teleworker, may want to connect to the enterprise network securely. According to the network structure as shown in the below illustration, you may follow the steps to create a Remote User Profile and install Smart VPN Client on the remote host.



### Settings in VPN Router in the enterprise office:

1. Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
2. Then, for using PPP based services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup

| PPP General Setup  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>PPP/MP Protocol</b>   |   |
| Dial-In PPP Authentication   | PAP or CHAP   |
| Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)  | Optional MPPE   |
| Mutual Authentication (PAP)  | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No |
| Username   | <input type="text"/>  |
| Password   | <input type="text"/>  |
| <b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users (When DHCP Disable set)</b> |   |
| Start IP Address   | 192.168.1.200   |

OK

For using IPSec-based service, such as IPSec or L2TP with IPSec Policy, you have to set general settings in **IKE/IPSec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both parties have known.

## VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

### VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup

Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>IKE Authentication Method</b>                |  |
| Pre-Shared Key                                  | .....  |
| Confirm Pre-Shared Key                          | .....  |
| <b>IPSec Security Method</b>                    |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH) | Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.   |
| High (ESP)                                      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES |
| Data will be encrypted and authentic.           |  |
| OK Cancel                                       |  |

3. Go to **Remote Dial-In User**. Click on one index number to edit a profile.
4. Set **Dial-In** settings to as shown below to allow the remote user dial-in to build VPN connection.

If an **IPSec-based** service is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in **IPSec General Setup** above.

## VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

### Index No. 1

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>User account and Authentication</b>  |   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable this account  | Username <input type="text" value="???"/>   |
| Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)                           | Password <input type="text"/>   |
| <b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b>   |   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN   | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> PPTP   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel  | <input type="text" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509)  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node   | <input type="text" value="None"/>   |
| Remote Client IP or Peer ISDN Number  | <b>IPSec Security Method</b>  |
| <input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/>                                      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)   |
| or Peer ID <input type="text"/>   | High (ESP)  |
|   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES            |
|   | Local ID <input type="text"/> (optional)   |
|   | <b>Callback Function</b>  |
|   | <input type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback function  |
|   | <input type="checkbox"/> Specify the callback number  |
|   | Callback Number <input type="text"/>  |
|   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback Budget Control   |
|   | Callback Budget <input type="text" value="30"/> minute(s)   |
| OK Clear Cancel   |   |



If a **PPP-based** service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

**VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User**

**Index No. 1**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>User account and Authentication</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account<br>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)  | Username <input type="text" value="draytek"/><br>Password <input type="password" value="*****"/>  |
| <b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> ISDN<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP<br><input type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel<br><input type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node<br>Remote Client IP or Peer ISDN Number <input type="text" value="220.135.240.210"/><br>or Peer ID <input type="text"/> | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key<br>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature (X.509)<br><input type="text" value="None"/><br><b>IPsec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium (AH)<br>High (ESP)<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES<br>Local ID <input type="text"/> (optional)<br><b>Callback Function</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback function<br><input type="checkbox"/> Specify the callback number<br>Callback Number <input type="text"/><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback Budget Control<br>Callback Budget <input type="text" value="30"/> minute(s) |

OK Clear Cancel

**Settings in the remote host:**

1. For Win98/ME, you may use "Dial-up Networking" to create the PPTP tunnel to Vigor router. For Win2000/XP, please use "Network and Dial-up connections" or "Smart VPN Client", complimentary software to help you create PPTP, L2TP, and L2TP over IPsec tunnel. You can find it in CD-ROM in the package or go to [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com) download center. Install as instructed.
2. After successful installation, for the first time user, you should click on the **Step 0. Configure** button. Reboot the host.



3. In **Step 2. Connect to VPN Server**, click **Insert** button to add a new entry.

If an IPSec-based service is selected as shown below,



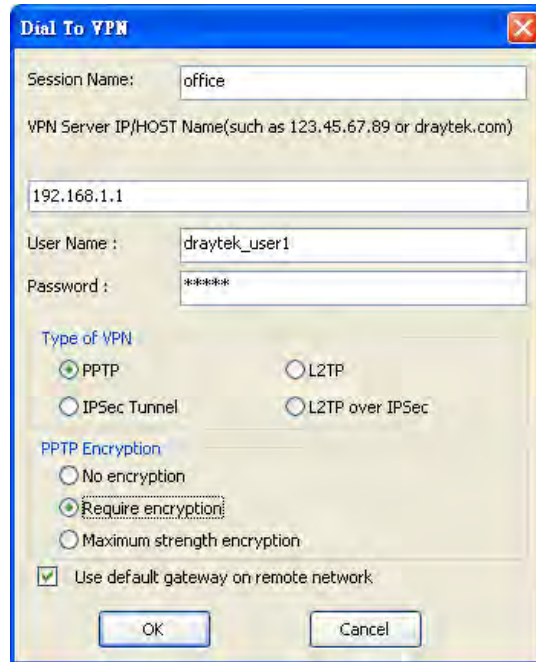
The 'Dial To VPN' dialog box is shown. It has a blue title bar with the text 'Dial To VPN' and a close button. The fields are: Session Name: 'Office'; VPN Server IP/HOST Name: '192.168.1.1'; User Name: 'draytek\_user'; Password: '1234567890'. Under 'Type of VPN', 'IPSec Tunnel' is selected. Under 'PPTP Encryption', 'Maximum strength encryption' is selected. There is a checkbox 'Use default gateway on remote network' which is unchecked. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

You may further specify the method you use to get IP, the security method, and authentication method. If the Pre-Shared Key is selected, it should be consistent with the one set in VPN router.



The 'IPSec Policy Setting' dialog box is shown. It has a blue title bar with the text 'IPSec Policy Setting' and a close button. The fields are: My IP: '172.16.3.100'. Under 'Type of IPSec', 'Virture IP' is selected. Under 'Obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP over IPSec)', 'Obtain an IP address automatically (DHCP over IPSec)' is selected. Under 'Security Method', 'High(ESP)' is selected. Under 'Authority Method', 'Pre-shared Key' is selected. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

If a PPP-based service is selected, you should further specify the remote VPN server IP address, Username, Password, and encryption method. The User Name and Password should be consistent with the one set up in the VPN router. To use default gateway on remote network means that all the packets of remote host will be directed to VPN server then forwarded to Internet. This will make the remote host seem to be working in the enterprise network.



**Dial To VPN**

Session Name: office

VPN Server IP/HOST Name(such as 123.45.67.89 or draytek.com)

192.168.1.1

User Name : draytek\_user1

Password : \*\*\*\*\*

Type of VPN

☒ PPTP ☐ L2TP

☐ IPSec Tunnel ☐ L2TP over IPSec

PPTP Encryption

☐ No encryption

☒ Require encryption

☐ Maximum strength encryption

☒ Use default gateway on remote network

OK Cancel

- Click **Connect** button to build connection. When the connection is successful, you will find a green light on the right down corner.

## 4.3 QoS Setting Example

Assume a teleworker sometimes works at home and takes care of children. When working time, he would use Vigor router at home to connect to the server in the headquarter office downtown via either HTTPS or VPN to check email and access internal database. Meanwhile, children may chat on Skype in the restroom.

- Go to **Bandwidth Management>>Quality of Service**.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

| General Setup |        |                     |           |         |         |         |        |                       | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |  |
|---------------|--------|---------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|--|--|
| Index         | Status | Bandwidth           | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control |  |  |
| WAN1          | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive              | <a href="#">Setup</a>                  |  |
| WAN2          | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive              | <a href="#">Setup</a>                  |  |

| Class Rule |      |                      |                      |  |
|------------|------|----------------------|----------------------|--|
| Index      | Name | Rule                 | Service Type         |  |
| Class 1    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> | <a href="#">Edit</a> |  |
| Class 2    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |  |
| Class 3    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |  |

- Click **Setup** link of WAN 1. Make sure the QoS Control on the left corner is checked. And select **BOTH** in **Direction**.

## Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

### WAN1 General Setup

☒ Enable the QoS Control OUT ▼

| Index   | Class Name |
|---------|------------|
| Class 1 |            |
| Class 2 |            |

3. Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class 1 by clicking **Edit** link. Type the name **E-mail** for Class 1.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

**Class Index #1**  
Name

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|----|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1  | Empty  | -             | -              | -                  | -            |

4. For this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth (e.g., 25%) for **E-mail** using protocol POP3 and SMTP.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

WAN1 General Setup

☒ Enable the QoS Control BOTH ▼

| Index   | Class Name | Reserved_bandwidth Ratio          |
|---------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| Class 1 | E-mail     | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| Class 2 |            | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| Class 3 |            | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
|         | Others     | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |

☐ Enable UDP Bandwidth Control Limited\_bandwidth Ratio  %

☐ Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize [Online Statistics](#)

5. Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class 2 by clicking **Edit** link. In this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth for **HTTPS**. And click **OK**.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)

**Class Index #2**

Name

| NO  | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|---|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 <input type="radio"/>   | Active | Any           | Any            | ANY                | ANY          |
| <div><input type="button" value="Add"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/></div> |        |               |                |                    |              |

6. Click **Setup** link for WAN1.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)

**General Setup**

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Status | Bandwidth           | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control |                       |
|-------|--------|---------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| WAN1  | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Both      | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive              | <a href="#">Setup</a> |
| WAN2  | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive              | <a href="#">Setup</a> |

**Class Rule**

| Index   | Name   | Rule                 | Service Type         |
|---------|--------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 | E-mail | <a href="#">Edit</a> | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Class 2 | HTTPS  | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |
| Class 3 |        | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |

7. Check **Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** on the bottom to prevent enormous UDP traffic of VoIP influent other application. Click **OK**.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)

**WAN1 General Setup**

☒ **Enable the QoS Control**

| Index   | Class Name | Reserved_bandwidth Ratio          |
|---------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| Class 1 | E-mail     | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| Class 2 | HTTPS      | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| Class 3 |            | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
|         | Others     | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |

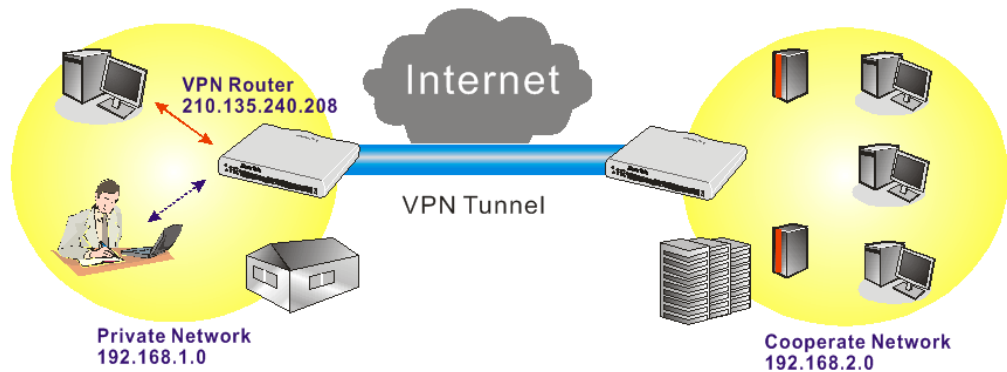
☒ **Enable UDP Bandwidth Control**

Limited\_bandwidth Ratio  %

☐ Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

[Online Statistics](#)

8. If the worker has connected to the headquarter using host to host VPN tunnel, he may set up an index for it. Enter the Class Name of Index 3. In this index, he will set reserved bandwidth for 1 VPN tunnel.



#### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

##### Class Index #3

Name

| NO                      | Status   | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|-------------------------|----------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1 <input type="radio"/> | Inactive | Any           | Any            | ANY                | undefined    |

9. Click **Edit** to open the following window. Check the **ACT** box, first.

#### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

##### Rule Edit

☒ ACT

Local Address

Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

Service Type

**Note:** Please choose/setup the Service Type first.

10. Then click **Edit** of **Local Address** to set a worker's subnet address. Click **Edit** of **Remote Address** to set headquarter's IP address. Leave other fields and click **OK**.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)

**Rule Edit**

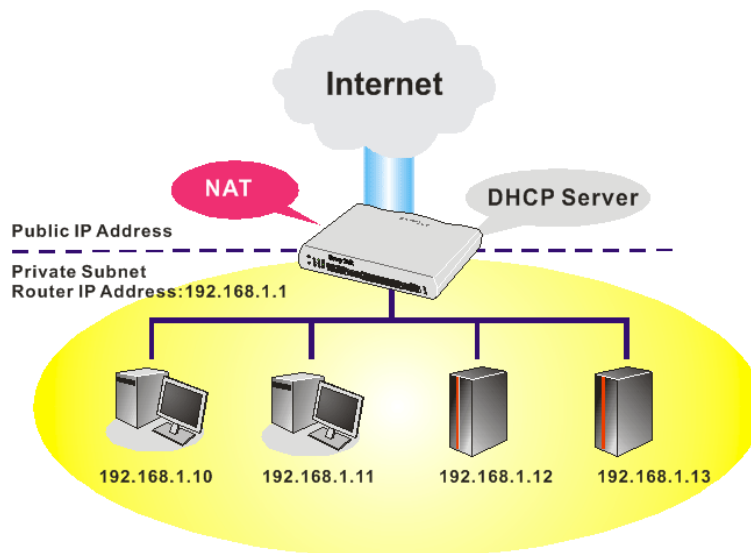
|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACT |                                |
| Local Address                           | 192.168.1.10 <span>Edit</span> |
| Remote Address                          | 192.168.2.0 <span>Edit</span>  |
| DiffServ CodePoint                      | ANY                            |
| Service Type                            | ANY                            |

**Note:** Please choose/setup the [Service Type](#) first.

OK Cancel

## 4.4 LAN – Created by Using NAT

An example of default setting and the corresponding deployment are shown below. The default Vigor router private IP address/Subnet Mask is 192.168.1.1/255.255.255.0. The built-in DHCP server is enabled so it assigns every local NATed host an IP address of 192.168.1.x starting from 192.168.1.10.

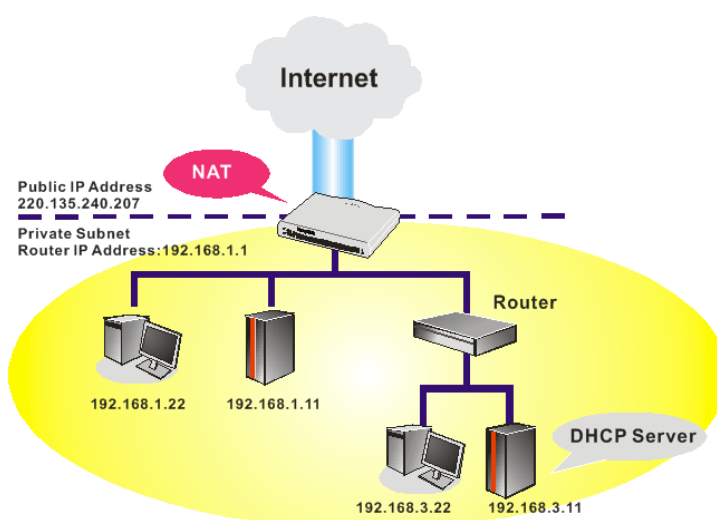


You can just set the settings wrapped inside the red rectangles to fit the request of NAT usage.

## LAN >> General Setup

| Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup   |  |
|--|--|
| <b>LAN IP Network Configuration</b><br>For NAT Usage<br>1st IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/><br>1st Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/><br>For IP Routing Usage: <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable<br>2nd IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.2.1"/><br>2nd Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/><br><input type="button" value="2nd Subnet DHCP Server"/><br>RIP Protocol Control: <input type="text" value="Disable"/> | <b>DHCP Server Configuration</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable Server <input type="radio"/> Disable Server<br>Relay Agent: <input type="radio"/> 1st Subnet <input type="radio"/> 2nd Subnet<br>Start IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/><br>IP Pool Counts: <input type="text" value="50"/><br>Gateway IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/><br>DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent: <input type="text"/><br><b>DNS Server IP Address</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Force DNS manual setting<br>Primary IP Address: <input type="text"/><br>Secondary IP Address: <input type="text"/> |

To use another DHCP server in the network rather than the built-in one of Vigor Router, you have to change the settings as show below.



You can just set the settings wrapped inside the red rectangles to fit the request of NAT usage.

## LAN >> General Setup

| Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup   |  |
|--|--|
| <b>LAN IP Network Configuration</b><br>For NAT Usage<br>1st IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/><br>1st Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/><br>For IP Routing Usage: <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable<br>2nd IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.2.1"/><br>2nd Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/><br><input type="button" value="2nd Subnet DHCP Server"/><br>RIP Protocol Control: <input type="text" value="Disable"/> | <b>DHCP Server Configuration</b><br><input type="radio"/> Enable Server <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable Server<br>Relay Agent: <input type="radio"/> 1st Subnet <input type="radio"/> 2nd Subnet<br>Start IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.10"/><br>IP Pool Counts: <input type="text" value="50"/><br>Gateway IP Address: <input type="text" value="192.168.1.1"/><br>DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent: <input type="text"/><br><b>DNS Server IP Address</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Force DNS manual setting<br>Primary IP Address: <input type="text"/><br>Secondary IP Address: <input type="text"/> |



## 4.5 Upgrade Firmware for Your Router

Before upgrading your router firmware, you need to install the Router Tools. The file **RTSxxx.exe** will be asked to copy onto your computer. Remember the place of storing the execution file.

1. Go to [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com).
2. Access into **Support >> Downloads**. Please find out **Firmware** menu and click it. Search the model you have and click on it to download the newly update firmware for your router.

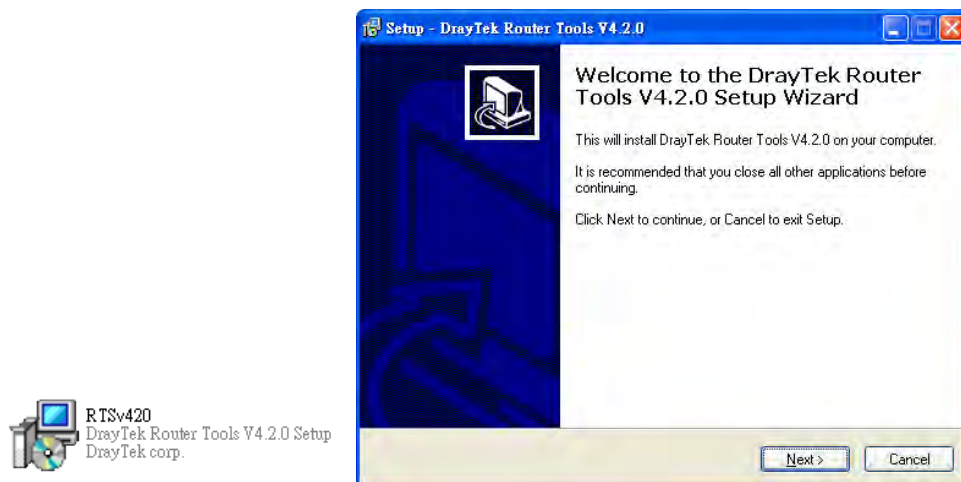
| Model Name       | Firmware Version | Release Date |
|------------------|------------------|--------------|
| Vigor120 series  | 3.2.2.1          | 26/06/2009   |
| Vigor2100 series | 2.6.2            | 26/02/2008   |
| Vigor2104 series | 2.5.7.3          | 13/02/2008   |
| Vigor2110 series | 3.3.0            | 25/06/2009   |
| Vigor2200/X/W/E  | 2.3.11           | 22/09/2004   |
| Vigor2200Eplus   | 2.5.7            | 18/02/2009   |
| Vigor2200USB     | 2.3.10           | 16/03/2005   |

3. Access into **Support >> Downloads**. Please find out **Utility** menu and click it.

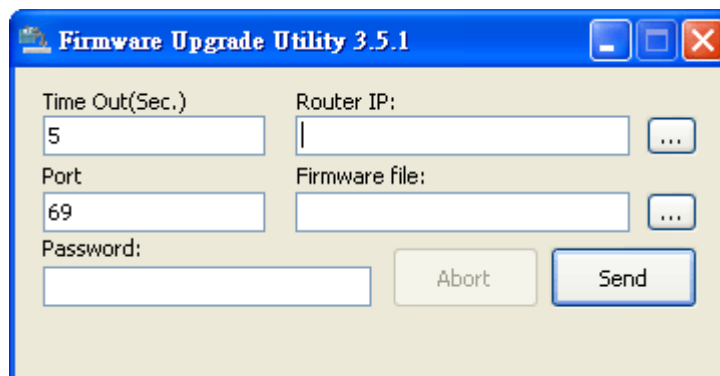
| Tools Name                  | Release Date | Version                     | OS                        | Support Model   |
|-----------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| Router Tools                | 2009/06/18   | 4.2.0                       | MS-Windows                | All Modules   |
| Syslog Tools                | 2009/06/18   | 4.2.0                       | MS-Windows XP<br>MS-Vista | All Modules   |
| VigorPro Alert Notice Tools | 2009/06/03   | 1.1.0<br>( Multi-language ) | MS-Windows XP<br>MS-Vista | VigorPro 100 series<br>VigorPro 5500 series<br>VigorPro 5510 series<br>VigorPro 5300 series |
| Smart VPN Client            | 2009/05/25   | 3.6.3<br>( Multi-language ) | MS-Windows XP<br>MS-Vista | All Modules   |
| Smart Monitor               | 2009/03/25   | 2.0                         | MS-Windows XP             | Vigor2950 series<br>VigorPro 5510 series  |

4. Click on the link of **Router Tools** to download the file. After downloading the files, please decompressed the file onto your host.

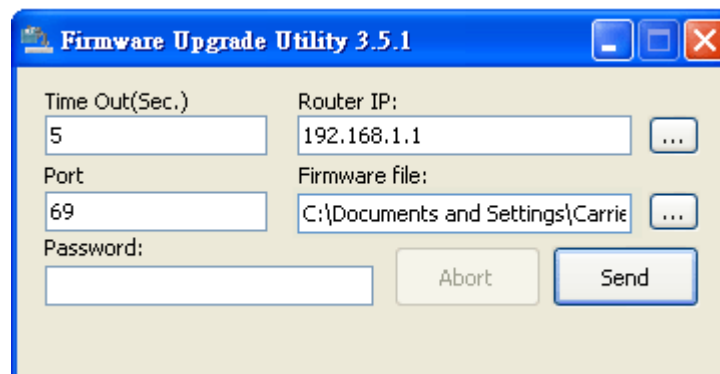
5. Double click on the icon of router tool. The setup wizard will appear.



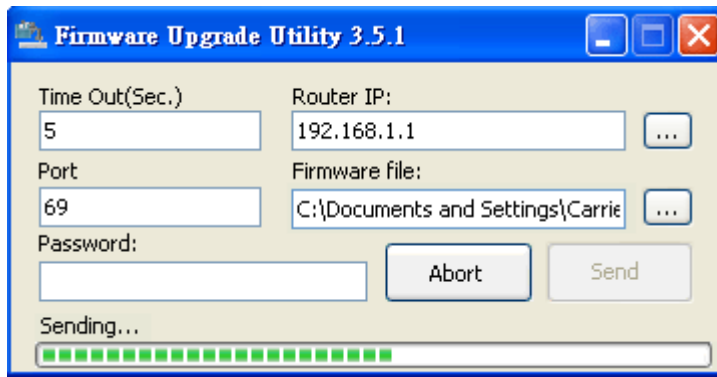
6. Follow the onscreen instructions to install the tool. Finally, click **Finish** to end the installation.
7. From the **Start** menu, open **Programs** and choose **Router Tools XXX >> Firmware Upgrade Utility**.



8. Type in your router IP, usually **192.168.1.1**.
9. Click the button to the right side of Firmware file typing box. Locate the files that you download from the company web sites. You will find out two files with different extension names, **xxxx.all** (keep the old custom settings) and **xxxx.rst** (reset all the custom settings to default settings). Choose any one of them that you need.

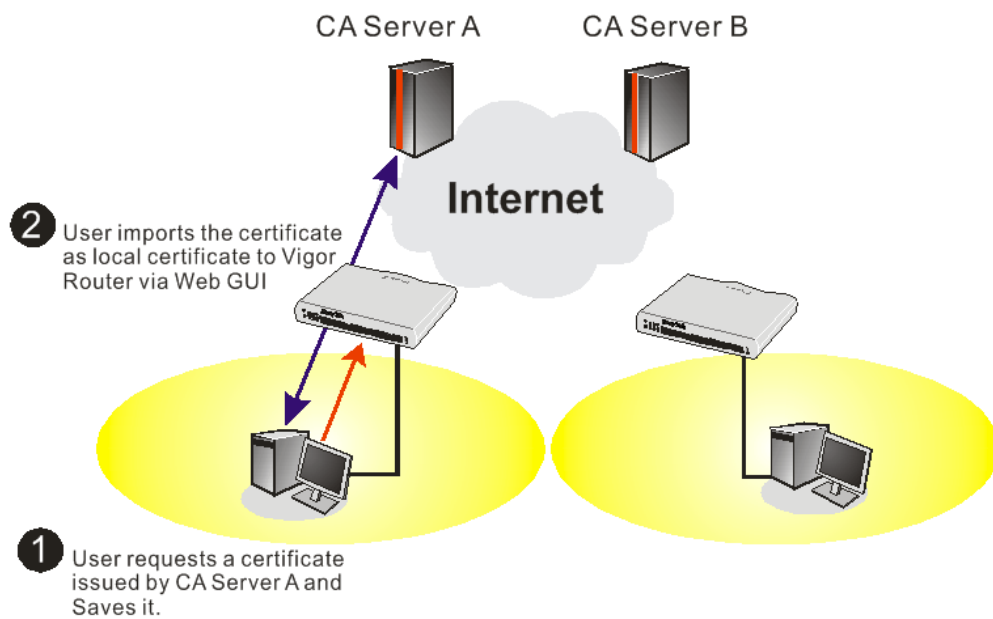


10. Click **Send**.



11. Now the firmware update is finished.

## 4.6 Request a certificate from a CA server on Windows CA Server



1. Go to **Certificate Management** and choose **Local Certificate**.

[Certificate Management >> Local Certificate](#)

### X509 Local Certificate Configuration

| Name  | Subject | Status | Modify                                      |
|-------|---------|--------|---|
| Local | ---     | ---    | <a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> |

[GENERATE](#) [IMPORT](#) [REFRESH](#)

**X509 Local Certificate**

2. You can click **GENERATE** button to start to edit a certificate request. Enter the information in the certificate request.

[Certificate Management >> Local Certificate](#)

**Generate Certificate Request**

**Subject Alternative Name**

Type

IP

**Subject Name**

Country (C)

State (ST)

Location (L)

Organization (O)

Organization Unit (OU)

Common Name (CN)

Email (E)

**Key Type**

**Key Size**

3. Copy and save the X509 Local Certificate Request as a text file and save it for later use.

[Certificate Management >> Local Certificate](#)

**X509 Local Certificate Configuration**

| Name  | Subject                         | Status     | Modify  |
|-------|---------------------------------|------------|---|
| Local | /C=TW/ST=HS/O=Draytek/OU=RD/... | Requesting | <input type="button" value="View"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |

**X509 Local Certificate Request**

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBnTCCAQYCAQAwxTELMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxZzAjbG9nbGAgTakhTMRwDgYDVQQK
EwdEcmF5dGVrMQswCQYDVQQLAwJRSDE1MCAgCSqGSIb3DQEJARYTe3VwcG9ydEBk
cmF5dGVrLnNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOBjQAwgYkCgYEAyZELVTVBytix
OTSSZSQdw1Re1tv1HnVmm/MFC0y9x+XEWNGK46jdGY1LSAvJTduHH9Oz4OMWx02G
mASVORtj7HbN0dYn88p1xRrQFgk8nkbMLdAqb1Ooc/1sYN/smGb4N+Pbo4VMO1VO
dKiyAPfp/2020Wscddxh/HZ3Ys8m60CAwEAaAAAMAOGCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GB
AGNB9071V44sgXwiWnXHJvdFLD0dwcQO1ZL1XRn+OVdheJjvaISCgiqzJQCkaDQ7
nacBqEc1W0chKzES0dyDc8mtIf7k+1045SeuY7nxsWxvPIOn31JMJGMZvQSVrTYu
sOvJGBHHwKSkWb1RAZLSxvHjDoMX16czTiybedZSsrJw
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
```

4. Connect to CA server via web browser. Follow the instruction to submit the request. Below we take a Windows 2000 CA server for example. Select **Request a Certificate**.

Microsoft Certificate Services -- vigor Home

---

**Welcome**

You use this web site to request a certificate for your web browser, e-mail client, or other secure program. Once you acquire a certificate, you will be able to securely identify yourself to other people over the web, sign your e-mail messages, encrypt your e-mail messages, and more depending upon the type of certificate you request.

**Select a task:**

- ☐ Retrieve the CA certificate or certificate revocation list
- ☒ Request a certificate
- ☐ Check on a pending certificate

## Select **Advanced request**.

Microsoft Certificate Services -- vigor Home

### Choose Request Type

Please select the type of request you would like to make:

☐ User certificate request

☒ Advanced request

Next >

## Select **Submit a certificate request a base64 encoded PKCS #10 file or a renewal request using a base64 encoded PKCS #7 file**

Microsoft Certificate Services -- vigor Home

### Advanced Certificate Requests

You can request a certificate for yourself, another user, or a computer using one of the following methods. Note that the policy of the certification authority (CA) will determine the certificates that you can obtain.

☐ Submit a certificate request to this CA using a form.

☒ Submit a certificate request using a base64 encoded PKCS #10 file or a renewal request using a base64 encoded PKCS #7 file.

☐ Request a certificate for a smart card on behalf of another user using the Smart Card Enrollment Station.  
*You must have an enrollment agent certificate to submit a request for another user.*

Next >

## Import the X509 Local Certificate Request text file. Select **Router (Offline request)** or **IPSec (Offline request)** below.

Microsoft Certificate Services -- vigor Home

### Submit A Saved Request

Paste a base64 encoded PKCS #10 certificate request or PKCS #7 renewal request generated by an external application (such as a web server) into the request field to submit the request to the certification authority (CA).

**Saved Request:**

Base64 Encoded Certificate Request (PKCS #10 or #7):

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBqjCCARhCAQAwQTELMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxEDAO
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEQWEXByZXRyYX10ZWsuY29t
A4GNADCB1QKBgQDQYB7mmZFfHn9/1eQnG03Xk++
hX4bp89cUf9d1oACGG1M/tcB0ckdcZdFFFvIXcP3
x/G0A7CTvO/fQzpxroCw1JTLjS0/Bn9v50951G
-----
```

[Browse for a file to insert.](#)

**Certificate Template:**

Administrator

**Additional Attributes:**

Authenticated Session

Basic EFS

EFS Recovery Agent

User

IPSEC (Offline request)

**Router (Offline request)**

Subordinate Certification Authority

Web Server

Submit >

Then you have done the request and the server now issues you a certificate. Select **Base 64 encoded certificate** and **Download CA certificate**. Now you should get a certificate (.cer file) and save it.

- Back to Vigor router, go to **Local Certificate**. Click **IMPORT** button and browse the file to import the certificate (.cer file) into Vigor router. When finished, click refresh and you will find the below window showing “-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----.....”

#### Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

##### X509 Local Certificate Configuration

| Name  | Subject                         | Status     | Modify                                      |
|-------|---------------------------------|------------|---|
| Local | /C=TW/ST=HS/O=Draytek/OU=RD/... | Requesting | <a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> |

[GENERATE](#)
[IMPORT](#)
[REFRESH](#)

**X509 Local Certificate Request**

```

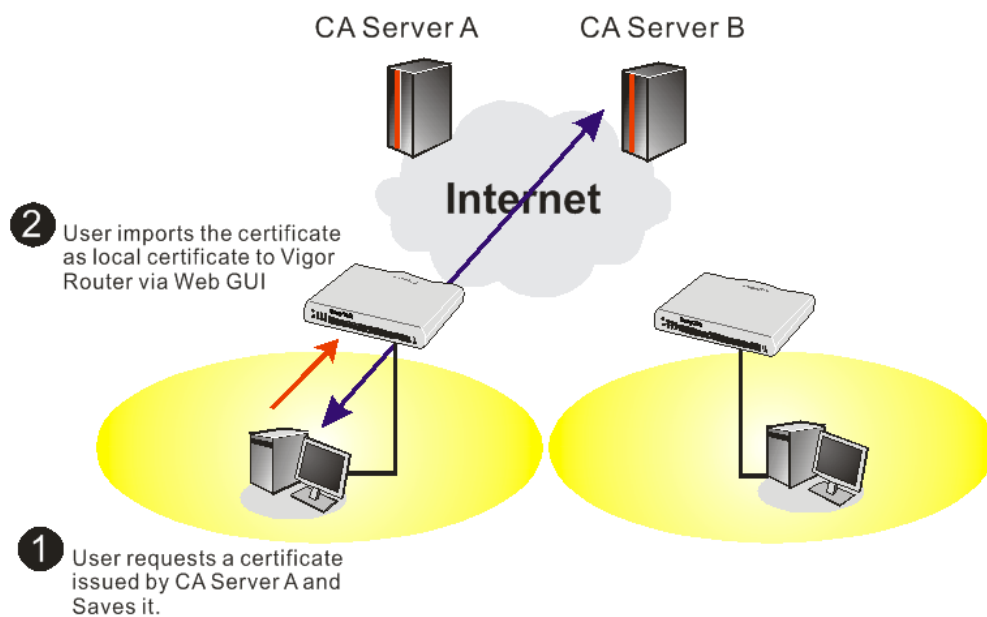
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBnTCCAQYCAQAwXTELMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxCzAJBgNVBAGTAkhTHRAdgYDVQQK
EwdEcmF5dGVrMQswCQYDVQQLFwJSRDEiMCAGCSqGS Ib3DQEJARYTc3VwcG9ydEBk
cmF5dGVrLmNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOBjQAwgYkCgYEAyZELVTBvYtix
OTSZSZQdwlReltvlHnVwm/MFC0y9x+XEWNGK46jdGY1LSAvJTduHH9Oz4OMWx02G
mASVORtj7HbNODYn88p1xRrQFgk8nkbMLdAqb1Ooc/1sYN/smGb4N+Pbo4VM01VO
dKiyAPfp/Z02OWsCddxh/HZ3Ys8m60CAwEAaAAAMAOGCSqGS Ib3DQEBBQUAA4GB
AGNB9071V44sgXwiWnXHJvdFLD0dwcQO1ZL1XRn+OVdheJjvaISCgiqzJQCKaDQ7
nacBqEc1W0chKzES0dyDc8mtIf7k+i045SeuY7nxsWxvPIOn31JMjGMZvQSVrTYu
sOvJGBHHwKSkWb1RAZL5xvHjDoMX16czT1ybedZSsrJw
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----

```

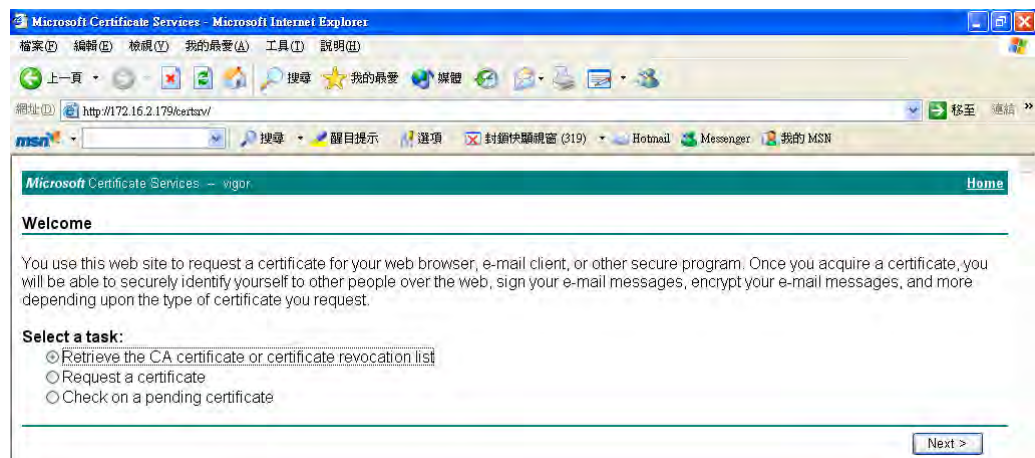
- You may review the detail information of the certificate by clicking **View** button.

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Name :                     | Local  |
| Issuer :                   | /C=US/CN=vigor                                 |
| Subject :                  | /emailAddress=press@draytek.com/C=TW/O=Draytek |
| Subject Alternative Name : | DNS:draytek.com                                |
| Valid From :               | Aug 30 23:08:43 2005 GMT                       |
| Valid To :                 | Aug 30 23:17:47 2007 GMT                       |

## 4.7 Request a CA Certificate and Set as Trusted on Windows CA Server

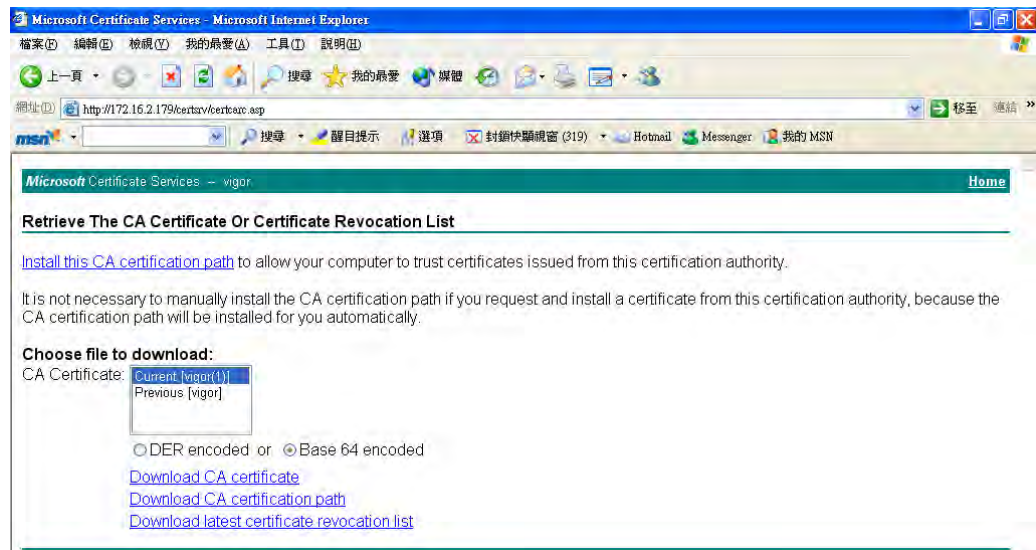


1. Use web browser connecting to the CA server that you would like to retrieve its CA certificate. Click **Retrieve the CA certificate or certificate recoring list**.





2. In **Choose file to download**, click **CA Certificate Current** and **Base 64 encoded**, and **Download CA certificate** to save the .cer. file.



3. Back to Vigor router, go to **Trusted CA Certificate**. Click **IMPORT** button and browse the file to import the certificate (.cer file) into Vigor router. When finished, click refresh and you will find the below illustration.

#### Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate

##### X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration

| Name         | Subject        | Status        | Modify               |                        |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| Trusted CA-1 | /C=US/CN=vigor | Not Yet Valid | <a href="#">View</a> | <a href="#">Delete</a> |
| Trusted CA-2 | ---            | ---           | <a href="#">View</a> | <a href="#">Delete</a> |
| Trusted CA-3 | ---            | ---           | <a href="#">View</a> | <a href="#">Delete</a> |

[IMPORT](#)

[REFRESH](#)

4. You may review the detail information of the certificate by clicking **View** button.

|                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Name :                     | Trusted CA-1             |
| Issuer :                   | /C=US/CN=vigor           |
| Subject :                  | /C=US/CN=vigor           |
| Subject Alternative Name : | DNS:draytek.com          |
| Valid From :               | Aug 30 23:08:43 2005 GMT |
| Valid To :                 | Aug 30 23:17:47 2007 GMT |

[Close](#)

**Note:** Before setting certificate configuration, please go to **System Maintenance >> Time and Date** to reset current time of the router first.

## 4.8 How to achieve DID (Direct Inward Dialing) with SIP Alias?

SIP Alias is an alternative address for your main SIP Address. Normally, when you have a user account for one ITSP, you have one SIP address provided by the ITSP. However, with SIP alias, you can own multiple SIP addresses over one user account. When you register with a regular user account, alias are registered as well as the main SIP address. Then, when somebody dials the alias, the SIP URI bound to the alias will ring.

DID - Direct-Inward-Dial (also called DDI in Europe) is a service offered by a telephone company that provides a block of telephone numbers associated with one phone line for calling into a company's PBX system. The employees can have their extension numbers respectively, and the caller, via DID function on Vigor router, can dial to any one of the extension numbers directly without passing through auto-attendant.

Below shows a scenario:

866668@iptel.org is the main SIP trunk set on VigorIPPBX 2820 , and 3400017904@iptel.org is set as SIP alias on VigorIPPBX 2820 as well. Both share the same SIP account. When you complete the registration for the main SIP trunk, an additional registration for the SIP alias will be automatically performed. Therefore, in this case, if Benson wants to call Jacky, he has two options. One is using auto-attendant by calling 866668@iptel.org. After hearing the greeting, Benson should press the extension number 101 to call Jacky. The other is using DID by calling 3400017904@iptel.org, the call will be forwarded to extension number 101 directly by the PBX system



Follow the steps below to setup SIP Alias and achieve DID.

1. Create a SIP Alias. First of all, make sure your VoIP Service Provider supports SIP Alias. For example, iptel.org provides such service. When you register an SIP account **866668@iptel.org** on **iptel.org**, you will be provided with a sip alias **3400017904@iptel.org** as well. See below.

The screenshot shows the 'iptel.org user management' interface. At the top, there are navigation buttons: 'my account', 'phone book', 'missed calls', 'accounting', and 'speed dial'. Below these are tabs for 'general', 'privacy', 'forward', and 'other'. The 'general' tab is active, displaying a registration form with fields for 'your password', 'retype password', 'first name' (tt), 'last name' (yy), 'email' (yinglqy@hotmail.com), 'phone', 'language' (English), and 'timezone' (Asia/Shanghai). A 'Save' button is at the bottom right. Below the form, a section titled 'your aliases:' is highlighted with a red box, showing two aliases: 'sip:3400017904@iptel.org' and 'sip:866668@iptel.org'.

2. Setup SIP account on VigorIPPBX 2820. Open the **IP PBX>>Line Setting>>SIP Trunk** page and configure the SIP account as follows.

#### IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List

The screenshot shows the 'SIP Trunk Index 1' configuration page. A red box highlights the following fields: 'Profile Name' (iptel), 'Register via' (Auto), 'SIP Local Port' (5070), 'Domain/Realm' (iptel.org), 'Proxy' (iptel.org), 'Proxy Port' (5060), 'Display Name' (866668), 'Account Number/Name' (866668), 'Authentication ID' (checked, 866668), and 'Password' (\*\*\*\*). Other fields include 'Expiry Time' (1 hour), 'Trunk number' (001), 'Office hours answer mode' (Auto Attendant), and 'Non-Office hours answer mode' (Auto Attendant). A note at the bottom states: 'Note: SIP Local Port can not be equal to PBX Proxy Port..'. 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

- Setup SIP Alias on VigorIPPBX 2820. Open the **IP PBX>>SIP Trunk List** page and click on **Alias List** to enter the SIP Alias setup page.

[IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List](#)

| SIP Trunk List     |              |              |           | Refresh Seconds: 5  | <a href="#">Refresh</a> |        |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------|
| Index              | Profile Name | Domain/Realm | Proxy     | Account Number/Name | Trunk Number            | Status |
| <a href="#">1.</a> | iptel        | iptel.org    | iptel.org | 866668              | 001                     | -      |
| <a href="#">2.</a> |              |              |           |                     | 002                     | -      |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |              |              |           |                     | 003                     | -      |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |              |              |           |                     | 004                     | -      |
| <a href="#">5.</a> |              |              |           |                     | 005                     | -      |
| <a href="#">6.</a> |              |              |           |                     | 006                     | -      |

R:Success registered on SIP server  
-:Fail to register on SIP server

[Alias List](#)

[IP PBX >> Alias](#)

| Index               | Profile Name | Number | Office Hours   | Non Office Hours | Active | Trunk |
|---------------------|--------------|--------|----------------|------------------|--------|-------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >> [Next >>](#)

- Press one index and input the SIP Alias in the **Alias Number** fields. Select the associated SIP account from **Alias of SIP Trunk**, which was created in step 2. Route the call to Jacky by selecting **Forward To Extension** and the extension profile **1-101**.

[IP PBX >> Alias](#)

**Alias 1.**

Active ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Alias Name

Alias Number

Alias of SIP Trunk

**Answer Mode**

Office hours answer mode   Extension

Non-Office hours answer mode

## IP PBX >> Alias

### Alias List

| Index               | Profile Name | Number     | Office Hours   | Non Office Hours | Active | Trunk     |
|---------------------|--------------|------------|----------------|------------------|--------|-----------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  | Jacky        | 3400017904 | Ext.101        | Auto Attendant   | Yes    | 1 - iptel |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |              |            | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |           |

5. The configuration is completed. Make sure the extension number 101 is registered. Next, Benson can make a direct call to Jacky by calling [3400017904@iptel.org](tel:3400017904@iptel.org).

## IP PBX >> PBX Status

### Extension Monitor

Refresh Seconds:

[Refresh](#)

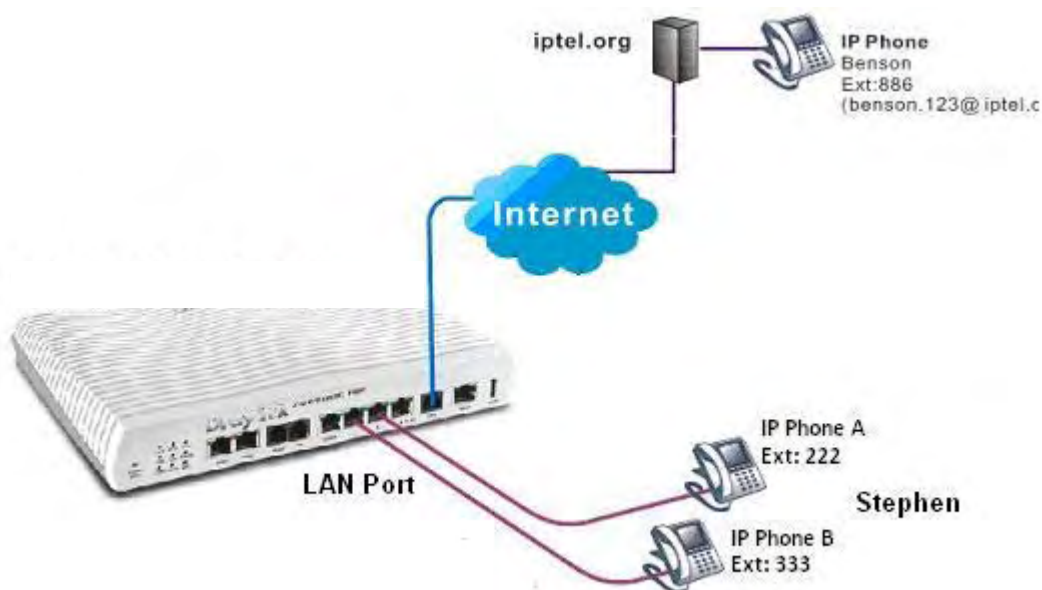
| Index | Name    | Extension | IP             | Status  | Peer ID |
|-------|---------|-----------|----------------|---------|---------|
| 1     | Jacky   | 101       | 192.168.1.12   | Online  |         |
| 2     | Stephen | 222       | 192.168.1.10   | Online  |         |
| 3     | Joseph  | 223       | 202.211.100.61 | Online  |         |
| 4     | Mark    | 204       |                | Offline |         |
| 5     | Mandy   | 221       | 192.168.1.1    | Online  |         |
| 6     | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |
| 7     | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |
| 8     | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |
| 9     | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |
| 10    | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) | [51-52](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

## 4.9 How to use Call Parking?

Call parking allows you to hold the call on a telephone set and pick it up at a different phone. Below shows a brief illustration for call parking application.



Benson calls extension 222. Stephen picks IP Phone A up and tells Benson that he wants to park the call for transferring to another phone to continue the conversation.

**To park a call, Stephen can perform the following actions on IP Phone A:**

1. Press the **transfer** button on IP Phone A.
2. Dial the **call park number, 777**.
3. Stephen hears an announcement that “Your parking number is XXXXX” (for example 22201).
4. Hang Up.

**Please take notice:**

- If there is no transfer button on your phone, please try the # button. Or, check the user guide of your hardware/software IP phone to find the button for call parking.
- The **call park number** is defined in the **IP PBX>>PBX System>>SIP Proxy Setting** page as **Parking Server Number**.

### IP PBX >> PBX System

#### SIP Proxy Setting

|                       |         |
|-----------------------|---------|
| SIP Local Port        | 5060    |
| SIP Proxy Realm       | PBX.com |
| Parking Server Number | 777     |
| RTP Local Port Start  | 15050   |
| RTP Local Port End    | 20000   |



1. When an incoming call is parked, a certain extension will be assigned to it temporarily and the number will be announced to you. In this example, the announcement “Your parking number is 22201” informs you of the new extension 22201. Next, you can dial the new extension to retrieve the call from a different phone. The new extension number may also be displayed on your IP phone.
2. After you hang up the call, it is left on hold with the new extension and the caller will be listening to the music on hold.
3. The call will remain on hold before someone retrieves it or the caller hangs up.

**To retrieve a parked call, Stephen can perform following actions on IP Phone B:**

1. Pick up the phone and listen for a dial tone.
2. Dial 22201(the announced new extension) to continue the conversation.

### **Call Parking Usage**

Call Parking is similar to Call Transfer. But Call Transfer is a “blind” transfer. Sometimes you are required to confirm if a person is available or not before transferring a call. For example, Mike is manager and Jane is his secretary. When there is an incoming call, Jane always parks the call. After the announcement, Jane hangs up and dials the extension of Mike and informs him of the park number to retrieve the call. If Mike refuses to take the call, Jane hangs up and dials park number by herself to pick up the call back and make some excuses. With Call Transfer, Jane can just simply transfer the call to Mike directly.

Another useful scenario: During a conversation, you may need to go to another office for some reason (for example, to check an important file). You can park the call and continue the conversation from another phone at the other office.

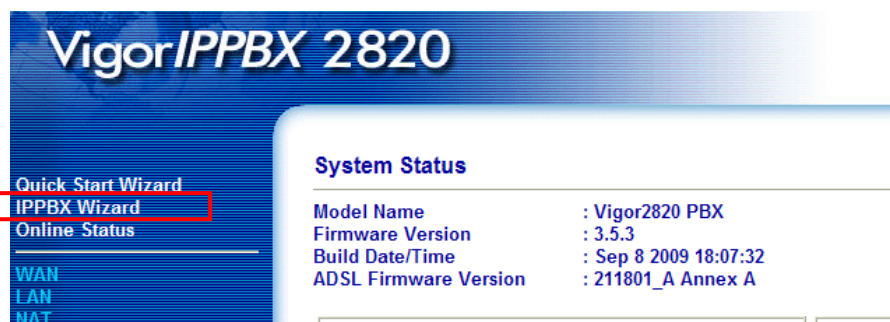
## 4.10 How to set up VigorPhone 350 with Vigor IPPBX2820 series by using Auto-Provisioning?

DrayTek VigorIPPBX 2820/VigorIPPBX 2820n supports the function of auto-provisioning. VigorPhone 350 is also capable of auto-provisioning, it can get a configuration text file from the VigorIPPBX 2820 series. The configuration file contains SIP settings that the SIP devices can register with VigorIPPBX 2820 series.

### VigorIPPBX 2820



1. Configure the extension number and password for each IP phone on VigorIPPBX 2820. You can configure extensions from IP PBX Wizard.





2. Click **IPPBX Wizard** to get the first screen as shown below.

#### IPPBX Wizard

##### Extension & Groups Setup : Index 1

|                                      |   |                              |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| Extension Group Name:                | <input type="text" value="VigorPhone"/> | (for example : sales)        |
| Extension Group Number:              | <input type="text" value="910"/>        | (for example : 100)          |
| Start Number of the extension Group: | <input type="text" value="911"/>        | (for example : 101)          |
| Number of extensions in this group:  | <input type="text" value="10"/>         | (for example : 10, max = 20) |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/>    |   |                              |

| Index              | Group Name | Group Extension | Hunt List(Max 20 Extension) |
|--------------------|------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> | VigorPhone | 910             | 911-920                     |
| <a href="#">2.</a> |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">5.</a> |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">6.</a> |            |                 |                             |
| <a href="#">7.</a> |            |                 |                             |

Type the extension group name, group number, start number, and number of extension fields. Click **OK** to save them. The new added group will be displayed on the screen. Then click **Next** to access into next web page.

3. In the SIP Trunk Setup page, you can set up to six SIP profiles outside lines at one time.

#### IPPBX Wizard

##### Sip Trunk Setup : Index 1

|                                   |                                  |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| Profile Name:                     | <input type="text"/>             | (11 characters max.) |
| Domain/Realm:                     | <input type="text"/>             | (63 characters max.) |
| Proxy:                            | <input type="text"/>             | (63 characters max.) |
| Account Number/Name:              | <input type="text"/>             | (63 characters max.) |
| Password:                         | <input type="text"/>             | (63 characters max.) |
| Trunk number:                     | <input type="text" value="001"/> | (3 characters max.)  |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> |                                  |                      |

| Index              | Profile Name | Domain/Realm | Proxy | Account Number/Name | Trunk Number |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-------|---------------------|--------------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 001          |
| <a href="#">2.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 002          |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 003          |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 004          |
| <a href="#">5.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 005          |
| <a href="#">6.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 006          |

Type the profile name, domain/realm, proxy, account number/name, password and trunk number fields, then click **OK** to save them. The new added profile will be displayed on the screen.

| Index | Profile Name | Domain/Realm | Proxy                | Account Number/Name | Trunk Number |
|-------|--------------|--------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| 1.    | SalesMarket  | 192.168.1.55 | nat.draytel.org:5065 | salesgroup          | 001          |
| 2.    |              |              |                      |                     | 002          |
| 3.    |              |              |                      |                     | 003          |
| 4.    |              |              |                      |                     | 004          |
| 5.    |              |              |                      |                     | 005          |
| 6.    |              |              |                      |                     | 006          |

- Click **Next** to access into office hours setup page.

## IPPBX Wizard

### Office Hours Setup

Now, You can make the work time schedule of your office.

|  |   |                                 |
|--|---|---------------------------------|
|  | Hour :  | Min                             |
| When do you start working in the morning   | <input type="text" value="00"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| When do you have a rest at noon            | <input type="text" value="00"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| When do you start working in the afternoon | <input type="text" value="00"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| When do you leave the office               | <input type="text" value="00"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| Is this schedule available at weekend?     | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No |                                 |

Please specify office hours including starting point and ending point on duty day(s). Then, click **Finish** to save the settings and exit the wizard.

work time schedule of your office.

|                      |   |                                 |
|----------------------|---|---------------------------------|
|                      | Hour :  | Min                             |
| ing in the morning   | <input type="text" value="08"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| st at noon           | <input type="text" value="12"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| ing in the afternoon | <input type="text" value="13"/>                               | <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| office               | <input type="text" value="17"/>                               | <input type="text" value="30"/> |
| e at weekend?        | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No |                                 |

- After finishing the Wizard, please go to **IPPBX>Extension** to configure the Extension Number and the Password settings.

**IP PBX >> Extension**

**Internal Phone Extension**

| Index              | Ext. | Name | Email Address | Outgoing Call   | Status |
|--------------------|------|------|---------------|---|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> | 911  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN1-TE ISDN2-TE | v      |
| <a href="#">2.</a> | 912  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN1-TE ISDN2-TE | v      |
| <a href="#">3.</a> | 913  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN1-TE ISDN2-TE | v      |
| <a href="#">4.</a> | 914  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN1-TE ISDN2-TE | v      |
| <a href="#">5.</a> | 915  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN1-TE ISDN2-TE | v      |

**IP PBX >> Extension Profile**

**Internal Phone Extension Index 1**

Internal Phone Extension Active ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Extension Number

User Name

☐ Authentication

Password

E-mail Address

Voice mail Password

MWI

☒ Notify User who Subscribed ☐ Force Notify User

Outgoing Call Use

☒ SIP1 ☒ SIP2 ☒ SIP3 ☒ SIP4 ☒ SIP5 ☒ SIP6 ☒ ISDN1-TE ☒ ISDN2-TE

**Answer Mode**

No answer after  sec then

Busy then

Not on-line

- Then connect VigorPhone to the network. Each user of VigorPhone can get the extension number/password respectively.
- The log-in request will be displayed on the screen of the phone. Please input the extension number. Press OK.

Ext Number

911■

13:12:05

123

Delete

Clear

OK

Exit

8. Next, input the password. Press **OK**.

|              |       |                                  |      |
|--------------|-------|----------------------------------|------|
| Ext Password |       | 13:12:05                         |      |
| *** ■        |       | <input type="text" value="123"/> |      |
| Delete       | Clear | OK                               | Exit |

9. VigorPhone can automatically configure itself with settings coming from VigorIPPBX 2820. Successful message will be shown as below. Now, all the configurations have been done.

|                                       |        |     |        |
|---------------------------------------|--------|-----|--------|
| 13:12:06                              |        |     |        |
| Auto Configuration<br>Ext 911 Success |        |     |        |
| Icom                                  | Missed | DND | P.Book |

10. Now, the extension number has been registered by VigorPhone successfully. (See the number on the right side of the arrow.)

|           |        |          |        |
|-----------|--------|----------|--------|
| Thursday  |        | 13:12:08 |        |
| Oct<br>15 |        | ▶ 911    |        |
| Icom      | Missed | DND      | P.Book |

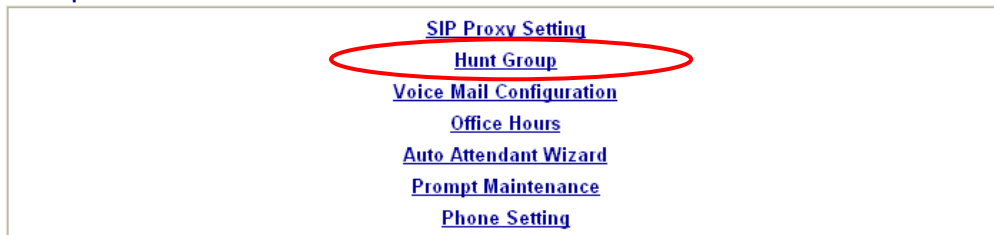
## 4.11 How to configure Hunt Group?

Hunt Group allows a caller to automatically find an available callee from among a group of extensions. You may assign some extensions to a Hunt Group. The incoming call will search for the first available extension. Each extension will be tried until a “free” extension is reached. If an IP phone is busy or hasn’t registered its extension to VigorIPPBX 2820 yet, its extension will be skipped. The caller hears the busy tone only when all lines are engaged.

VigorIPPBX 2820 supports up to 10 Hunt Groups. Up to 20 extensions can be assigned to each Hunt Group. And each extension can be assigned to more than one Hunt Group.

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

**PBX System**



There are two modes (Hunt Rule) supported by VigorIPPBX 2820, **Simultaneously** and **Sequentially**.

**Simultaneously** — If an incoming call rings on a Hunt Group, all extensions belong to this group will ring except for the IP phones which are busy or offline.

**Sequentially** — If an incoming call rings on a Hunt Group, the first extension in the list is tried. If the call is not answered within 15 seconds, it will move to the next available extension in the list. The IP phones which are busy or offline will be skipped.

### **Example 1 for Simultaneously**

Extension 100 is configured as a Hunt Group’s extension number. When someone calls 100, VigorIPPBX 2820 tries to ring 101, 102 and 103 simultaneously at once.

Ext 101 is busy, no ring

Ext 102 rings - answers call

Ext 103 is available for next call – no ring

### **Example 2 for Sequentially**

Extension 200 is configured as a Hunt Group’s extension number. When someone calls 200, VigorIPPBX 2820 tries to ring 201 then 202 then 203 then 204.

Ext 201 rings - no answer, then moves to next

Ext 202 is busy, no ring and moves to next

Ext 203 rings - answers call

Ext 204 is available for next call – no ring

## How to setup Hunt Group for Example 1 and 2 ?

1. Configure extensions for IP phones.

### IP PBX >> Extension

#### Internal Phone Extension

| Index | Ext. | Name    | Email Address | Outgoing Call                                | Status |
|-------|------|---------|---------------|--|--------|
| 1.    | 101  | Jacky   |               | SIP1   | v      |
| 2.    | 102  | Stephen |               | SIP1   | v      |
| 3.    | 103  | Joseph  |               | SIP1   | v      |
| 4.    | 201  | James   |               | SIP1   | v      |
| 5.    | 202  | Kevin   |               | SIP1   | v      |
| 6.    | 203  | Jimmy   |               | SIP1   | v      |
| 7.    | 204  | Fred    |               | SIP1   | v      |
| 8.    | ---  | ---     |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| 9.    | ---  | ---     |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| 10.   | ---  | ---     |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 | 31-40 | 41-50 >>

[Next >>](#)

2. Open **IP PBX >> PBX System >> Hunt Group**. Configure the following two groups.

### IP PBX >> PBX System

#### Hunt Group

| Index | Group Name | Group Extension | Hunt List (Max 20 Extension) |
|-------|------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| 1.    | Sales      | 100             | 101, 102, 103                |
| 2.    | RD         | 200             | 201, 202, 203, 204           |
| 3.    |            |                 |                              |
| 4.    |            |                 |                              |
| 5.    |            |                 |                              |
| 6.    |            |                 |                              |
| 7.    |            |                 |                              |
| 8.    |            |                 |                              |
| 9.    |            |                 |                              |
| 10.   |            |                 |                              |

For the Hunt Group of Sales department, **Hunt Group Name** is locally significant for identification. **Hunt Group Extension** must be different from all the other extension numbers. Select **Simultaneously** as **Hunt Rule**.

**Hunt Groups Index 1**

|                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| Hunt Group Name      | Sales          |
| Hunt Group Extension | 100            |
| Hunt Rule            | Simultaneously |

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

| Available |  | Chosen  |
|-----------|--|---------|
| 4 - 201   | <input type="button" value="Add &gt;&gt;"/><br><input type="button" value="Add All"/><br><input type="button" value="Remove &lt;&lt;"/><br><input type="button" value="Remove All"/><br><input type="button" value="Move Up"/><br><input type="button" value="Move Down"/> | 1 - 101 |
| 5 - 202   |  | 2 - 102 |
| 6 - 203   |  | 3 - 103 |
| 7 - 204   |  |         |
| 8 - ----  |  |         |
| 9 - ----  |  |         |
| 10 - ---- |  |         |
| 11 - ---- |  |         |
| 12 - ---- |  |         |
| 13 - ---- |  |         |
| 14 - ---- |  |         |
| 15 - ---- |  |         |
| 16 - ---- |  |         |
| 17 - ---- |  |         |
| 18 - ---- |  |         |
| 19 - ---- |  |         |
| 20 - ---- |  |         |
| 21 - ---- |  |         |
| 22 - ---- |  |         |
| 23 - ---- |  |         |
| 24 - ---- |  |         |

For the Hunt Group of RD department, **Hunt Group Name** is locally significant for identification. **Hunt Group Extension** must be different from all the other extension numbers. Select **Sequentially** as **Hunt Rule**. You can use **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons to adjust the sequence of the extensions.

**Hunt Groups Index 2**

|                      |              |
|----------------------|--------------|
| Hunt Group Name      | RD           |
| Hunt Group Extension | 200          |
| Hunt Rule            | Sequentially |

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

| Available |  | Chosen  |
|-----------|--|---------|
| 1 - 101   | <input type="button" value="Add &gt;&gt;"/><br><input type="button" value="Add All"/><br><input type="button" value="Remove &lt;&lt;"/><br><input type="button" value="Remove All"/><br><input type="button" value="Move Up"/><br><input type="button" value="Move Down"/> | 4 - 201 |
| 2 - 102   |  | 5 - 202 |
| 3 - 103   |  | 6 - 203 |
| 8 - ----  |  | 7 - 204 |
| 9 - ----  |  |         |
| 10 - ---- |  |         |
| 11 - ---- |  |         |
| 12 - ---- |  |         |
| 13 - ---- |  |         |
| 14 - ---- |  |         |
| 15 - ---- |  |         |
| 16 - ---- |  |         |
| 17 - ---- |  |         |
| 18 - ---- |  |         |
| 19 - ---- |  |         |
| 20 - ---- |  |         |
| 21 - ---- |  |         |
| 22 - ---- |  |         |
| 23 - ---- |  |         |
| 24 - ---- |  |         |
| 25 - ---- |  |         |



## How to call a Hunt Group?

### Method 1:

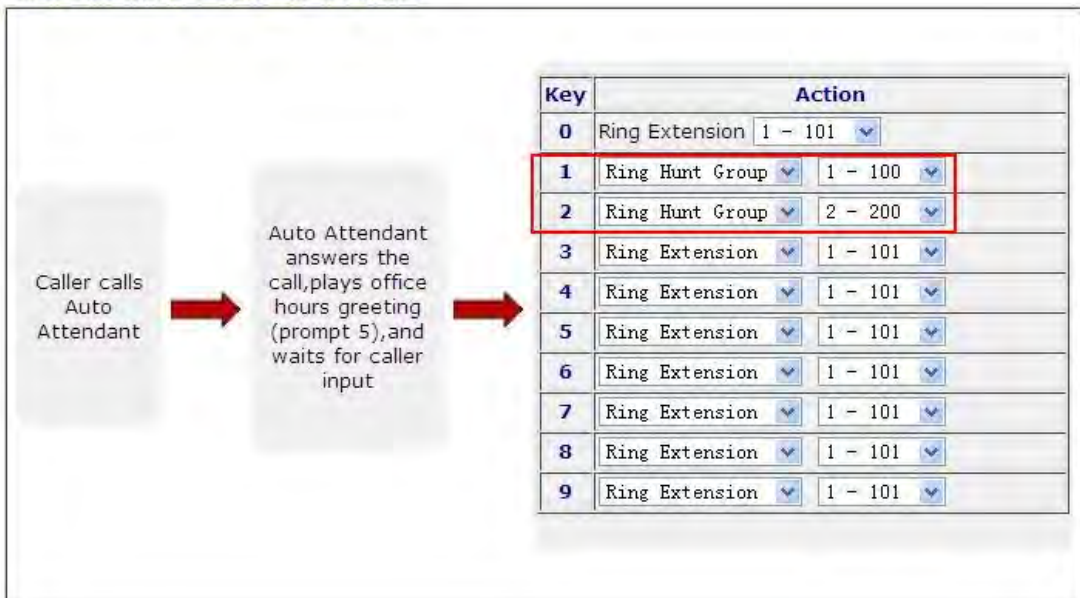
You may call the VigorIPPBX 2820 first, and dial the Hunt Group Extension number. In the above two examples, when you dial 100, extensions 101, 102 and 103 ring at the same time. When you dial 200, extension 201 rings first, then 202, next 203 and finally 204 rings.

### Method 2:

With auto-attendant, after hearing the greeting, you may dial 1. The extensions 101, 102 and 103 ring simultaneously. Or, you may dial 2 and extension 201 ring first, then 202, next 203 and finally 204 rings.

#### IP PBX >> PBX System

##### Auto Attendant Wizard - Office Hours



**Tip:** If users in the **Hunt Group** leave their desks, they would turn on **Do Not Disturb** at their extensions. Thus, the incoming call will search next available extension immediately.



## 4.12 How to use Auto Attendant?

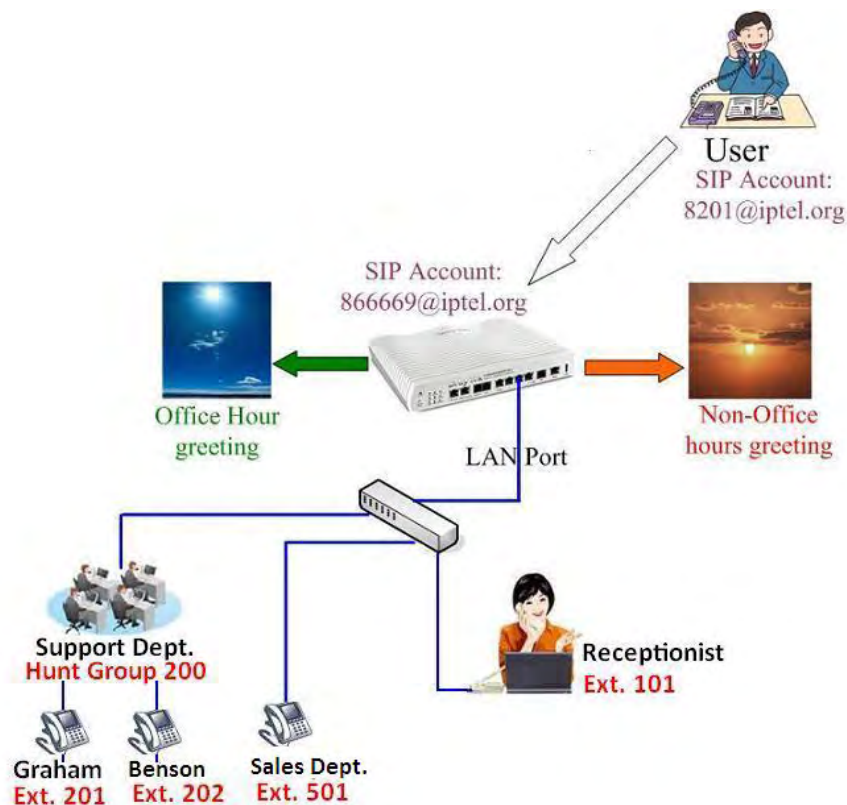
**IVR**, Interactive Voice Response, is a technology that allows callers to interact with the communication system over the telephone.

**Auto Attendant** is a technology that automates interactions with telephone callers. It allows callers to be automatically transferred to an extension without the intervention from a receptionist or telephone operator.

VigorIPPBX 2820 supports IVR and Auto Attendant. When someone calls in, VigorIPPBX 2820 automatically plays the recorded message like "Thanks for calling Draytek Corporation. For sales, press 1; for support, press 2, etc." After pressing a number, the caller will be transferred to the extension he would like to or an operator. You can customize the auto attendant to play greeting messages based on the time and day settings such as office hours, after office hours, weekends and holidays

### Configure Auto Attendant on VigorIPPBX 2820

We will take an example to explain the common configuration. In this example, we will present callers with options so that they can be directed to the proper extension. During the office hours, the system will ask the users to dial 1 for support department, 2 for sales department, 3 for product advertisement and 0 to speak with the receptionist. And, during the non-office hours, the system will play product advertisement.



1. The first step is to record the prompts.

#### For the office hours greeting:

- Connect a phone to the FXS port on VigorIPPBX 2820 directly.
- Dial \*\*\*\*\* to access IVR system.
- After hearing the prompt, dial **1155#** to start recording the **Prompt 5** for the office hours greeting. "Thank you for calling Draytek Company. If you know the

extension of the person you'd like to reach, you may dial it now. Otherwise, please choose from the following options. For technical support, press "1". For sales, press "2". For new products introduction, press "3". Otherwise press "0" for the receptionist."

- When you finish the record, press #.
- Dial **1255#** to hear the office hours greeting (**Prompt 5**) that you have recorded. If you are not satisfied with the result, dial **1155#** to record it again.

**For the non-office hours greeting:**

- Connect a phone to the FXS port on VigorIPPBX 2820 directly.
- Dial \*\*\*\* to access IVR system.
- After hearing the prompt, dial **1156#** to start recording the **Prompt 6** for the non-office hours greeting. "Thank you for calling Draytek Company. We are currently unavailable to take your call. Our business hours are nine to six, Monday through Friday. If you want to leave a message, please press "0" to leave a message for the receptionist. If you want to get new product information, please press 1 through 9".
- When you finish the record, press #.
- Dial **1256#** to hear the non-office hours greeting (**Prompt 6**) that you have recorded.
- If you are not satisfied with the result, dial **1156#** to record it again.

**For the new product advertisement:**

- Connect a phone to the FXS port on VigorIPPBX 2820 directly.
- Dial \*\*\*\* to access IVR system.
- After hearing the prompt, dial **1151#** to start recording the **Prompt 1** for the new product advertisements. "The VigorIPPBX 2820 is an IP-PBX integrated with DrayTek's fully-featured Vigor2820 ADSL Router..."
- When you finish the record, press #.
- Dial **1251#** to hear the new product advertisement (**Prompt 1**) that you have recorded.
- If you are not satisfied with the result, dial **1151#** to record it again.

- After the sounds have been recorded, you have to create the extensions that needed in the IVR. Extensions for each phone are configured as follows.

#### IP PBX >> Extension

##### Internal Phone Extension

| Index               | Ext. | Name         | Email Address | Outgoing Call                                | Status |
|---------------------|------|--------------|---------------|--|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  | 101  | receptionist |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  | 501  | Jacky        |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  | 201  | Graham       |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  | 202  | Benson       |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  | 205  | Kevin        |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  | 203  | Jimmy        |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  | 204  | Fred         |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  | ---  | ---          |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  | ---  | ---          |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> | ---  | ---          |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Configure extension for the support department. It is a hunt group. If the hunt rule is set with **Sequentially**, the extension 201 ring first, then 202, 205, 203 and finally 204 rings one by one when someone calls 200. If the hunt rule is set with **Simultaneously**, extensions 201, 202, 203, 204 and 205 ring at the same time when someone calls 200.

#### IP PBX >> PBX System

##### Hunt Groups Index 1

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Hunt Group Name      | <input type="text" value="Support"/>      |
| Hunt Group Extension | <input type="text" value="200"/>          |
| Hunt Rule            | <input type="text" value="Sequentially"/> |

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

| Available |  | Chosen  |
|-----------|--|---------|
| 1 - 101   | <input type="button" value="Add &gt;&gt;"/><br><input type="button" value="Add All"/><br><input type="button" value="Remove &lt;&lt;"/><br><input type="button" value="Remove All"/><br><input type="button" value="Move Up"/><br><input type="button" value="Move Down"/> | 3 - 201 |
| 2 - 501   |  | 4 - 202 |
| 8 - ---   |  | 5 - 205 |
| 9 - ---   |  | 6 - 203 |
| 10 - ---  |  | 7 - 204 |
| 11 - ---  |  |         |
| 12 - ---  |  |         |
| 13 - ---  |  |         |
| 14 - ---  |  |         |
| 15 - ---  |  |         |
| 16 - ---  |  |         |
| 17 - ---  |  |         |
| 18 - ---  |  |         |
| 19 - ---  |  |         |
| 20 - ---  |  |         |
| 21 - ---  |  |         |
| 22 - ---  |  |         |

3. Choose **Auto Attendant** for Office hours and Non-office hours for the SIP trunk. In this example, when you call 866669@iptel.org during the office hours, you will hear office hours greeting (**Prompt 5**): during the non-office hours, you will hear the non-office hours greeting (**Prompt 6**).

#### IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List

##### SIP Trunk Index 1

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| Profile Name  | iptel           |
| Register via  | Auto            |
| SIP Local Port  | 5070            |
| Domain/Realm  | iptel.org       |
| Proxy   | iptel.org       |
| Proxy Port  | 5060            |
| Display Name  | 866669          |
| Account Number/Name                                   | 866669          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication ID | 866669          |
| Password  | ****            |
| Expiry Time   | 1 hour 3600 sec |
| Trunk number  | 001             |
| Office hours answer mode                              | Auto Attendant  |
| Non-Office hours answer mode                          | Auto Attendant  |

**Note:** SIP Local Port can not be equal to PBX Proxy Port.

4. Make sure the system time is synchronized from the **System Maintenance >> Time and Date** page.

#### System Maintenance >> Time and Date

##### Time Information

|                     |                             |              |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|
| Current System Time | 2007 Jun 28 Thu 5 : 53 : 42 | Inquire Time |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|

##### Time Setup

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Use Browser Time                    |                                    |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Internet Time Client |                                    |
| Time Protocol   | NTP (RFC-1305)                     |
| Server IP Address   | pool.ntp.org                       |
| Time Zone   | (GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin |
| Enable Daylight Saving                                    | <input type="checkbox"/>           |
| Automatically Update Interval                             | 30 min                             |

|    |        |
|----|--------|
| OK | Cancel |
|----|--------|

- Configure the Office hours from the **IP PBX >> PBX System >> Office Hours** setup page. Suppose the holidays are January 1 to January 3, January 20 and February 15. Based on the above configuration, the router will configure the settings for the non-office hours automatically.

#### IP PBX >> PBX System

##### Office Hours

| Index | Enable                              | Office Hour Start (HHMM) | Office Hour End (HHMM) | Weekdays  |
|-------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|---|
| 1     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 09 00                    | 18 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mon <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tue <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wed <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Thu <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat |
| 2     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |
| 3     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |
| 4     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |
| 5     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |
| 6     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |
| 7     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |
| 8     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |
| 9     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |
| 10    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat  |

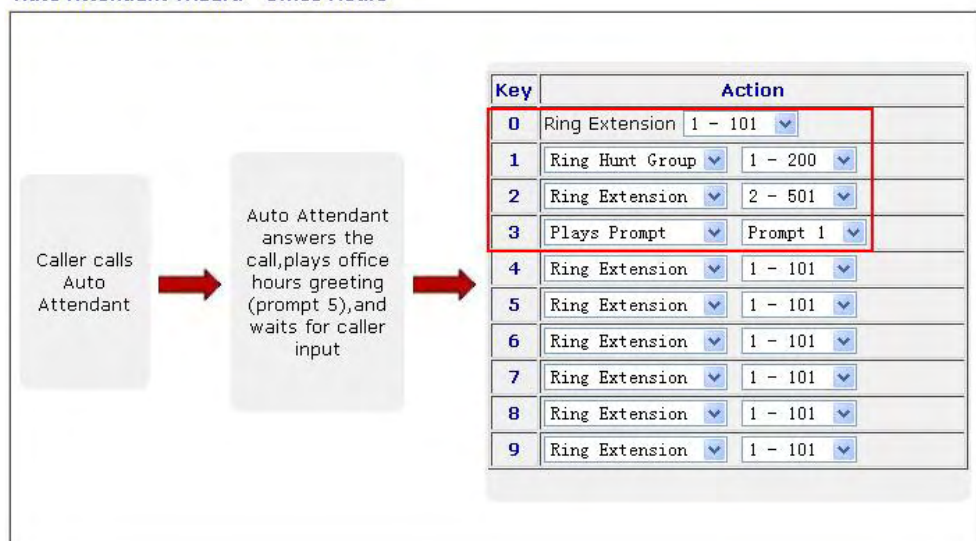
##### Holiday Setting

| Month | Date    |
|-------|---------|
| 1     | 1-3, 20 |
| 2     | 15      |
| 3     |         |

- Open **Auto Attendant Wizard** and configure the Office hours rule. The rule is set as follows:
  - Key 1 for support department - Press 1 for technical support.
  - Key 2 for sales department - Press 2 for sales.
  - Key 3 for advertisement - Press 3 to listen to new products' introduction.
  - Key 0 for receptionist - Press 0 to speak with an operator.

#### IP PBX >> PBX System

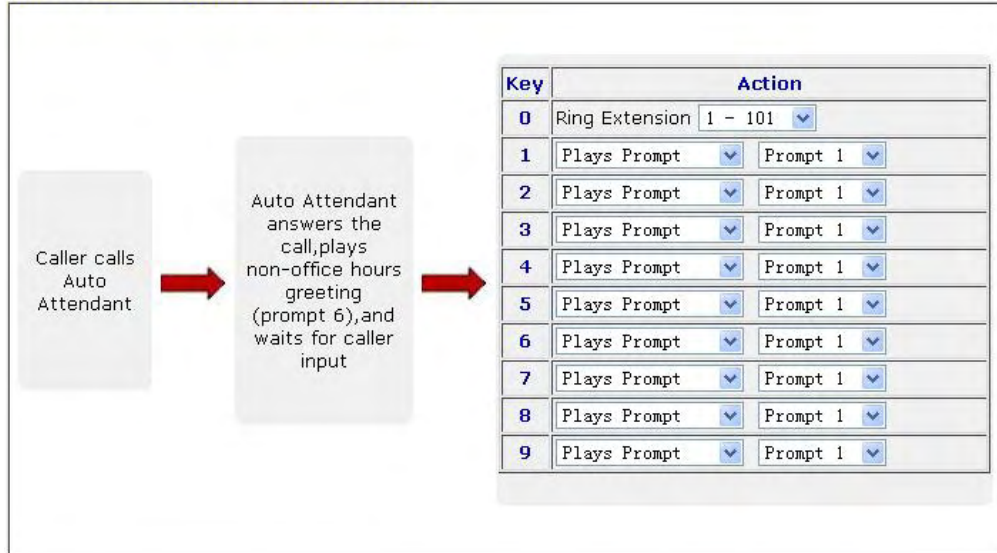
##### Auto Attendant Wizard - Office Hours



7. Press **Next** to configure settings for Non-office hours. Key 0 is designated for Ring Extension and here it is set for receptionist. For other keys, we let the users to listen to new product introduction.

#### IP PBX >> PBX System

##### Auto Attendant Wizard - Non-Office Hours



8. Then click **OK** to finish the auto attendant wizard.

#### IP PBX >> PBX System

##### Auto Attendant Wizard - Record Prompts

Please enter \*\*\*\* and to XXXX access IVR and auto-attendant message menu.

You can record the office hours and non-office hour greetings or other prompts.

**Prompt 5** is used as office hours greeting.

**Prompt 6** is used as non-office hours greeting.

**Prompt 7** is used as specific purposes.

< Back

OK

Cancel

**Note:** If a caller dials the wrong extension number, VigorIPPBX 2820 will play the greeting once more to let he/she dials the right extension again.



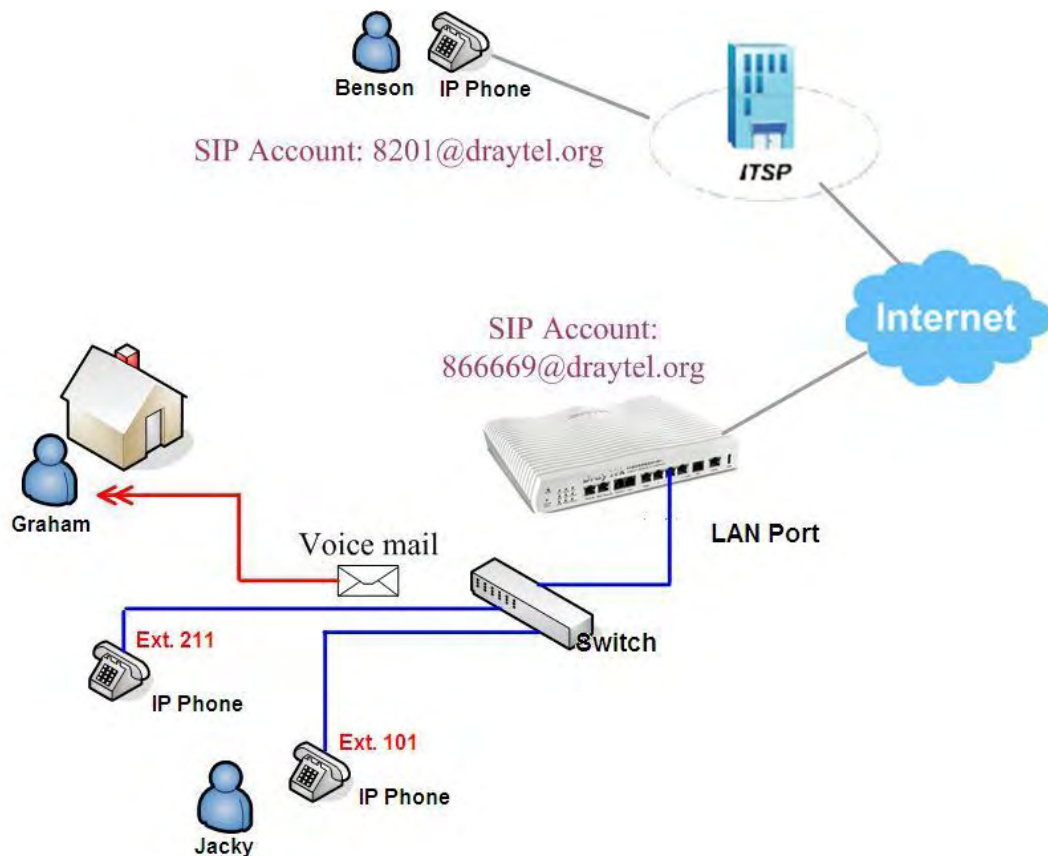
## 4.13 How to use Voice Mail?

With voice mail, callers can leave messages when you are busy, unable to answer phone calls, or when the IP phone is off-line. Then, at your leisure time, you can listen to the voice messages. This avoids missing important phone calls.

VigorIPPBX 2820 supports voice mail feature. When someone leaves a message to you, you can listen to it from the IP phone. Furthermore, you can have an email sent to you with a .WAV file for the voice message attached to this mail if you want. Later, you can listen to your voice mail by executing the WAV file.

We will take an example to introduce how to configure voice mail through VigorIPPBX 2820. Also we will introduce how to listen to the voice mail.

Suppose we have the following scenario. VigorIPPBX 2820 is deployed in the office. Both Jacky and Graham use IP phones, and connect them to VigorIPPBX 2820 with extension numbers 211 and 101 registered to VigorIPPBX 2820 respectively. Voice mails are both enabled for these two extension numbers. In addition, Graham requires VigorIPPBX 2820 to send an email to him when there is a voice message.



When Graham is busy, unable to answer the phone calls, or when his IP phone is off-line, Benson will be prompted to leave a message. If a message is leaved, it will be saved in VigorIPPBX 2820. An email with the voice message attached will be sent to Graham. Graham can listen to his voice mail either via his IP phone or via his mail client.

When Jacky is busy, unable to answer the phone calls, or when his IP phone is off-line, Benson will be prompted to leave a message. If a message is leaved, it will be saved in VigorIPPBX 2820. However, no email will be sent to Jacky for such voicemail. Jacky can listen to his voicemail only via his IP phone.

Follow steps below to enable voice mail for Graham and Jacky.

1. Open Graham's extension profile. Below shows the explanation of basic configuration. Graham's **Extension Number** is 211. **Display Name** is locally significant for identification. Make sure the **Type** is SIP. Enable **Authentication** and type a **Password** for this extension.
2. Input an **E-mail address** for Graham to receive voice mails.

#### IP PBX >> Extension Profile

**Internal Phone Extension Index 1**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Internal Phone Extension Active  | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| Extension Number   | 211   |
| Display Name   | Graham  |
| Type   | SIP   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication   |   |
| Password   | ••••  |
| E-mail Address   | graham@draytek.com  |
| Voice mail Password  | ••••  |
| Send a test e-mail   |   |
| MWI  |   |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Notify User who Subscribed  | <input type="radio"/> Force Notify User                               |
| Outgoing Call Use  |   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE |   |
| <b>Answer Mode</b>   |   |
| No answer after  | 30 sec then Voice Mail  |
| Busy then  | Voice Mail  |
| Not on-line  | Voice Mail  |
| OK Cancel  |   |

#### E-mail Address:

Input Graham's email address for receiving voicemail.

#### Voice mail Password:

If you want to listen the voice mail by using IP phone, you must a voice mail password. This can prevent someone else to listen to your voice message. Only digit characters (0-9) are accepted as voice mail password.

#### Answer Mode:

Select Voice Mail. When Graham is busy, unable to answer the phone calls, or when his IP phone is off-line, VigorIPPBX 2820 will ask the caller to leave a message.

3. Open Jacky's extension profile. Below shows the explanation of basic configuration. Jacky's **Extension Number** is 101. **Display Name** is locally significant for identification. Make sure the **Type** is SIP. Enable **Authentication** and type a **Password** for this extension.



4. Input an e-mail address for Jacky to receive voice mails. In this case, no e-mail address is specified.

#### IP PBX >> Extension Profile

##### Internal Phone Extension Index 1

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Internal Phone Extension Active  | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable            |
| Extension Number   | <input type="text" value="101"/>   |
| Display Name   | <input type="text" value="Jacky"/>   |
| Type   | <input type="text" value="SIP"/>   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication   |  |
| Password   | <input type="password" value="...."/>  |
| E-mail Address   | <input type="text"/>   |
| Voice mail Password  | <input type="password" value="...."/>  |
| <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>  |  |
| MWI  |  |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Notify User who Subscribed  | <input type="radio"/> Force Notify User  |
| Outgoing Call Use  |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE |  |
| <b>Answer Mode</b>   |  |
| No answer after  | <input type="text" value="30"/> sec then <input type="text" value="Voice Mail"/> |
| Busy then  | <input type="text" value="Voice Mail"/>  |
| Not on-line  | <input type="text" value="Voice Mail"/>  |
| <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>  |  |

#### E-mail Address:

Don't input any email address here. Jacky will not receive a voice mail via email.

#### Voice mail Password:

If you want to listen the voice mail by IP phone, you must setup a voice mail password. This can prevent someone else to listen to your voice message. Only digit characters (0-9) are accepted as voice mail password.

#### Answer Mode:

Select Voice Mail. When Jacky is busy, unable to answer the phone calls, or when his IP phone is off-line, VigorIPPBX 2820 will ask the caller to leave a message.

## Additional Configuration for Voice Mail

Open the **IP PBX >> PBX System >> Voice Mail Configuration** page and setup the system properties of voice mail.

**IP PBX >> PBX System**

**Voice Mail Configuration**

|  |   |              |
|--|---|--------------|
| Extension for checking messages                                  | <input type="text" value="888"/>            | (20 ~ 65535) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Send Voice Message by Email  |   |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Delete Voice Message after Sending Mail |   |              |
| Day for keeping voice mail                                       | <input type="text" value="3"/>              | (1~7)        |
| Maximum messages time  | <input type="text" value="30 Sec"/>         |              |
| <b>Mail Voice-Mail Setup</b>                                     |   |              |
| SMTP Server  | <input type="text" value="211.---.---.20"/> |              |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication               |   |              |
| User Name  | <input type="text" value="graham"/>         |              |
| Password   | <input type="password" value="•••••"/>      |              |

### Extension for checking message:

If you want to listen to a voice mail, you need to dial the number which is set in the field of Extension for checking messages. The default value is 888. You can change it manually.

### Send Voice Message by Email:

Tick it to enable sending voicemail via email.

### Delete Voice Message after Sending Mail:

If it is enabled, a voice message will be automatically deleted from VigorIPPBX 2820 after an email containing this message has been sent out successfully. You can't listen to a message from your IP phone after it is deleted from VigorIPPBX 2820.

### Day for keeping voice mail:

It means the time for keeping a voice mail in VigorIPPBX 2820. The default value is 3 (days). After the time, this message will be deleted automatically.

### Maximum messages time:

The longer the time is, the larger size of a voice message will be. There are three options: 30 seconds, 60 seconds and 90 seconds.

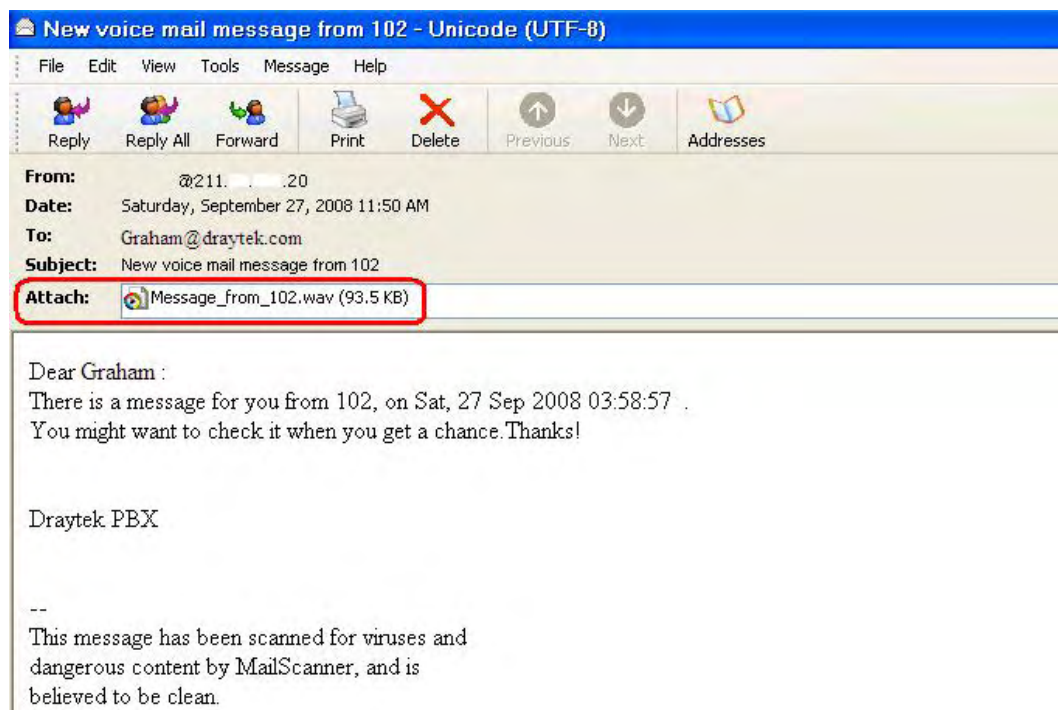
### Mail Voice-Mail Setup:

To send a voice mail via email, a SMTP server must be configured. Input the username and password if the SMTP server requires authentication.

## Ways to Listen voice messages

### Method 1

When there is a voice mail, Graham will receive an email with a WAV file attached. This WAV file records the voice message. By double clicking on the WAV file, Graham can listen to the message leaved by Benson.

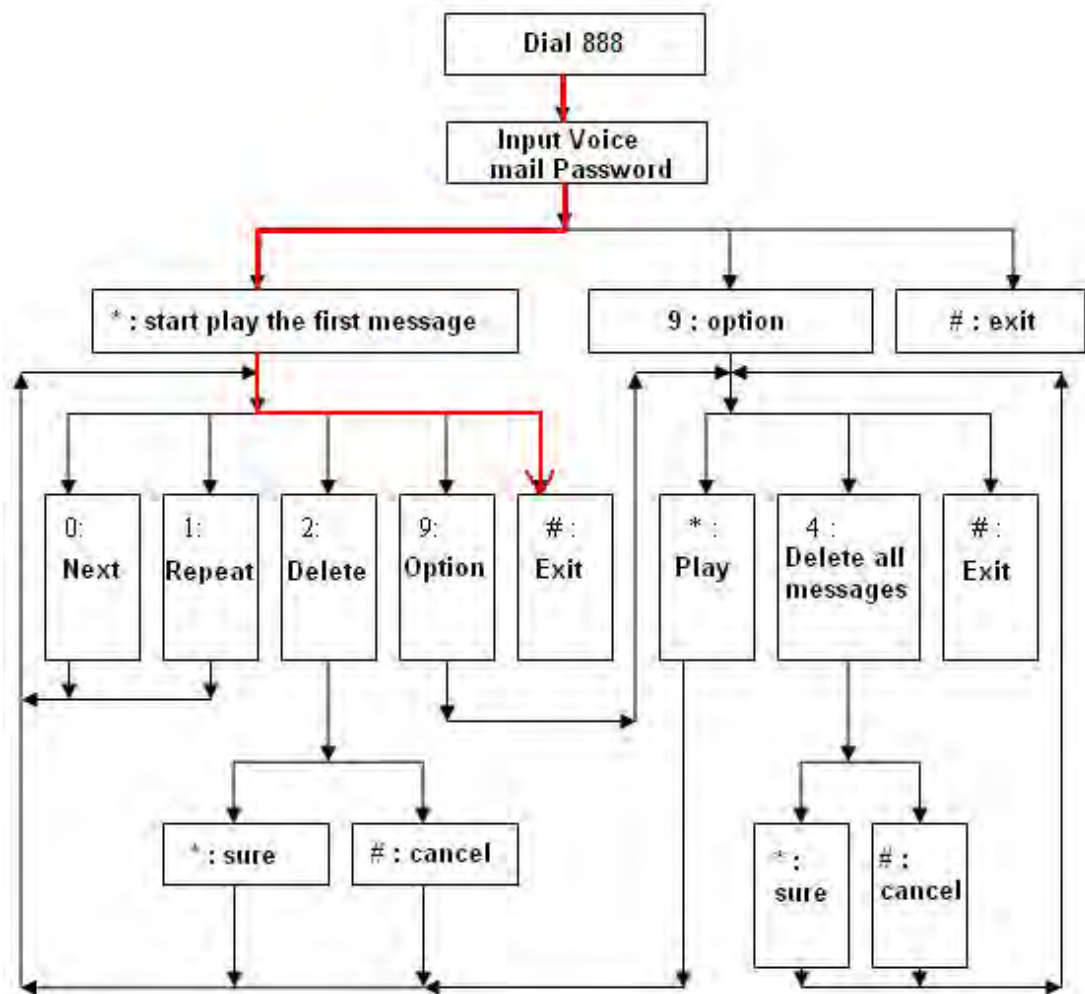


### Method 2

Graham can listen to his voice messages via his IP phone as follows:

1. Pick up the IP phone which has registered to VigorIPPBX 2820 with the extension number 211.
2. Dial 888. This number is defined in **IP PBX >> PBX System >> Voice Mail Configuration** page.
3. Enter the Voice mail Password. It is defined in **IPPXB>>Extension Profiles**.
4. A prompt will be played informing if you have any voice messages or not.
5. Press \* to play the first message.
6. Press 0 to play the next message.
7. Press # to hang up the call.

For more actions, you may refer to the following flow chart.



Since Jacky configures to listen to voice messages from IP Phone, no email will be sent to Jacky.

## 4.14 How to configure and use the MWI on VigorIPPBX 2820?

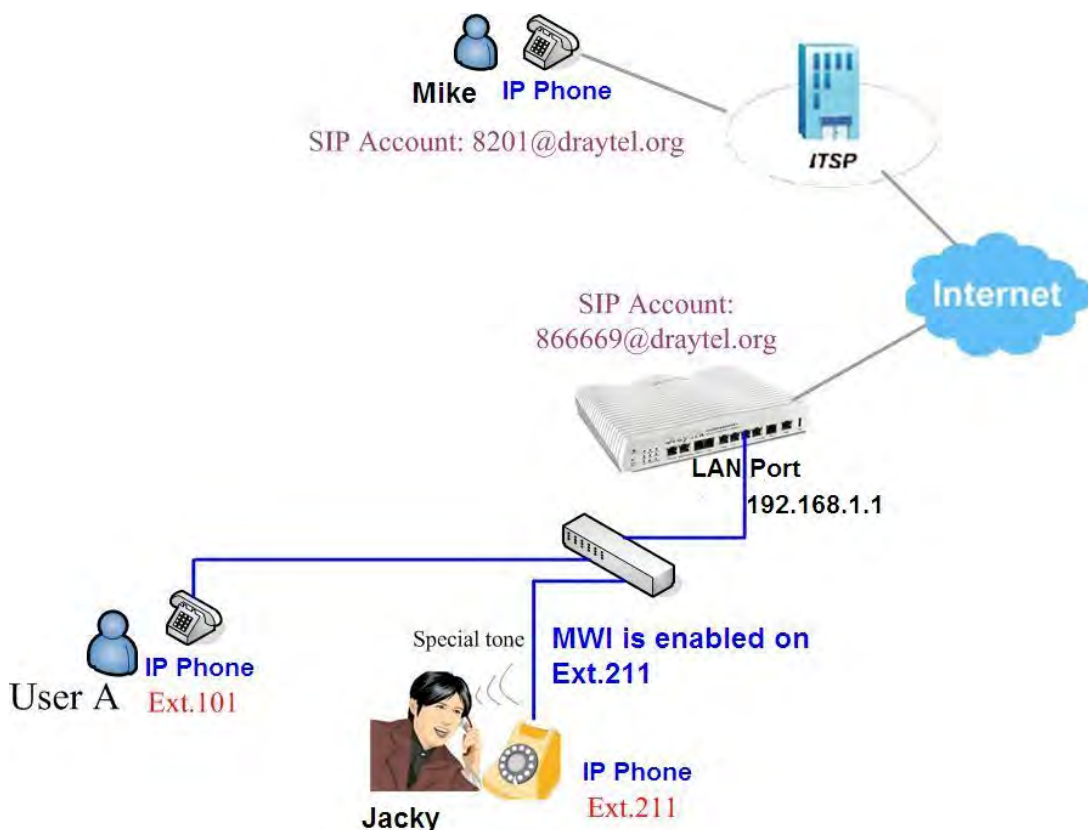
MWI is namely Message Waiting Indication. Messaging Waiting Indication is a common feature of telephone networks. It typically involves an audible or visible indication that messages are waiting, such as playing a special dial tone (which in telephone network is called message-waiting dial tone), lighting a light or indicator on the phone, displaying icons or text, or some combination (draft-ietf-sipping-mwi-04.txt).

VigorIPPBX 2820 supports MWI feature. With this feature, when someone leaves you a voice message, a special tone (MWI tone) will be played while you pick the phone up. This implies that you have a voice message. After listening such special tone, you will hear the normal dial tone. Then you can choose to listen to the voice message or call someone back.

### Example for using MWI

Here, we use the following illustration to make an example for using MWI.

Generally, Jacky uses mail client to receive voice mails. But it's not convenient to check voice mail via mail client at all times. Especially there is a possibility that voice mails may be dropped or deleted by an accident due to Antivirus scan. To avoid it, Jacky also uses MWI feature of VigorIPPBX 2820 to inform himself of missed phone calls.



### Configure MWI for Jacky's Extension

1. Open the extension profile for Jacky. Below shows the explanation of basic configuration. Jacky's **Extension Number** is 211. **Display Name** is locally significant for identification. Make sure the **Type** is **SIP**. Enable **Authentication** and type a **Password** for this extension. Input an **E-mail address** for Jacky to receive voice mails.

2. Select either **Notify User who Subscribed** or **Force Notify User** for MWI.

**IP PBX >> Extension Profile**

**Internal Phone Extension Index 1**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Internal Phone Extension Active                             | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable            |
| Extension Number  | <input type="text" value="211"/>   |
| Display Name  | <input type="text" value="Jacky"/>   |
| Type  | <input type="text" value="SIP"/>   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication          |  |
| Password  | <input type="password" value="...."/>  |
| E-mail Address  | <input type="text" value="jacky@draytek.com"/>                                   |
| <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>           |  |
| Voice mail Password   | <input type="password" value="...."/>  |
| MWI   |  |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Notify User who Subscribed | <input type="radio"/> Force Notify User  |
| Outgoing Call Use   |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP1                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP2   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP3                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP4   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP5                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP6   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE                |  |
| <b>Answer Mode</b>  |  |
| No answer after   | <input type="text" value="120"/> sec then <input type="text" value="Keep Ring"/> |
| Busy then   | <input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>  |
| Not on-line   | <input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>  |

**Voice mail Password:**

If you want to listen to the voice mail by phone via VigorIPPBX 2820, you must configure the voice mail password. It can prevent someone else listening to your voice mail. Namely, users need to input the voice mail password before they listen to the voice mail.

**Notify User who Subscribed:**

Most IP Phones support MWI feature. You can enable or disable it for your requirement. When **Notify User who Subscribed** is selected, VigorIPPBX 2820 will send MWI to the IP phone with MWI enabled. However, if the IP phone does not enable MWI function, VigorIPPBX 2820 will not send MWI to that IP phone.

**Force Notify User:**

When Force Notify User is selected, VigorIPPBX 2820 automatically sends MWI to the clients when there is voice message no matter the IP phone enables MWI function or not.

## Additional Configuration for Voice Mail

Go to the **IP PBX >> PBX System >> Voice Mail Configuration** page and configure the following items.

### IP PBX >> PBX System

**Voice Mail Configuration**

Extension for checking messages: 888 (20 ~ 65535)

☒ Send Voice Message by Email

☐ Delete Voice Message after Sending Mail

Day for keeping voice mail: 3 (1~7)

Maximum messages time: 30 Sec

**Mail Voice-Mail Setup**

SMTP Server:

☐ Authentication

User Name:

Password:

OK Cancel

#### Extension for checking messages:

If you want to listen to a voice mail, you need to dial the number which is set in the field of Extension for checking messages. The default value is 888. You can change it manually.

#### Day for keeping voice mail:

It means the time for keeping a voice mail in VigorIPPBX 2820. The default value is 3 (days). After the time, this message will be deleted automatically.

#### Send Voice Message by Email:

Tick it to enable the voice mail function.

#### Delete Voice Message after Sending Mail:

If you are using MWI, do not enable such option. No MWI notification will be sent after a voice message is deleted.

## Example Explanation

1. Mike calls [866669@iptel.org](mailto:866669@iptel.org) and dials extension number 211.
2. Jacky is not available at that time.
3. Mike leaves a message to Jacky, then hands up the phone.
4. Jacky is free and picks up his phone.
5. Instead of the normal dial tone, Jacky hears a special tone (MWI tone) which implies that he has a voice message. After listening the special tone, Jacky will hear the normal dial tone.
6. Jacky dials **888** and input the voice mail password to hear his voice message.

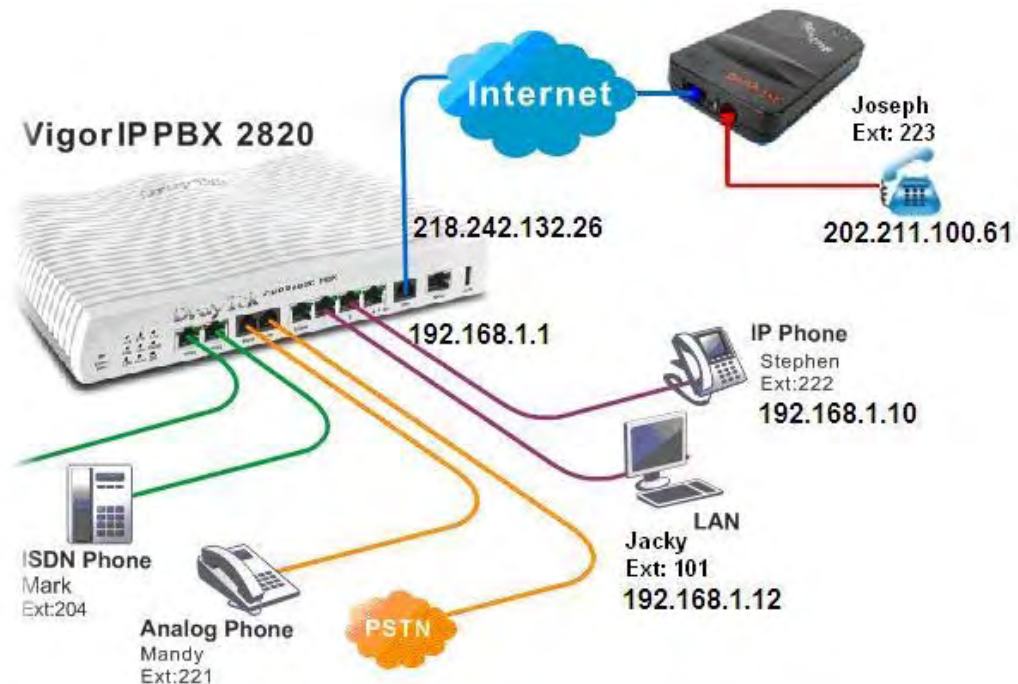


## 4.15 How to register extensions to VigorIPPBX 2820?

VigorIPPBX 2820 supports Software based SIP phones, Hardware based SIP Phones and Analogue phones attached to ATA (Analog Telephone Adapter). In this document we will introduce how to use these clients to register extensions to VigorIPPBX 2820.

### Basic Network Connection for VigorIPPBX 2820

In this document we will use the scenario illustrated in the following graphic.



1. VigorIPPBX 2820 acts as an SIP server with WAN IP: 218.242.132.26 and LAN IP: 192.168.1.1.
2. Stephen uses an IP Phone connected/registered to VigorIPPBX 2820 via LAN.
3. Jacky uses the software Phone registered to VigorIPPBX 2820 via LAN.
4. Joseph uses an analogue phone attached to an ATA registered to VigorIPPBX 2820 via WAN.
5. Mandy uses an analog phone connecting to FXS port of VigorIPPBX 2820.
6. Mark uses an ISDN phone connecting to ISDN port of VigorIPPBX 2820.



## Setup the extensions on Vigor/PPBX 2820

1. Enter the **IP PBX >> Extension Profile** setup page and configure the relevant extension profile.

### IP PBX >> Extension Profile

#### Internal Phone Extension Index 1

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Internal Phone Extension Active  | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable          |
| Extension Number   | <input type="text" value="101"/>   |
| Display Name   | <input type="text" value="Jacky"/>   |
| Type   | <input type="text" value="SIP"/>   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authentication   |  |
| Password   | <input type="password" value="•••"/>   |
| E-mail Address   | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>         |
| Voice mail Password  | <input type="password" value="••••"/>  |
| MWI  |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Notify User who Subscribed   | <input type="radio"/> Force Notify User  |
| Outgoing Call Use  |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE |  |
| <b>Answer Mode</b>   |  |
| No answer after  | <input type="text" value="5"/> sec then <input type="text" value="Keep Ring"/> |
| Busy then  | <input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>  |
| Not on-line  | <input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>  |

2. After finishing the settings, you may have the following table.

### IP PBX >> Extension

#### Internal Phone Extension

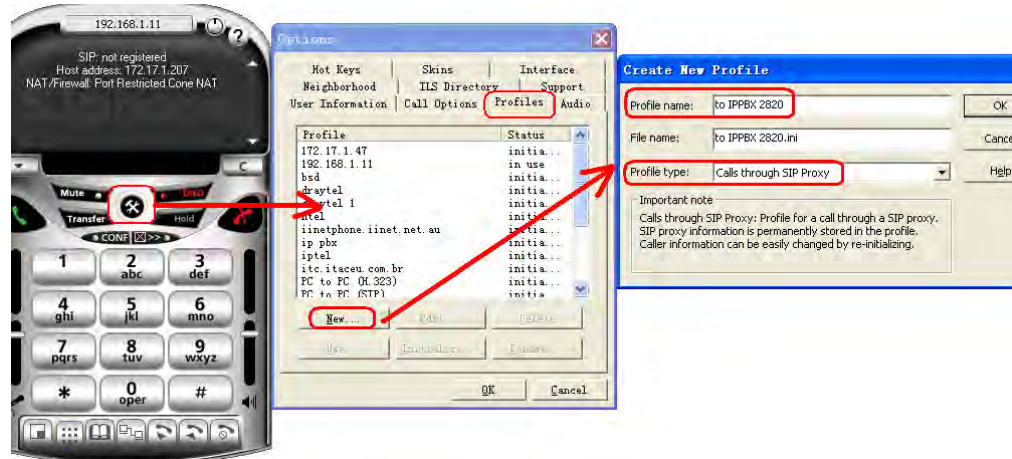
| Index              | Ext. | Name    | Email Address | Outgoing Call                                | Status |
|--------------------|------|---------|---------------|--|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> | 101  | Jacky   |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">2.</a> | 222  | Stephen |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">3.</a> | 223  | Joseph  |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">4.</a> | 204  | Mark    |               | SIP1 ISDN2-TE                                | v      |
| <a href="#">5.</a> | 221  | Mandy   |               | SIP1   | v      |
| <a href="#">6.</a> | ---  | ---     |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">7.</a> | ---  | ---     |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |

## Setup the VoIP clients to register extensions

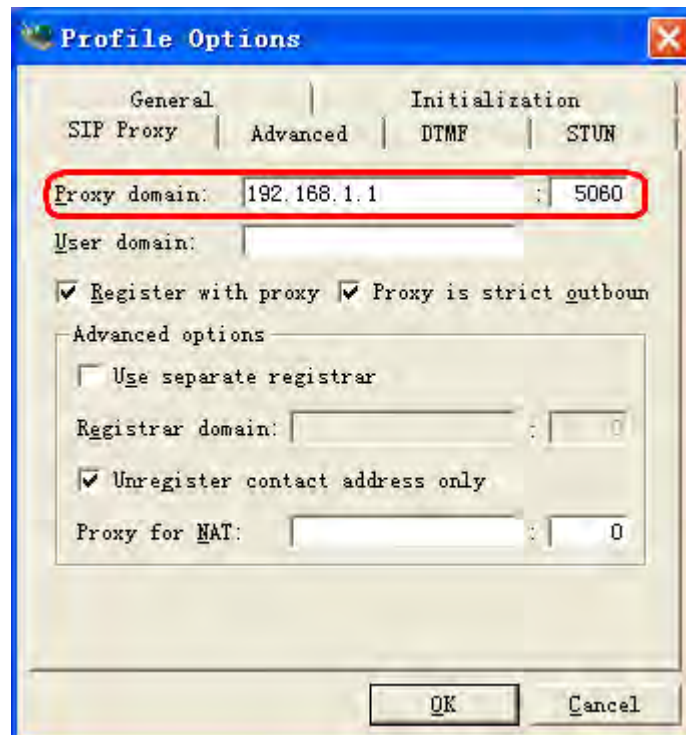
- **Software based IP Phone (e.g. SJphone)**

**Jacky** is using **SJphone**, a VoIP softphone, for registering his extension 101 to **VigorIPPBX 2820**.

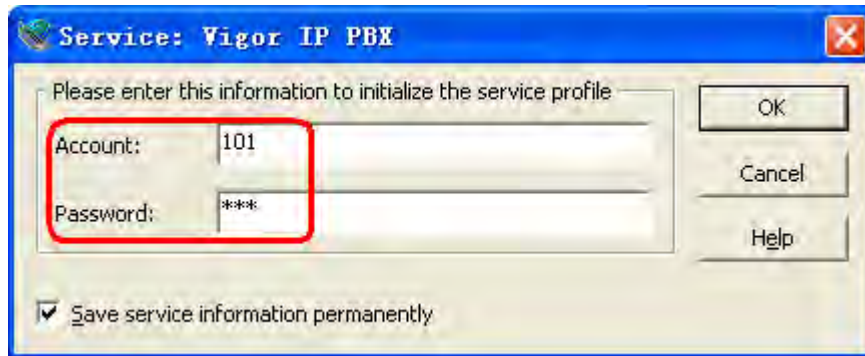
Start the **SJphone**. Open the **Options** windows and click the **Profiles** tab. Create a new profile. Make sure the **Profile type** is **Call through SIP Proxy**. Finally, press **OK**.



You will get the **Profile Options** window. Open the **SIP Proxy** tab and configure the address of IPPBX. The computer is located in the local network of **VigorIPPBX 2820**, therefore the LAN IP address (192.168.1.1) of **VigorIPPBX 2820** must be input in the **Proxy domain** field. Here we use the default SIP port 5060. Press **OK**.




Next, the account setup page pops up. Enter the extension in the **Account** field and its corresponding password in the **Password** field. The password must be the same as set in VigorIPPBX 2820.



- **Hardware based IP Phone (e.g. VigorPhone 350)**

Stephen is using VigorPhone 350, a hard IP telephone, for registering his extension 222 to VigorIPPBX 2820. The VigorPhone 350 is connected behind VigorIPPBX 2820, therefore the LAN IP address (192.168.1.1) must be set as **Registration Server**, **Proxy Server** and **Realm Address**. Enter other settings as figure shown below. The password must be the same as set in VigorIPPBX 2820.



- **Analogue Phone attached to an ATA (e.g. VigorTalk)**

Joseph is using VigorTalk, an analog telephony adapter, for registering his extension 223 to VigorIPPBX 2820. Since he is on the Internet, the WAN IP address (218.242.132.36 in this example) of VigorIPPBX 2820 must be set as Registrar and Proxy addresses. Enter other settings as figure shown below. The password must be the same as set in VigorIPPBX 2820.

**VigorTalk**

Info LAN **VoIP** DialPlan DrayTek www.draytek.com

**SIP**

SIP Port : 5060  
 Registrar : 218.242.132.36  
 Proxy : 218.242.132.36 ☐ Act as outbound proxy

**Ports Setting**

☒ Use Registrar  
 Name : 223  
 Authentication ID : 223  
 Password : \*\*\*\*  
 Expiry Time : 1 hour

**NAT Pass Through**

☐ Enable  
 STUN Server :

**Codecs**

Default Codec : G.729A/B (8Kbps)  
 Packet Size : 20ms

## Monitor the status of extensions on VigorIPPBX 2820

After configuration, please check the status on VigorIPPBX 2820. If the extension registered successfully on VigorIPPBX 2820, the relevant **Status** will display **Online**.

[IP PBX >> PBX Status](#)

Extension Monitor

Refresh Seconds: 10

[Refresh](#)

| Index | Name    | Extension | IP             | Status  | Peer ID |
|-------|---------|-----------|----------------|---------|---------|
| 1     | Jacky   | 101       | 192.168.1.12   | Online  |         |
| 2     | Stephen | 222       | 192.168.1.10   | Online  |         |
| 3     | Joseph  | 223       | 202.211.100.61 | Online  |         |
| 4     | Mark    | 204       |                | Offline |         |
| 5     | Mandy   | 221       | 192.168.1.1    | Online  |         |
| 6     | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |
| 7     | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |
| 8     | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |
| 9     | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |
| 10    | ---     | ---       |                | Offline |         |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) | [51-52](#) >>

[Next >>](#)

# Chapter 5: Reference - Advanced Web Configuration

---

After finished basic configuration of the router, you can access Internet with ease. For the people who want to adjust more setting for suiting his/her request, please refer to this chapter for getting detailed information about the advanced configuration of this router. As for other examples of application, please refer to chapter 4.

## 5.1 WAN

**Quick Start Wizard** offers user an easy method to quick setup the connection mode for the router. Moreover, if you want to adjust more settings for different WAN modes, please go to WAN group and click the **Internet Access** link.

### 5.1.1 Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network

IP means Internet Protocol. Every device in an IP-based Network including routers, print server, and host PCs, needs an IP address to identify its location on the network. To avoid address conflicts, IP addresses are publicly registered with the Network Information Centre (NIC). Having a unique IP address is mandatory for those devices participated in the public network but not in the private TCP/IP local area networks (LANs), such as host PCs under the management of a router since they do not need to be accessed by the public. Hence, the NIC has reserved certain addresses that will never be registered publicly. These are known as *private* IP addresses, and are listed in the following ranges:

**From 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255**

**From 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255**

**From 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255**

### What are Public IP Address and Private IP Address

As the router plays a role to manage and further protect its LAN, it interconnects groups of host PCs. Each of them has a private IP address assigned by the built-in DHCP server of the Vigor router. The router itself will also use the default **private IP** address: 192.168.1.1 to communicate with the local hosts. Meanwhile, Vigor router will communicate with other network devices through a **public IP** address. When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network. Thus, all the host PCs can share a common Internet connection.

### Get Your Public IP Address from ISP

In ADSL deployment, the PPP (Point to Point)-style authentication and authorization is required for bridging customer premises equipment (CPE). Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) connects a network of hosts via an access device to a remote access concentrator or aggregation concentrator. This implementation provides users with significant ease of use. Meanwhile it provides access control, billing, and type of service according to user requirement.

When a router begins to connect to your ISP, a serial of discovery process will occur to ask for a connection. Then a session will be created. Your user ID and password is authenticated



via **PAP** or **CHAP** with **RADIUS** authentication system. And your IP address, DNS server, and other related information will usually be assigned by your ISP.

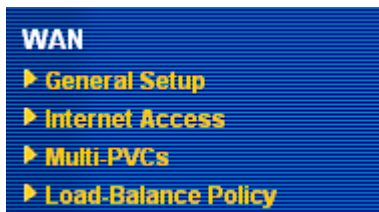
### 5.1.2 Network Connection by 3G USB Modem

For 3G mobile communication through Access Point is popular more and more, VigorIPPBX 2820 adds the function of 3G network connection for such purpose. By connecting 3G USB Modem to the USB port of VigorIPPBX 2820, it can support HSDPA/UMTS/EDGE/GPRS/GSM and the future 3G standard (HSUPA, etc). VigorIPPBX 2820 with 3G USB Modem allows you to receive 3G signals at any place such as your car or certain location holding outdoor activity and share the bandwidth for using by more people. Users can use four LAN ports on the router to access Internet. Also, they can access Internet via 802.11n wireless function of VigorIPPBX 2820n, and enjoy the powerful firewall, bandwidth management, VPN, VoIP features of VigorIPPBX 2820 series.



After connecting into the router, 3G USB Modem will be regarded as the second WAN port. However, the original Ethernet WAN1 still can be used and Load-Balance can be done in the router. Besides, 3G USB Modem in WAN2 also can be used as backup device. Therefore, when WAN1 is not available, the router will use 3.5G for supporting automatically. The supported 3G USB Modem will be listed on Draytek web site. Please visit [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com) for more detailed information.

Below shows the menu items for Internet Access.



### 5.1.3 General Setup

This section will introduce some general settings of Internet and explain the connection modes for WAN1 and WAN2 in details.

This router supports dual WAN function. It allows users to access Internet and combine the bandwidth of the dual WAN to speed up the transmission through the network. Each WAN port can connect to different ISPs, Even if the ISPs use different technology to provide telecommunication service (such as DSL, Cable modem, etc.). If any connection problem occurred on one of the ISP connections, all the traffic will be guided and switched to the normal communication port for proper operation. Please configure WAN1 and WAN2 settings.

This webpage allows you to set general setup for WAN1 and WAN2 respectively.

**Note:** In default, WAN1 and WAN2 are enabled.

## WAN >> General Setup

### General Setup

| WAN1  | WAN2  |
|---|---|
| Enable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | Enable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   |
| Display Name: <input type="text"/>  | Display Name: <input type="text"/>  |
| Physical Mode: ADSL   | Physical Mode: Ethernet   |
| Physical Type: Auto negotiation   | Physical Type: Auto negotiation   |
| Load Balance Mode: Auto Weight  | Load Balance Mode: Auto Weight  |
| Line Speed(Kbps): DownLink <input type="text"/>   | Line Speed(Kbps): DownLink <input type="text"/>   |
| UpLink <input type="text"/>   | UpLink <input type="text"/>   |
| Active Mode: Always On  | Active Mode: Always On  |
| Active on demand:<br><input type="radio"/> WAN2 Fail<br><input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN2 Upload speed exceed <input type="text"/> Kbps<br>WAN2 Download speed exceed <input type="text"/> Kbps | Active on demand:<br><input type="radio"/> WAN1 Fail<br><input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN1 Upload speed exceed <input type="text"/> Kbps<br>WAN1 Download speed exceed <input type="text"/> Kbps |

OK

#### Enable

Choose **Yes** to invoke the settings for this WAN interface.  
Choose **No** to disable the settings for this WAN interface.

#### Display Name

Type the description for the WAN1/WAN2 interface.

#### Physical Mode

For WAN1, the physical connection is done through ADSL port; yet the physical connection for WAN2 is done through an Ethernet port (P1) or USB port. You cannot change it.

Physical Mode:

Ethernet

Ethernet

3G USB Modem

To use 3G network connection through 3G USB Modem, choose **3G USB Modem** as the physical mode in **WAN2**. Next, go to **WAN >> Internet Access**. 3G USB Modem is available for WAN2. You can enable **PPP** as the access mode and complete further configuration.

### WAN >> Internet Access

| WAN 2  |   |
|--|---|
| PPP Client Mode <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable  |   |
| SIM PIN code   | <input type="text"/>                                      |
| Modem Initial String   | AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0 (Default: AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0)      |
| APN Name   | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |
| Modem Dial String  | ATDT*99# (Default: ATDT*99#)                              |
| PPP Username   | <input type="text"/> (Optional)                           |
| PPP Password   | <input type="text"/> (Optional)                           |
| Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br>=> <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> |   |

OK Cancel Default

#### Physical Type

This setting is available for WAN2 only. You can change the physical type for WAN2 or choose **Auto negotiation** for determined by the system.

Physical Type:

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Auto negotiation | ▼ |
| Auto negotiation |   |
| 10M half duplex  |   |
| 10M full duplex  |   |
| 100M half duplex |   |
| 100M full duplex |   |

### Load Balance Mode

If you know the practical bandwidth for your WAN interface, please choose the setting of **According to Line Speed**. Otherwise, please choose **Auto Weigh** to let the router reach the best load balance.

Load Balance Mode:

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Auto Weigh              | ▼ |
| Auto Weigh              |   |
| According to Line Speed |   |

### Line Speed

If you choose **According to Line Speed** as the **Load Balance Mode**, please type the line speed for downloading and uploading through WAN1/WAN2. The unit is kbps.

### Active Mode

Choose **Always On** to make the WAN connection (WAN1/WAN2) being activated always; or choose **Active on demand** to make the WAN connection (WAN1/WAN2) activated if it is necessary.

Active Mode:

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Active on demand | ▼ |
| Always On        |   |
| Active on demand |   |

If you choose Active on demand, the Idle Timeout will be available for you to set for PPPoE and PPTP access modes in the **Details Page** of **WAN>>Internet Access**. In addition, there are three selections for you to choose for different purposes.

**WAN2 Fail** – It means the connection for WAN1 will be activated when WAN2 is failed.

**WAN2 Upload speed exceed XX kbps** – It means the connection for WAN1 will be activated when WAN2 Upload speed exceed certain value that you set in this box for 15 seconds.

**WAN2 Download speed exceed XX kbps**– It means the connection for WAN1 will be activated when WAN2 Download speed exceed certain value that you set in this box for 15 seconds.

**WAN1 Fail** – It means the connection for WAN2 will be activated when WAN1 is failed.

**WAN1 Upload speed exceed XX kbps** – It means the connection for WAN2 will be activated when WAN1 Upload speed exceed certain value that you set in this box for 15 seconds.

**WAN1 Download speed exceed XX kbps**– It means the connection for WAN2 will be activated when WAN1 Download speed exceed certain value that you set in this box



for 15 seconds.

## 5.1.4 Internet Access

For the router supports dual WAN function, the users can set different WAN settings (for WAN1/WAN2) for Internet Access. Due to different physical mode for WAN1 and WAN2, the Access Mode for these two connections also varies slightly.

### WAN >> Internet Access

#### Internet Access

| Index                | Display Name | Physical Mode | Config Information   |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------|--|
| <a href="#">WAN1</a> |              | ADSL          | Channel: 1, VPI: 0, VCI: 33, Protocol: PPPoE/LLC/SNAP, Modulation: Multimode, Dynamic IP |
| <a href="#">WAN2</a> |              | Ethernet      | IP Address: 172.16.3.229, Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0, Gateway IP: 172.16.3.4               |

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <b>Index</b>              | It shows the WAN modes that this router supports. WAN1 is the default WAN interface for accessing into the Internet. WAN2 is the optional WAN interface for accessing into the Internet when WAN 1 is inactive for some reason. |
| <b>Display Name</b>       | It shows the name of the WAN1/WAN2 that entered in general setup.   |
| <b>Physical Mode</b>      | It shows the physical port for WAN1/WAN2.   |
| <b>Config Information</b> | It shows brief configuration information for WAN1/WAN2 interface.   |

WAN1 and WAN2 support different protocols. WAN1 supports PPPoE/PPPoA and MPoA. WAN2 supports PPPoE, Static or Dynamic IP and PPTP. According to physical connection of your router, please choose suitable WAN interface link to set detailed information.

## PPPoE/PPPoA for WAN1

To use **PPPoE/PPPoA** as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select **PPPoE/PPPoA** mode. The following web page will appear.

[WAN >> Internet Access](#)

**WAN 1**

**PPPoE / PPPoA**

**MPoA (RFC1483/2684)**

☐ Enable ☒ Disable

**DSL Modem Settings**

Multi-PVC channel Channel 1

VPI 8

VCI 35

Encapsulating Type VC MUX

Protocol PPPoA

Modulation Multimode

**PPPoE Pass-through**

☐ For Wired LAN

☐ For Wireless LAN

**ISDN Dial Backup Setup**

Dial Backup Mode None

**WAN Connection Detection**

Mode ARP Detect

Ping IP

TTL:

**ISP Access Setup**

Username

Password

PPP Authentication PAP or CHAP

Idle Timeout -1 second(s)

**IP Address From ISP** WAN IP Alias

Fixed IP ☐ Yes ☒ No (Dynamic IP)

Fixed IP Address

☒ Default MAC Address

☐ Specify a MAC Address

MAC Address: 00 50 7F 94 E7 81

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup:

=>

OK Cancel

### Enable/Disable

Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

### DSL Modem Settings

Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These are vital for building DSL connection to your ISP.

**Multi-PVC channel** - The selections displayed here are determined by the page of **Internet Access – Multi PVCs**. **Select M-PVCs Channel** means no selection will be chosen.

**VPI** - Type in the value provided by ISP.

**VCI** - Type in the value provided by ISP.

**Encapsulating Type** - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP.

**Protocol** - Drop down the list to choose the one provided by ISP.

If you have already used **Quick Start Wizard** to set the protocol, then it is not necessary for you to change any settings in this group.

**Modulation** – Default setting is Multimode. Choose the one that fits the requirement of your router.

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Modulation | <div>Multimode ▼<div>T1.413G.LiteG.DMTADSL2(G.992.3)ADSL2 annex MADSL2+(G.992.5)ADSL2+ annex MMultimode</div></div> |
|------------|---|

### PPPoE Pass-through

The router offers PPPoE dial-up connection. Besides, you also can establish the PPPoE connection directly from local clients to your ISP via the Vigor router. When PPPoA protocol is selected, the PPPoE package transmitted by PC will be transformed into PPPoA package and sent to WAN server. Thus, the PC can access Internet through such direction.

**For Wired LAN** – If you check this box, PCs on the same network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.

**For Wireless LAN** – If you check this box, PCs on the same wireless network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet.

### ISDN Dial Backup Setup

This setting is available for the routers supporting ISDN function only. Before utilizing the ISDN dial backup feature, you must create a dial backup profile first. Please click **ISDN > Dialing to a Single ISP** to create the backup profile.

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Dial Backup Mode | <div>None ▼<div>NonePacket TriggerAlways On</div></div> |
|------------------|---|

**Note:** This feature is available for ISDN 2 port only.

**None** - Disable the backup function.

**Packet Trigger** -The backup line is not on until a packet from a local host triggers the router to establish a connection.

**Always On** - If the broadband connection is no longer available, the backup line will be activated automatically and always on until the broadband connection is restored. We recommend you to enable this feature if you host a web server for your customers' access.

### WAN Connection Detection

Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.

**Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection.

**Ping IP** – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.

**TTL (Time to Live)** – Displays value for your reference. TTL

## ISP Access Setup

value is set by telnet command.

Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP. If you want to connect to Internet all the time, you can check **Always On**.

**Username** – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.

**Password** – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.

**PPP Authentication** – Select **PAP only** or **PAP or CHAP** for PPP.

**Idle Timeout** – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action. This setting is active only when the **Active on demand** option for Active Mode is selected in **WAN>> General Setup** page.

## IP Address From ISP

Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.

| Index | Enable                   | Aux. WAN IP          | Join NAT IP Pool         |
|-------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1.    | v                        | ---                  | v                        |
| 2.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

OK Clear All Close

**Fixed IP** – Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of **Fixed IP Address**.

**Default MAC Address** – You can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.

**Specify a MAC Address** – Type the MAC address for the router manually.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup** - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## MPoA for WAN1

MPoA is a specification that enables ATM services to be integrated with existing LANs, which use either Ethernet, token-ring or TCP/IP protocols. The goal of MPoA is to allow different LANs to send packets to each other via an ATM backbone.

To use **MPoA** as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select **MPoA** mode. The following web page will appear.

[WAN >> Internet Access](#)

**WAN 1**

**PPPoE / PPPoA**

**MPoA (RFC1483/2684)**

☐ Enable ☒ Disable

**DSL Modem Settings**

Multi-PVC channel 

Channel 2

Encapsulation 

1483 Bridged IP LLC

VPI 

0

VCI 

88

Modulation 

Multimode

**ISDN Dial Backup Setup**

Dial Backup Mode 

None

**WAN Connection Detection**

Mode 

ARP Detect

Ping IP

TTL:

**RIP Protocol**

☐ Enable RIP

**Bridge Mode**

☐ Enable Bridge Mode

**WAN IP Network Settings**

WAN IP Alias

☐ Obtain an IP address automaticallyRouter Name \*Domain Name \*

\* : Required for some ISPs

☒ Specify an IP addressIP Address Subnet Mask Gateway IP Address ☒ Default MAC Address☐ Specify a MAC AddressMAC Address: 

00

50

7F

94

E7

D1

**DNS Server IP Address**Primary IP Address Secondary IP Address 

OK

Cancel

### DSL Modem Settings

Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These are vital for building DSL connection to your ISP.

**Multi-PVC channel** - The selections displayed here are

determined by the page of **Internet Access – Multi PVCs**.  
**Select M-PVCs Channel** means no selection will be chosen.

**Encapsulating Type** - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP.

**VPI** - Type in the value provided by ISP.

**VCI** - Type in the value provided by ISP.

**Modulation** –Default setting is Multimode. Choose the one that fits the requirement of your router.

Modulation

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Multimode       | ▼ |
| T1.413          |   |
| G.Lite          |   |
| G.DMT           |   |
| ADSL2(G.992.3)  |   |
| ADSL2 annex M   |   |
| ADSL2+(G.992.5) |   |
| ADSL2+ annex M  |   |
| Multimode       |   |

### ISDN Dial Backup Setup

This setting is available for the routers supporting ISDN function only. Before utilizing the ISDN dial backup feature, you must create a dial backup profile first. Please click **ISDN > Dialing to a Single ISP** to create the backup profile.

Dial Backup Mode

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| None           | ▼ |
| None           |   |
| Packet Trigger |   |
| Always On      |   |

**Note:** This feature is available for ISDN 2 port only.

**None** - Disable the backup function.

**Packet Trigger** -The backup line is not on until a packet from a local host triggers the router to establish a connection.

**Always On** - If the broadband connection is no longer available, the backup line will be activated automatically and always on until the broadband connection is restored. We recommend you to enable this feature if you host a web server for your customers' access.

### WAN Connection Detection

Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.

**Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection.

**Ping IP** – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.

**TTL (Time to Live)** – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.

### RIP Protocol

Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click **Enable RIP** for activating this function.

## Bridge Mode

If you choose **Bridged IP** as the protocol, you can check this box to invoke the function. The router will work as a bridge modem.

## WAN IP Network Settings

This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.

**Obtain an IP address automatically** – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.

**Router Name** – Type in the router name provided by ISP.

**Domain Name** – Type in the domain name that you have assigned.

**Specify an IP address** – Click this radio button to specify some data.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click **OK** to exit the dialog.

| Index | Enable                              | Aux. WAN IP          | Join NAT IP Pool                    |
|-------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1.    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ---                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 2.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 3.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 4.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 5.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 6.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 7.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 8.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

OK Clear All Close

**IP Address** – Type in the private IP address.

**Subnet Mask** – Type in the subnet mask.

**Gateway IP Address** – Type in gateway IP address.

**Default MAC Address** - Type in MAC address for the router. You can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address for your necessity.

**MAC Address** – Type in the MAC address for the router manually.

## DNS Server IP Address

Type in the primary IP address for the router. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## PPPoE for WAN2

To use **PPPoE** as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select **PPPoE** mode. The following web page will appear.

[WAN >> Internet Access](#)

**WAN 2**

**PPPoE** | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP

☐ Enable ☒ Disable

**ISP Access Setup**

Username:

Password:

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup: => , , ,

**ISDN Dial Backup Setup**

Dial Backup Mode:

**WAN Connection Detection**

Mode:

Ping IP:

TTL:

**PPP/MP Setup**

PPP Authentication:

Idle Timeout:  second(s)

**IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)**

Fixed IP: ☐ Yes ☒ No (Dynamic IP)

Fixed IP Address:

☒ Default MAC Address

☐ Specify a MAC Address

MAC Address:

### Enable/Disable

Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

### ISP Access Setup

Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP. If you want to connect to Internet all the time, you can check **Always On**.

**Username** – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.

**Password** – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.

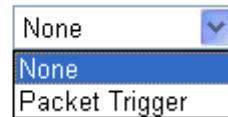
**Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup** - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Application – Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

### ISDN Dial Backup Setup

This setting is available for the routers supporting ISDN function only. Before utilizing the ISDN dial backup feature, you must create a dial backup profile first. Please click **ISDN > Dialing to a Single ISP** to create the backup profile.



Dial Backup Mode



A dropdown menu with a blue border and a downward arrow on the right. The menu is open, showing three options: 'None' (top), 'None' (middle, highlighted in blue), and 'Packet Trigger' (bottom).

**Note:** This feature is available for ISDN 2 port only.

**None** - Disable the backup function.

**Packet Trigger** -The backup line is not on until a packet from a local host triggers the router to establish a connection.

#### WAN Connection Detection

Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.

**Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection.

**Ping IP** – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.

**TTL (Time to Live)** – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.

#### PPP/MP Setup

**PPP Authentication** – Select **PAP only** or **PAP or CHAP** for PPP.

**Idle Timeout** – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action. This setting is active only when the **Active on demand** option for Active Mode is selected in **WAN>> General Setup** page.

#### IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)

Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.

| Index | Enable                   | Aux. WAN IP          | Join NAT IP Pool         |
|-------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1.    | v                        | ---                  | v                        |
| 2.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

OK Clear All Close

**Fixed IP** – Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of **Fixed IP Address**.

**Fixed IP Address** -Type a fixed IP address.

**Default MAC Address** – You can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.

**Specify a MAC Address** – Type the MAC address for the router manually.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

## Static or Dynamic IP for WAN2

For static IP mode, you usually receive a fixed public IP address or a public subnet, namely multiple public IP addresses from your DSL or Cable ISP service providers. In most cases, a Cable service provider will offer a fixed public IP, while a DSL service provider will offer a public subnet. If you have a public subnet, you could assign an IP address or many IP address to the WAN interface.

To use static or dynamic IP as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select **Static or Dynamic IP** mode. The following web page will appear.

**WAN 2**

**PPPoE**   **Static or Dynamic IP**   **PPTP**

☒ Enable   ☐ Disable

**ISDN Dial Backup Setup**

Dial Backup Mode: None

**Keep WAN Connection**

☐ Enable PING to keep alive

PING to the IP:

PING Interval: 0 minute(s)

**WAN Connection Detection**

Mode: ARP Detect

Ping IP:

TTL:

**RIP Protocol**

☐ Enable RIP

**WAN IP Network Settings**   WAN IP Alias

☐ Obtain an IP address automatically

Router Name: \*

Domain Name: \*

\* : Required for some ISPs

☒ Specify an IP address

IP Address: 172.16.3.229

Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

Gateway IP Address: 172.16.3.4

☒ Default MAC Address

☐ Specify a MAC Address

MAC Address: 00 . 50 . 7F . 94 . E7 . D2

**DNS Server IP Address**

Primary IP Address:

Secondary IP Address:

OK   Cancel

**Enable/ Disable**

Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

**ISDN Dial Backup Setup**

This setting is available for the routers supporting ISDN function only. Before utilizing the ISDN dial backup feature, you must create a dial backup profile first. Please click **ISDN > Dialing to a Single ISP** to create the backup profile.

Dial Backup Mode

None

None

Packet Trigger

Always On

**Note:** This feature is available for ISDN 2 port only.

**None** - Disable the backup function.

**Packet Trigger** -The backup line is not on until a packet from a local host triggers the router to establish a connection.

**Always On** - If the broadband connection is no longer available, the backup line will be activated automatically and always on until the broadband connection is restored. We recommend you to enable this feature if you host a web server for your customers' access.

**Keep WAN Connection**

Normally, this function is designed for Dynamic IP environments because some ISPs will drop connections if there is no traffic within certain periods of time. Check **Enable PING to keep alive** box to activate this function.

**PING to the IP** - If you enable the PING function, please specify the IP address for the system to PING it for keeping alive.

**PING Interval** - Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation.

#### WAN Connection Detection

Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect.

**Mode** – Choose **Always On**, **ARP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection.

**Ping IP** – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging.

**TTL (Time to Live)** – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.

#### RIP Protocol

Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click **Enable RIP** for activating this function.

#### WAN IP Network Settings

This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.

| Index | Enable                   | Aux. WAN IP          | Join NAT IP Pool         |
|-------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1.    | v                        | ---                  | v                        |
| 2.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

OK Clear All Close

**Obtain an IP address automatically** – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically if you want to use **Dynamic IP** mode.

**Router Name:** Type in the router name provided by ISP.

**Domain Name:** Type in the domain name that you have assigned.

**Specify an IP address** – Click this radio button to specify some data if you want to use **Static IP** mode.

**IP Address:** Type the IP address.

**Subnet Mask:** Type the subnet mask.

**Gateway IP Address:** Type the gateway IP address.

**Default MAC Address:** Click this radio button to use default MAC address for the router.

**Specify a MAC Address:** Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to click the **Specify a MAC Address** and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field.

**DNS Server IP Address**

Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use **Static IP** mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

## PPTP/L2TP for WAN2

To use **PPTP/L2TP** as the accessing protocol of the Internet, select **PPTP/L2TP** mode. The following web page will appear.

### WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 2**

| PPPoE  | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP |
|--|----------------------|-----------|
| <p><input type="radio"/> Enable PPTP <input type="radio"/> Enable L2TP <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable</p> <p>Server Address <input type="text"/></p> <p>Specify Gateway IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.5.1"/></p> <hr/> <p><b>ISP Access Setup</b></p> <p>Username <input type="text"/></p> <p>Password <input type="text"/></p> <p>Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br/>=&gt; <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>ISDN Dial Backup Setup</b></p> <p>Dial Backup Mode <input type="text" value="None"/></p>  |                      |           |
| <p><b>PPP Setup</b></p> <p>PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/></p> <p>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="-1"/> second(s)</p> <p><b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b></p> <p><input type="text" value="WAN IP Alias"/></p> <p>Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)</p> <p>Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p><b>WAN IP Network Settings</b></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address</p> <p>IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.5.10"/></p> <p>Subnet Mask <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/></p> |                      |           |

OK Cancel

**Enable PPTP/Enable L2TP**

Click **Enable PPTP/Enable L2TP** for activating this function.

**Disable**

If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

**Server Address**

Specify the IP address of the PPTP/L2TP server.

**Specify Gateway IP Address**

Specify the gateway IP address for the server.

## ISP Access Setup

**Username** -Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.

**Password** -Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup** - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Application >>Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

## ISDN Dial Backup Setup

This setting is available for the routers supporting ISDN function only. Before utilizing the ISDN dial backup feature, you must create a dial backup profile first. Please click **ISDN > Dialing to a Single ISP** to create the backup profile.

Dial Backup Mode

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| None           | ▼ |
| None           |   |
| Packet Trigger |   |

**Note:** This feature is available for ISDN 2 port only.

**None** - Disable the backup function.

**Packet Trigger** -The backup line is not on until a packet from a local host triggers the router to establish a connection.

## PPP Setup

**PPP Authentication** - Select **PAP only** or **PAP or CHAP** for PPP.

**Idle Timeout** - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action. This setting is active only when the **Active on demand** option for Active Mode is selected in **WAN>> General Setup** page.

## IP Address Assignment Method(IPCP)

Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.

**WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only. Type the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click OK to exit the dialog.

http://192.168.1.1 - WAN IP Alias - Microsoft Internet Explorer

**WAN IP Alias ( Multi-NAT )**

| Index | Enable                              | Aux. WAN IP          | Join NAT IP Pool                    |
|-------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1.    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ---                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 2.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 3.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 4.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 5.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 6.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 7.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 8.    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="text"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

OK Clear All Close

Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box.

**Fixed IP** - Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of **Fixed IP Address**.

**Fixed IP Address** -Type a fixed IP address.

**Obtain an IP address automatically** – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.

**Specify an IP address** – Click this radio button to specify some data.

**IP Address** – Type the IP address.

**Subnet Mask** – Type the subnet mask.

## WAN IP Network Settings

## PPP for WAN2

Such mode is active only **3G USB Modem** was chosen as the physical mode in General Setup.

### WAN >> Internet Access

#### WAN 2

**PPP Client Mode** ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

SIM PIN code

Modem Initial String  (Default: AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0)

APN Name

Modem Dial String  (Default: ATDT\*99#)

PPP Username  (Optional)

PPP Password  (Optional)

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup:  
=> , , ,

#### PPP Client Mode

Click Enable to activate this mode for WAN2.

#### SIM PIN code

Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet.

#### Modem Initial String

Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP.

#### APN Name

APN(Access Point Name) is provided by your ISP for identifying different access points. Simply click **Apply** to apply such name. Finally, you have to click **OK** to save the setting.

**Apply** – Activate the function of identification.

#### Modem Dial String

Such value is used to dial through USB mode. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP.

#### PPP Username

Type the PPP username (optional).

#### PPP Password

Type the PPP password (optional).

#### Index (1-15)

Set the PCs on LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.



## 5.1.5 Multi-PVCs

This router allows you to create multi-PVCs for different data transferring for using. Simply go to **Internet Access** and select **Multi-PVC Setup** page.

### General

The system allows you to set up to eight channels which are ready for choosing as the first PVC line that will be used as multi-PVCs.

[WAN >> Multi-PVCs](#)

#### Multi-PVCs

| General |  | ATM QoS |     | Port-based Bridge |          |                     |
|---------|--|---------|-----|-------------------|----------|---------------------|
| Channel | Enable                                       | VPI     | VCI | QoS Type          | Protocol | Encapsulation       |
| 1.      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>          | 0       | 33  | UBR               | PPPoE    | LLC/SNAP            |
| 2.      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>          | 0       | 88  | UBR               | MPoA     | 1483 Bridged IP LLC |
| 3.      | <a href="#">WAN</a> <input type="checkbox"/> | 1       | 43  | UBR               | PPPoA    | VC MUX              |
| 4.      | <a href="#">WAN</a> <input type="checkbox"/> | 1       | 44  | UBR               | PPPoA    | VC MUX              |
| 5.      | <a href="#">WAN</a> <input type="checkbox"/> | 1       | 45  | UBR               | PPPoA    | VC MUX              |
| 6.      | <input type="checkbox"/>                     | 1       | 46  | UBR               | PPPoA    | VC MUX              |
| 7.      | <input type="checkbox"/>                     | 1       | 47  | UBR               | PPPoA    | VC MUX              |
| 8.      | <input type="checkbox"/>                     | 1       | 48  | UBR               | PPPoA    | VC MUX              |

Note: VPI/VCI must be unique for each channel!

### Enable

Check this box to enable that channel. The channels that you enabled here will be shown in the **Multi-PVC channel** drop down list on the web page of **Internet Access**. Though you can enable eight channels in this page, yet only one channel can be chosen on the web page of **Internet Access**.

### VPI

Type in the value provided by your ISP.

### VCI

Type in the value provided by your ISP.

### QoS Type

Select a proper QoS type for the channel.

#### QoS Type

UBR

UBR

CBR

ABR

nrtVBR

rtVBR

### Protocol

Select a proper protocol for this channel.

#### Protocol

PPPoE

PPPoA

PPPoE

MPoA

## Encapsulation

Choose a proper type for this channel. The types will be different according to the protocol setting that you choose.

The image shows two overlapping dropdown menus. The top menu, titled 'Encapsulation', lists the following options: 1483 Route IP LLC (selected), 1483 Bridged IP LLC, 1483 Route IP LLC, 1483 Bridged IP VC-Mux, 1483 Routed IP VC-Mux(IPoA), and 1483 Bridged IP(IPoE). The bottom menu, also titled 'Encapsulation', lists: VC MUX (selected), VC MUX, and LLC/SNAP.

WAN link for Channel 3, 4, 5 are provided for router-borne application such as TR069 and VoIP. The settings must be applied and obtained from your ISP. For your special request, please contact with your ISP and then click WAN link of Channel 3, 4 or 5 to configure your router.

### WAN >> Multi-PVCs >> PVC Channel 3

The screenshot displays the 'WAN for Router-borne Application' configuration window. At the top, there is a 'Management' dropdown menu. Below it are radio buttons for 'Enable' (selected) and 'Disable'. The main configuration area is divided into several sections: 'DSL Modem Settings' with fields for VPI (1), VCI (43), QoS Type (UBR), Protocol (PPPoA), and Encapsulation (VC MUX); 'PPPoE/PPPoA Client' with fields for ISP Name, Username, Password, PPP Authentication (PAP or CHAP), and an 'Always On' checkbox; 'IP Address From ISP' with radio buttons for 'Yes' and 'No (Dynamic IP)' (selected), and a 'Fixed IP Address' field; 'MPoA (RFC1483/2684)' with radio buttons for 'Obtain an IP address automatically' and 'Specify an IP address' (selected), and fields for Router Name, Domain Name, IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway IP Address; and 'DNS Server IP Address' with fields for Primary and Secondary IP addresses. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

## WAN for Router-borne Application

Choose the router service for channel 3, 4 or 5.

**Management** - It can be specified for general management (Web configuration/telnet/TR069). If you choose Management, the configuration for this PVC will be effective for Web configuration/telnet/TR069.

**VoIP** - It can be specified for VoIP only. If you choose VoIP, the configuration for this PVC will be effective for VoIP data transmitting and receiving.

## Enable/Disable

Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**,

this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

### **DSL Modem Settings**

Set up the DSL parameters required by your ISP. These are vital for building DSL connection to your ISP.

**VPI** - Type in the value provided by ISP.

**VCI** - Type in the value provided by ISP.

**QoS Type** -Select a proper QoS type for the channel.

**Protocol** - Select a proper protocol for this channel. There are three options, PPPoE, PPPoA and MPoA for you to select. The following settings will be changed according to the protocol selected here.

**Encapsulating Type** - Drop down the list to choose the type provided by ISP.

### **ISP Access Setup**

Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP. If you want to connect to Internet all the time, you can check **Always On**.

**Username** – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field.

**Password** – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field.

**PPP Authentication** – Select **PAP only** or **PAP or CHAP** for PPP.

**Idle Timeout** – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action. This setting is active only when the **Always On** option is not selected.

### **IP Address from ISP**

**Fixed IP** - Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of **Fixed IP Address**.

**Fixed IP Address** -Type a fixed IP address.

### **Obtain an IP address automatically**

Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically.

**Router Name** – Type in the router name provided by ISP.

**Domain Name** – Type in the domain name that you have assigned.

### **Specify an IP address**

Click this radio button to specify some data.

**IP Address** – Type in the private IP address.

**Subnet Mask** – Type in the subnet mask.

**Gateway IP Address** – Type in gateway IP address.

### **DNS Server IP Address**

Type in the primary IP address for the router. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

## ATM QoS

Such configuration is applied to upstream packets. Such information will be provided by ISP. Please contact with your ISP for detailed information.

WAN >> Multi-PVCs

### Multi-PVCs

| General |          | ATM QoS |     | Port-based Bridge |  |
|---------|----------|---------|-----|-------------------|--|
| Channel | QoS Type | PCR     | SCR | MBS               |  |
| 1.      | UBR      | 0       | 0   | 0                 |  |
| 2.      | UBR      | 0       | 0   | 0                 |  |
| 3.      | UBR      | 0       | 0   | 0                 |  |
| 4.      | UBR      | 0       | 0   | 0                 |  |
| 5.      | UBR      | 0       | 0   | 0                 |  |
| 6.      | UBR      | 0       | 0   | 0                 |  |
| 7.      | UBR      | 0       | 0   | 0                 |  |
| 8.      | UBR      | 0       | 0   | 0                 |  |

Note: 1.Set 0 means default value.

2.PCR(max) = ADSL Up Speed / 53 / 8.

OK Clear Cancel

## QoS Type

Select a proper QoS type for the channel according to the information that your ISP provides.

### QoS Type

UBR  
UBR  
CBR  
ABR  
nrtVBR  
rtVBR

## PCR

It represents Peak Cell Rate. The default setting is "0".

## SCR

It represents Sustainable Cell Rate. The value of SCR must be smaller than PCR.

## MBS

It represents Maximum Burst Size. The range of the value is 10 to 50.

## Port-based Bridge

General page lets you set the first PVC. As to set the second PVC line, please click the **Port-based Bridge** tab to open Bridge configuration page.

[WAN >> Multi-PVCs](#)

### Multi-PVCs

| General | ATM QoS                             | Port-based Bridge        |                          |                          |                          |                |   |  |
|---------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------|---|--|
| Channel | Enable                              | P1                       | P2                       | P3                       | P4                       | Service Type   | Add Tag                                       |  |
| 1.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Normal         | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> |  |
| 2.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Normal         | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> |  |
| 3.      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Normal         | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> |  |
| 4.      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Normal         | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> |  |
| 5.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Normal<br>IGMP | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> |  |
| 6.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Normal         | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> |  |
| 7.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Normal         | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> |  |
| 8.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Normal         | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/> |  |

Note: 1.Channel 1 to 2 are reserved for Nat/Route use.

2.P1 is reserved for Nat/Route use.

#### Enable

Check this box to enable that channel. Only channel 3 to 8 can be set in this page, for channel 1 to 4 are reserved for NAT using.

#### P1 to P4

It means the LAN port 1 to 4. Check the box to designate the LAN port for channel 3 to 8.

#### Service Type

Normally, service type is used for the service of video stream (e.g., IPTV). It can divide the packets from remote control and from video stream into different PVC. In general, the protocol used by remote control is IGMP.

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| Normal | ▼ |
| Normal |   |
| IGMP   |   |

**Normal** – It means that the PVC can accept all packets except IGMP.

**IGMP** – It means that the PVC can accept packets of IGMP only.

#### Add Tag

To identify the usage of PVC, check this box to invoke this setting. And type the number for VLAN ID (number).

Click **Clear** to remove all the configurations in this page if you do not satisfy it. When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page. Or click **Cancel** to abort the configuration and exit this page.

## 5.1.6 Load-Balance Policy

This router supports the function of load balancing. It can assign traffic with protocol type, IP address for specific host, a subnet of hosts, and port range to be allocated in WAN1 or WAN2 interface. The user can assign traffic category and force it to go to dedicate network interface based on the following web page setup. Twenty policies of load-balance are supported by this router.

**Note:** Load-Balance Policy is running only when both WAN1 and WAN2 are activated.

[WAN >> Load-Balance Policy](#)

### Load-Balance Policy

| Index              | Enable                   | Protocol | WAN  | Src IP Start | Src IP End | Dest IP Start | Dest IP End | Dest Port Start | Dest Port End | Move Up            | Move Down            |
|--------------------|--------------------------|----------|------|--------------|------------|---------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <a href="#">1</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               |                    | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">2</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">3</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">4</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">5</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">6</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">7</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">8</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">9</a>  | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <a href="#">10</a> | <input type="checkbox"/> | any      | WAN1 |              |            |               |             |                 |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

OK

#### Index

Click the number of index to access into the load-balance policy configuration web page.

#### Enable

Check this box to enable this policy.

#### Protocol

Use the drop-down menu to change the protocol for the WAN interface.

any

any

TCP

UDP

TCP/UDP

ICMP

IGMP

#### WAN

Use the drop-down menu to change the WAN interface.

#### Src IP Start

Displays the IP address for the start of the source IP.

#### Src IP End

Displays the IP address for the end of the source IP.

#### Dest IP Start

Displays the IP address for the start of the destination IP.

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Dest IP End</b>       | Displays the IP address for the end of the destination IP.         |
| <b>Dest Port Start</b>   | Displays the IP address for the start of the destination port.     |
| <b>Dest Port End</b>     | Displays the IP address for the end of the destination port.       |
| <b>Move UP/Move Down</b> | Use <b>Up</b> or <b>Down</b> link to move the order of the policy. |

Click **Index 1** to access into the following page for configuring load-balance policy.

#### WAN >> Load-Balance Policy

##### Index: 1

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable |              |
| Protocol                                   | TCP          |
| Binding WAN Interface                      | WAN1         |
| Src IP Start                               | 192.168.1.6  |
| Src IP End                                 | 192.168.1.9  |
| Dest IP Start                              | 168.95.0.0   |
| Dest IP End                                | 168.95.1.100 |
| Dest Port Start                            | 80           |
| Dest Port End                              | 100          |

**Enable** Check this box to enable this policy.

**Protocol** Use the drop-down menu to choose a proper protocol for the WAN interface.

|          |     |
|----------|-----|
| Protocol | any |
|----------|-----|

any  
 TCP  
 UDP  
 TCP/UDP  
 ICMP  
 IGMP

**Binding WAN interface** Choose the WAN interface (WAN1 or WAN2) for binding.

**Src IP Start** Type the source IP start for the specified WAN interface.

**Src IP End** Type the source IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the source IPs inside the LAN will be passed through the WAN interface.

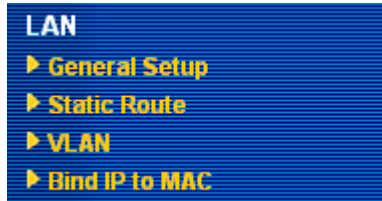
**Dest IP Start** Type the destination IP start for the specified WAN interface.

**Dest IP End** Type the destination IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination IPs will be passed through the WAN interface.

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Dest Port Start</b> | Type the destination port start for the destination IP.   |
| <b>Dest Port End</b>   | Type the destination port end for the destination IP. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination ports will be passed through the WAN interface. |

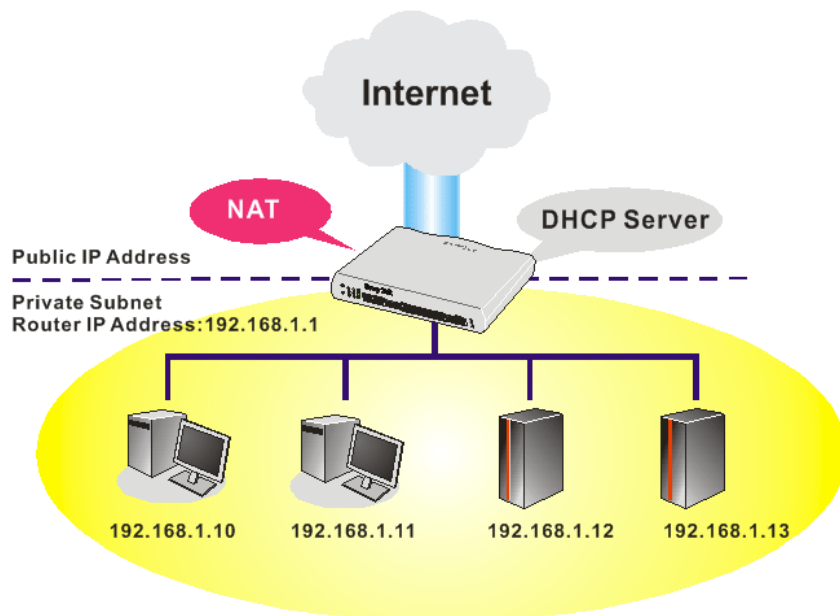
## 5.2 LAN

Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.



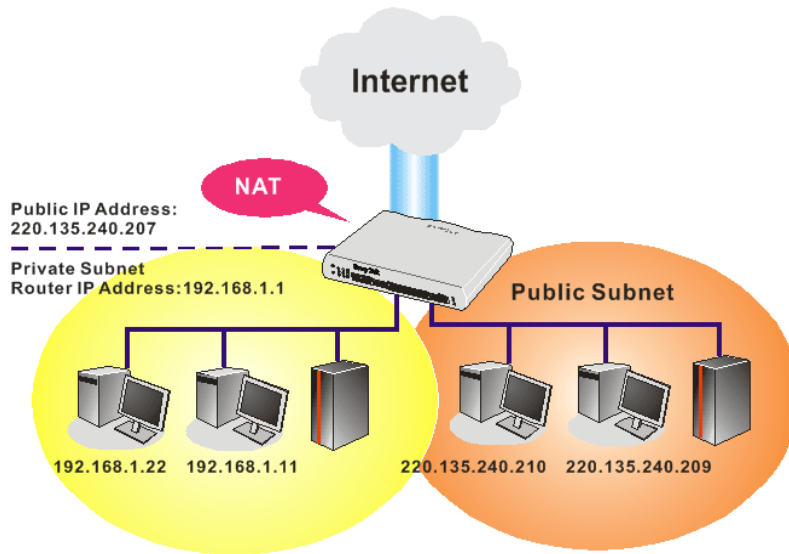
### 5.2.1 Basics of LAN

The most generic function of Vigor router is NAT. It creates a private subnet of your own. As mentioned previously, the router will talk to other public hosts on the Internet by using public IP address and talking to local hosts by using its private IP address. What NAT does is to translate the packets from public IP address to private IP address to forward the right packets to the right host and vice versa. Besides, Vigor router has a built-in DHCP server that assigns private IP address to each local host. See the following diagram for a briefly understanding.



In some special case, you may have a public IP subnet from your ISP such as 220.135.240.0/24. This means that you can set up a public subnet or call second subnet that each host is equipped with a public IP address. As a part of the public subnet, the Vigor router will serve for IP routing to help hosts in the public subnet to communicate with other public hosts or servers outside. Therefore, the router should be set as the gateway for public hosts.





## What is Routing Information Protocol (RIP)

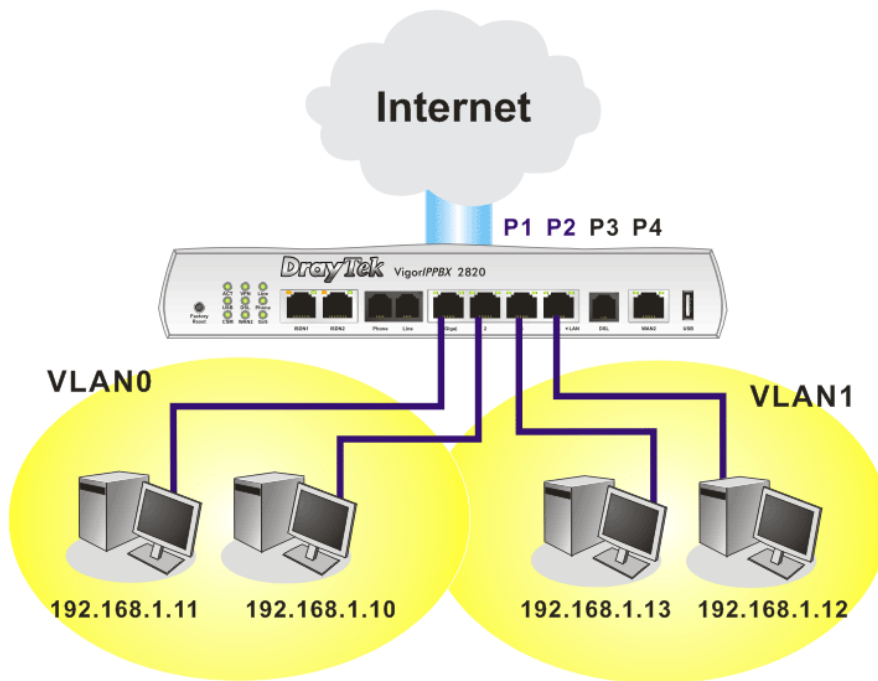
Vigor router will exchange routing information with neighboring routers using the RIP to accomplish IP routing. This allows users to change the information of the router such as IP address and the routers will automatically inform for each other.

## What is Static Route

When you have several subnets in your LAN, sometimes a more effective and quicker way for connection is the **Static routes** function rather than other method. You may simply set rules to forward data from one specified subnet to another specified subnet without the presence of RIP.

## What are Virtual LANs

You can group local hosts by physical ports and create up to 4 virtual LANs. To manage the communication between different groups, please set up rules in Virtual LAN (VLAN) function and the rate of each.



## 5.2.2 General Setup

This page provides you the general settings for LAN.

Click **LAN** to open the LAN settings page and choose **General Setup**.

[LAN >> General Setup](#)

### Ethernet TCP / IP and DHCP Setup

#### LAN IP Network Configuration

For NAT Usage

1st IP Address

1st Subnet Mask

For IP Routing Usage ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

2nd IP Address

2nd Subnet Mask

RIP Protocol Control

#### DHCP Server Configuration

☒ Enable Server ☐ Disable Server

Relay Agent: ☐ 1st Subnet ☐ 2nd Subnet

Start IP Address

IP Pool Counts

Gateway IP Address

DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent

#### DNS Server IP Address

☐ Force DNS manual setting

Primary IP Address

Secondary IP Address

#### 1st IP Address

Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).

#### 1st Subnet Mask

Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)

#### For IP Routing Usage

Click **Enable** to invoke this function. The default setting is **Disable**.

#### 2<sup>nd</sup> IP Address

Type in secondary IP address for connecting to a subnet. (Default: 192.168.2.1/ 24)

#### 2<sup>nd</sup> Subnet Mask

An address code that determines the size of the network.

## 2<sup>nd</sup> DHCP Server

(Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)

You can configure the router to serve as a DHCP server for the 2nd subnet.

The screenshot shows the '2nd DHCP Server' configuration window in a Microsoft Internet Explorer browser. The window title is 'http://192.168.1.1 - Router Web Configurator - Microsoft Internet Explorer'. The configuration area has a title '2nd DHCP Server'. It contains a 'Start IP Address' text box, an 'IP Pool Counts' text box with a value of '0' and '(max. 10)' next to it, and a table with three columns: 'Index', 'Matched MAC Address', and 'given IP Address'. Below the table is a 'MAC Address' text box with a placeholder 'MAC Address :'. At the bottom of the table area are four buttons: 'Add', 'Delete', 'Edit', and 'Cancel'. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'OK', 'Clear All', and 'Close'.

**Start IP Address:** Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 2nd IP address of your router is 220.135.240.1, the starting IP address must be 220.135.240.2 or greater, but smaller than 220.135.240.254.

**IP Pool Counts:** Enter the number of IP addresses in the pool. The maximum is 10. For example, if you type 3 and the 2nd IP address of your router is 220.135.240.1, the range of IP address by the DHCP server will be from 220.135.240.2 to 220.135.240.4.

**MAC Address:** Enter the MAC Address of the host one by one and click **Add** to create a list of hosts to be assigned, deleted or edited IP address from above pool. Set a list of MAC Address for 2<sup>nd</sup> DHCP server will help router to assign the correct IP address of the correct subnet to the correct host. So those hosts in 2<sup>nd</sup> subnet won't get an IP address belonging to 1<sup>st</sup> subnet.

## RIP Protocol Control

**Disable** deactivates the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers.  
(Default)

The screenshot shows a dropdown menu for 'RIP Protocol Control'. The menu is open, showing three options: 'Disable' (selected), '1st Subnet', and '2nd Subnet'.

**1st Subnet** - Select the router to change the RIP information of the 1st subnet with neighboring routers.

**2nd Subnet** - Select the router to change the RIP information of the 2nd subnet with neighboring routers.

## DHCP Server Configuration

DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user

configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.

If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location.

**Enable Server** - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.

**Disable Server** – Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN.

**Relay Agent** – (1<sup>st</sup> subnet/2<sup>nd</sup> subnet) Specify which subnet that DHCP server is located the relay agent should redirect the DHCP request to.

**Start IP Address** - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254.

**IP Pool Counts** - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253.

**Gateway IP Address** - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address of the router, which means the router is the default gateway.

**DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent** - Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.

## DNS Server Configuration

DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address.

**Force DNS manual setting** - Force Vigor router to use DNS servers in this page instead of DNS servers given by the Internet Access server (PPPoE, PPTP, L2TP or DHCP server).

**Primary IP Address** - You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default DNS Server IP address: 194.109.6.66 to this field.

**Secondary IP Address** - You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default secondary DNS Server IP address: 194.98.0.1 to this field.

The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:

|               |                           |                        |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| System Status |                           | System Uptime: 2:10:17 |                           |
| LAN Status    | Primary DNS: 194.109.6.66 |                        | Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1 |
| IP Address    | TX Packets                | RX Packets             |                           |
| 192.168.1.1   | 7508                      | 175019                 |                           |

If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign its own IP address to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache.

If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

There are two common scenarios of LAN settings that stated in Chapter 4. For the configuration examples, please refer to that chapter to get more information for your necessity.

### 5.2.3 Static Route

Go to **LAN** to open setting page and choose **Static Route**.

[LAN >> Static Route Setup](#)

| Static Route Configuration |                     |        | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> | <a href="#">View Routing Table</a> |        |
|----------------------------|---------------------|--------|--|------------------------------------|--------|
| Index                      | Destination Address | Status | Index                                  | Destination Address                | Status |
| <a href="#">1.</a>         | ???                 | ?      | <a href="#">6.</a>                     | ???                                | ?      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>         | ???                 | ?      | <a href="#">7.</a>                     | ???                                | ?      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>         | ???                 | ?      | <a href="#">8.</a>                     | ???                                | ?      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>         | ???                 | ?      | <a href="#">9.</a>                     | ???                                | ?      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>         | ???                 | ?      | <a href="#">10.</a>                    | ???                                | ?      |

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive, ? --- Empty

- Index** The number (1 to 10) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route.
- Destination Address** Displays the destination address of the static route.
- Status** Displays the status of the static route.
- Viewing Routing Table** Displays the routing table for your reference.

[Diagnostics >> View Routing Table](#)

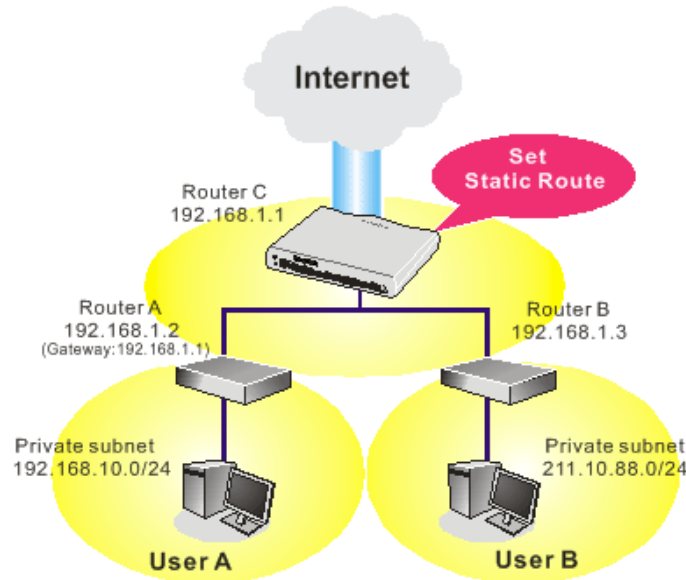
| Current Running Routing Table                                     |                                      | <a href="#">Refresh</a> |
|---|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private |                                      |                         |
| * 0.0.0.0/  | 0.0.0.0 via 172.16.3.4,              | WAN2                    |
| C~ 192.168.1.0/   | 255.255.255.0 is directly connected, | LAN                     |
| C 172.16.0.0/   | 255.255.0.0 is directly connected,   | WAN2                    |

### Add Static Routes to Private and Public Networks

Here is an example of setting Static Route in Main Router so that user A and B locating in different subnet can talk to each other via the router. Assuming the Internet access has been configured and the router works properly:

- use the Main Router to surf the Internet.
- create a private subnet 192.168.10.0 using an internal Router A (192.168.1.2)
- create a public subnet 211.100.88.0 via an internal Router B (192.168.1.3).
- have set Main Router 192.168.1.1 as the default gateway for the Router A 192.168.1.2.

Before setting Static Route, user A cannot talk to user B for Router A can only forward recognized packets to its default gateway Main Router.



1. Go to **LAN** page and click **General Setup**, select 1st Subnet as the **RIP Protocol Control**. Then click the **OK** button.

**Note:** There are two reasons that we have to apply RIP Protocol Control on 1st Subnet. The first is that the LAN interface can exchange RIP packets with the neighboring routers via the 1st subnet (192.168.1.0/24). The second is that those hosts on the internal private subnets (ex. 192.168.10.0/24) can access the Internet via the router, and continuously exchange of IP routing information with different subnets.

2. Click the **LAN - Static Route** and click on the **Index Number 1**. Check the **Enable** box. Please add a static route as shown below, which regulates all packets destined to 192.168.10.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.2. Click **OK**.

[LAN >> Static Route Setup](#)

**Index No. 1**

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable |               |
| Destination IP Address                     | 192.168.10.0  |
| Subnet Mask                                | 255.255.255.0 |
| Gateway IP Address                         | 192.168.1.2   |
| Network Interface                          | LAN           |

3. Return to **Static Route Setup** page. Click on another **Index Number** to add another static route as show below, which regulates all packets destined to 211.100.88.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.3.

#### LAN >> Static Route Setup

##### Index No. 2

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable |               |
| Destination IP Address                     | 211.100.88.0  |
| Subnet Mask                                | 255.255.255.0 |
| Gateway IP Address                         | 192.168.1.3   |
| Network Interface                          | LAN           |

OK Cancel

4. Go to **Diagnostics** and choose **Routing Table** to verify current routing table.

#### Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

Current Running Routing Table [Refresh](#)

Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, \* - default, ~ - private

```
S~ 192.168.10.0/ 255.255.255.0 via 192.168.1.2, LAN
C~ 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 is directly connected, LAN
S~ 211.100.88.0/ 255.255.255.0 via 192.168.1.3, LAN
```

## 5.2.4 VLAN

Virtual LAN function provides you a very convenient way to manage hosts by grouping them based on the physical port. You can also manage the in/out rate of each port. Go to **LAN** page and select **VLAN**. The following page will appear. Click **Enable** to invoke VLAN function.

#### LAN >> VLAN Configuration

VLAN Configuration

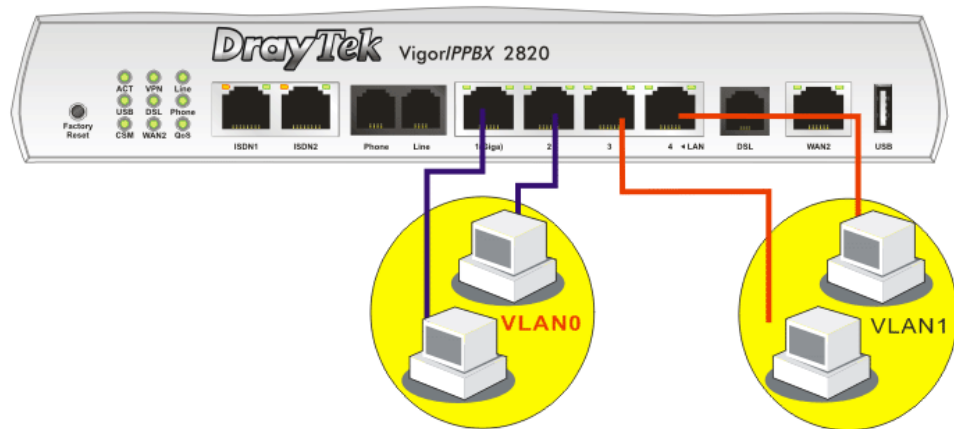
☐ Enable

|       | P1                       | P2                       | P3                       | P4                       |
|-------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| VLAN0 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| VLAN1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

OK Clear Cancel

To add or remove a VLAN, please refer to the following example.

1. If, VLAN 0 is consisted of hosts linked to P1 and P2 and VLAN 1 is consisted of hosts linked to P3 and P4.



2. After checking the box to enable VLAN function, you will check the table according to the needs as shown below.

#### LAN >> VLAN Configuration

##### VLAN Configuration

☒ Enable

|       | P1                                  | P2                                  | P3                                  | P4                                  |
|-------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| VLAN0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| VLAN1 | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| VLAN2 | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| VLAN3 | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

OK

Clear

Cancel

To remove VLAN, uncheck the needed box and click **OK** to save the results.



## 5.2.5 Bind IP to MAC

This function is used to bind the IP and MAC address in LAN to have a strengthening control in network. When this function is enabled, all the assigned IP and MAC address binding together cannot be changed. If you modified the binding IP or MAC address, it might cause you not access into the Internet.

Click **LAN** and click **Bind IP to MAC** to open the setup page.

[LAN >> Bind IP to MAC](#)

**Bind IP to MAC**

**Note:** IP-MAC binding presets DHCP Allocations.  
If you select Strict Bind, unspecified LAN clients cannot access the Internet.

☒ **Enable**   ☐ **Disable**   ☐ **Strict Bind**

**ARP Table**   | [Select All](#) | [Sort](#) | [Refresh](#)

| IP Address   | Mac Address       |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 192.168.1.10 | 00-0E-A6-2A-D5-A1 |

**IP Bind List**   | [Select All](#) | [Sort](#)

| Index | IP Address | Mac Address |
|-------|------------|-------------|
|-------|------------|-------------|

**Add and Edit**  
IP Address   
Mac Address :::::

### Enable

Click this radio button to invoke this function. However, IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List also can connect to Internet.

### Disable

Click this radio button to disable this function. All the settings on this page will be invalid.

### Strict Bind

Click this radio button to block the connection of the IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List.

### ARP Table

This table is the LAN ARP table of this router. The information for IP and MAC will be displayed in this field. Each pair of IP and MAC address listed in ARP table can be selected and added to IP Bind List by clicking **Add** below.

### Add and Edit

**IP Address** – Type the IP address that will be used for the specified MAC address.

**Mac Address** – Type the MAC address that is used to bind with the assigned IP address.

### Refresh

It is used to refresh the ARP table. When there is one new PC added to the LAN, you can click this link to obtain the newly ARP table information.

### IP Bind List

It displays a list for the IP bind to MAC information.

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Add</b>    | It allows you to add the one you choose from the ARP table or the IP/MAC address typed in <b>Add and Edit</b> to the table of <b>IP Bind List</b> .                                 |
| <b>Edit</b>   | It allows you to edit and modify the selected IP address and MAC address that you create before.  |
| <b>Remove</b> | You can remove any item listed in <b>IP Bind List</b> . Simply click and select the one, and click <b>Remove</b> . The selected item will be removed from the <b>IP Bind List</b> . |

**Note:** Before you select **Strict Bind**, you have to bind one set of IP/MAC address for one PC. If not, no one of the PCs can access into Internet. And the web configurator of the router might not be accessed.

## 5.3 NAT

Usually, the router serves as an NAT (Network Address Translation) router. NAT is a mechanism that one or more private IP addresses can be mapped into a single public one. Public IP address is usually assigned by your ISP, for which you may get charged. Private IP addresses are recognized only among internal hosts.

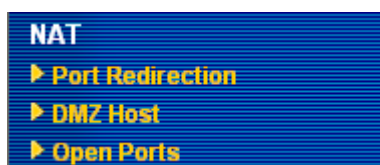
When the outgoing packets destined to some public server on the Internet reach the NAT router, the router will change its source address into the public IP address of the router, select the available public port, and then forward it. At the same time, the router shall list an entry in a table to memorize this address/port-mapping relationship. When the public server response, the incoming traffic, of course, is destined to the router's public IP address and the router will do the inversion based on its table. Therefore, the internal host can communicate with external host smoothly.

The benefit of the NAT includes:

- **Save cost on applying public IP address and apply efficient usage of IP address.** NAT allows the internal IP addresses of local hosts to be translated into one public IP address, thus you can have only one IP address on behalf of the entire internal hosts.
- **Enhance security of the internal network by obscuring the IP address.** There are many attacks aiming victims based on the IP address. Since the attacker cannot be aware of any private IP addresses, the NAT function can protect the internal network.

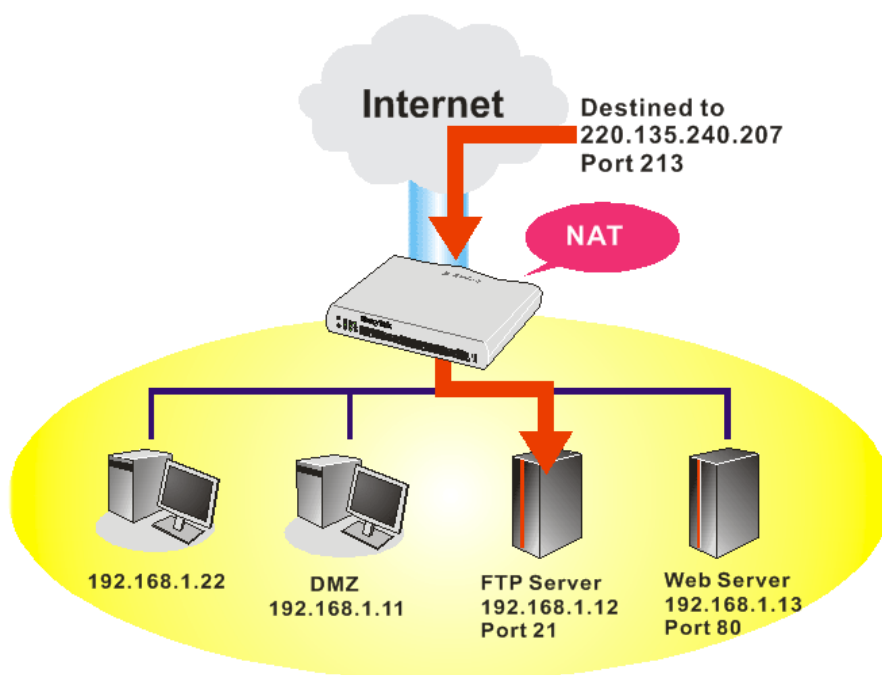
On NAT page, you will see the private IP address defined in RFC-1918. Usually we use the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet for the router. As stated before, the NAT facility can map one or more IP addresses and/or service ports into different specified services. In other words, the NAT function can be achieved by using port mapping methods.

Below shows the menu items for NAT.



### 5.3.1 Port Redirection

Port Redirection is usually set up for server related service inside the local network (LAN), such as web servers, FTP servers, E-mail servers etc. Most of the case, you need a public IP address for each server and this public IP address/domain name are recognized by all users. Since the server is actually located inside the LAN, the network well protected by NAT of the router, and identified by its private IP address/port, the goal of Port Redirection function is to forward all access request with public IP address from external users to the mapping private IP address/port of the server.



The port redirection can only apply to incoming traffic.

To use this function, please go to **NAT** page and choose **Port Redirection** web page. The **Port Redirection Table** provides 20 port-mapping entries for the internal hosts.

[NAT >> Port Redirection](#)

| Port Redirection    |              |             |            | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------|------------|--|
| Index               | Service Name | Public Port | Private IP | Status                                 |
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |              |             |            | x                                      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |              |             |            | x                                      |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Press any number under Index to access into next page for configuring port redirection.

## Index No. 1

|  |        |
|--|--------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable |        |
| Mode                                       | Range  |
| Service Name                               | Single |
| Protocol                                   | ---    |
| WAN IP                                     | 1.All  |
| Public Port                                | 0 -    |
| Private IP                                 | -      |
| Private Port                               | 0      |

**Note:** In "Range" Mode the End IP will be calculated automatically once the Public Port and Start IP have been entered.

OK Clear Cancel

**Enable**

Check this box to enable such port redirection setting.

**Mode**

Two options (Single and Range) are provided here for you to choose. To set a range for the specific service, select **Range**. In Range mode, if the public port (start port and end port) and the starting IP of private IP had been entered, the system will calculate and display the ending IP of private IP automatically.

**Service Name**

Enter the description of the specific network service.

**Protocol**

Select the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).

**WAN IP**

Select the WAN IP used for port redirection. There are eight WAN IP alias that can be selected and used for port redirection. The default setting is **All** which means all the incoming data from any port will be redirected to specified range of IP address and port.

**Public Port**

Specify which port can be redirected to the specified **Private IP and Port** of the internal host. If you choose **Range** as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Simply type the required number on the first box. The second one will be assigned automatically later.

**Private IP**

Specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service. If you choose **Range** as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type a complete IP address in the first box (as the starting point) and the fourth digits in the second box (as the end point).

**Private Port**

Specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host.

**Active**

Check this box to activate the port-mapping entry you have defined.

Note that the router has its own built-in services (servers) such as Telnet, HTTP and FTP etc. Since the common port numbers of these services (servers) are all the same, you may need to reset the router in order to avoid confliction.

For example, the built-in web configurator in the router is with default port 80, which may conflict with the web server in the local network, http://192.168.1.13:80. Therefore, you need

to **change the router's http port to any one other than the default port 80** to avoid conflict, such as 8080. This can be set in the **System Maintenance >>Management Setup**. You then will access the admin screen of by suffixing the IP address with 8080, e.g., http://192.168.1.1:8080 instead of port 80.

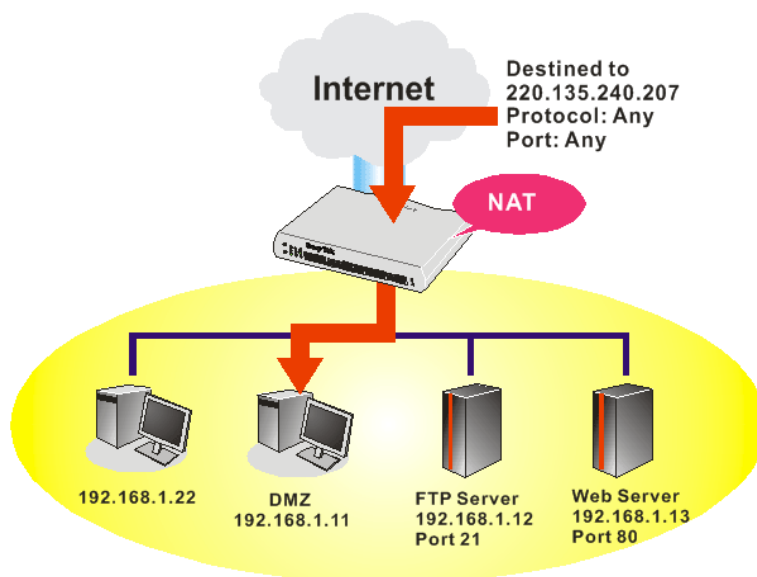
[System Maintenance >> Management](#)

**Management Setup**

| <p><b>Management Access Control</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet</p> | <p><b>Management Port Setup</b></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports</p> <p>Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23)</p> <p>HTTP Port <input type="text" value="80"/> (Default: 80)</p> <p>HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443)</p> <p>FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21)</p> <p>SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22)</p> |                      |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |  |
|--|---|----------------------|-------------|---|----------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------|----------------------|--|
| <p><b>Access List</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List</th> <th>IP</th> <th>Subnet Mask</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>  | List  | IP                   | Subnet Mask | 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <p><b>SNMP Setup</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMP Agent</p> <p>Get Community <input type="text" value="public"/></p> <p>Set Community <input type="text" value="private"/></p> <p>Manager Host IP <input type="text"/></p> <p>Trap Community <input type="text" value="public"/></p> <p>Notification Host IP <input type="text"/></p> <p>Trap Timeout <input type="text" value="10"/> seconds</p> |
| List   | IP  | Subnet Mask          |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |  |
| 1  | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |  |
| 2  | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |  |
| 3  | <input type="text"/>  | <input type="text"/> |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |  |

### 5.3.2 DMZ Host

As mentioned above, **Port Redirection** can redirect incoming TCP/UDP or other traffic on particular ports to the specific private IP address/port of host in the LAN. However, other IP protocols, for example Protocols 50 (ESP) and 51 (AH), do not travel on a fixed port. Vigor router provides a facility **DMZ Host** that maps ALL unsolicited data on any protocol to a single host in the LAN. Regular web surfing and other such Internet activities from other clients will continue to work without inappropriate interruption. **DMZ Host** allows a defined internal user to be totally exposed to the Internet, which usually helps some special applications such as Netmeeting or Internet Games etc.



The inherent security properties of NAT are somewhat bypassed if you set up DMZ host. We suggest you to add additional filter rules or a secondary firewall.

Click **DMZ Host** to open the following page:

**NAT >> DMZ Host Setup**

**DMZ Host Setup**

**WAN 1**

None

**Private IP**

**MAC Address of the True IP DMZ Host**

**Note:** When a True-IP DMZ host is turned on, it will force the router's WAN connection to be always on.

---

**WAN 2**

**Enable** ☐

**Private IP**

If you previously have set up **WAN Alias** for **PPPoE/PPPoA** or **MPoA** mode, you will find them in **Aux. WAN IP** for your selection.

**NAT >> DMZ Host Setup**

**DMZ Host Setup**

**WAN 1**

| Index | Enable                   | Aux. WAN IP  | Private IP           |  |
|-------|--------------------------|--------------|----------------------|--|
| 1.    | <input type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.1.88 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Choose PC"/> |

---

**WAN 2**

**Enable** ☐

**Private IP**

**Enable**

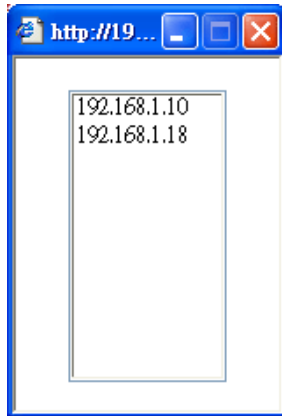
Check to enable the DMZ Host function.

**Private IP**

Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.

**Choose PC**

Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.



When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the following screen. Click **OK** to save the setting.

[NAT >> DMZ Host Setup](#)

#### DMZ Host Setup

| WAN 1 |                                     |              |              |                           |
|-------|-------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| Index | Enable                              | Aux. WAN IP  | Private IP   |                           |
| 1.    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 192.168.1.88 | 192.168.1.10 | <a href="#">Choose PC</a> |

| WAN 2 |                          |  |            |                           |
|-------|--------------------------|--|------------|---------------------------|
|       | Enable                   |  | Private IP |                           |
|       | <input type="checkbox"/> |  |            | <a href="#">Choose PC</a> |

[OK](#)
[Clear](#)

### 5.3.3 Open Ports

**Open Ports** allows you to open a range of ports for the traffic of special applications. Common application of Open Ports includes P2P application (e.g., BT, KaZaA, Gnutella, WinMX, eMule and others), Internet Camera etc. Ensure that you keep the application involved up-to-date to avoid falling victim to any security exploits.

Click **Open Ports** to open the following page:

[NAT >> Open Ports](#)

#### Open Ports Setup

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index               | Comment | WAN Interface | Local IP Address | Status |
|---------------------|---------|---------------|------------------|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |         |               |                  | x      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |         |               |                  | x      |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

#### Index

Indicate the relative number for the particular entry that you want to offer service in a local host. You should click the appropriate index number to edit or clear the corresponding

entry.

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Comment</b>          | Specify the name for the defined network service.   |
| <b>WAN Interface</b>    | Display the WAN interface for the entry.  |
| <b>Local IP Address</b> | Display the private IP address of the local host offering the service.  |
| <b>Status</b>           | Display the state for the corresponding entry. X or V is to represent the <b>Inactive</b> or <b>Active</b> state. |

To add or edit port settings, click one index number on the page. The index entry setup page will pop up. In each index entry, you can specify **10** port ranges for diverse services.

[NAT >> Open Ports >> Edit Open Ports](#)

**Index No. 1**

☒ Enable Open Ports

Comment

P2P

WAN Interface

WAN1

Local Computer

192.168.1.10

Choose PC

|    | Protocol | Start Port | End Port |     | Protocol | Start Port | End Port |
|----|----------|------------|----------|-----|----------|------------|----------|
| 1. | TCP      | 4500       | 4700     | 6.  | ----     | 0          | 0        |
| 2. | TCP      | 4500       | 4700     | 7.  | ----     | 0          | 0        |
| 3. | ----     | 0          | 0        | 8.  | ----     | 0          | 0        |
| 4. | ----     | 0          | 0        | 9.  | ----     | 0          | 0        |
| 5. | ----     | 0          | 0        | 10. | ----     | 0          | 0        |

OK

Clear

Cancel

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Enable Open Ports</b> | Check to enable this entry.  |
| <b>Comment</b>           | Make a name for the defined network application/service.   |
| <b>WAN Interface</b>     | Specify the WAN interface that will be used for this entry.  |
| <b>Local Computer</b>    | Enter the private IP address of the local host or click <b>Choose PC</b> to select one.  |
| <b>Choose PC</b>         | Click this button and, subsequently, a window having a list of private IP addresses of local hosts will automatically pop up. Select the appropriate IP address of the local host in the list. |
| <b>Protocol</b>          | Specify the transport layer protocol. It could be <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , or <b>----</b> (none) for selection.   |
| <b>Start Port</b>        | Specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host.   |
| <b>End Port</b>          | Specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host.   |



## 5.4 Firewall

### 5.4.1 Basics for Firewall

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet. Furthermore, it can filter out specific packets that trigger the router to build an unwanted outgoing connection.

#### Firewall Facilities

The users on the LAN are provided with secured protection by the following firewall facilities:

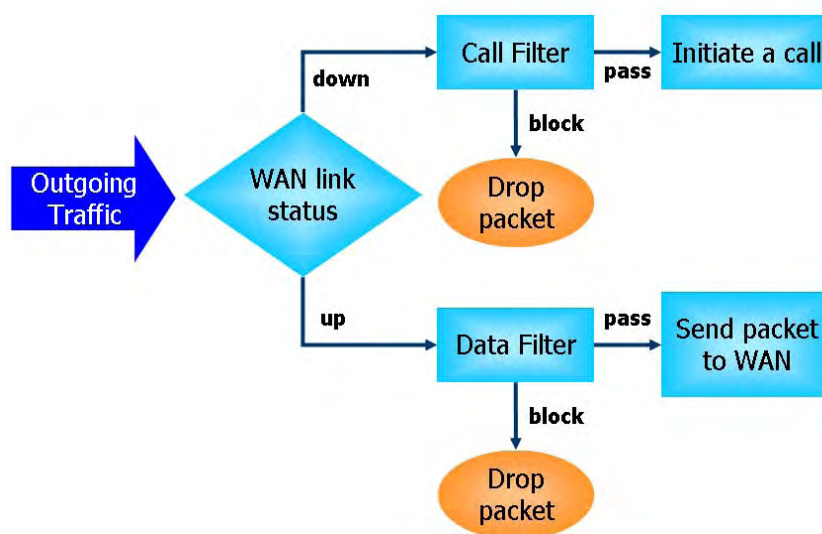
- User-configurable IP filter (Call Filter/ Data Filter).
- Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI): tracks packets and denies unsolicited incoming data
- Selectable Denial of Service (DoS) /Distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks protection

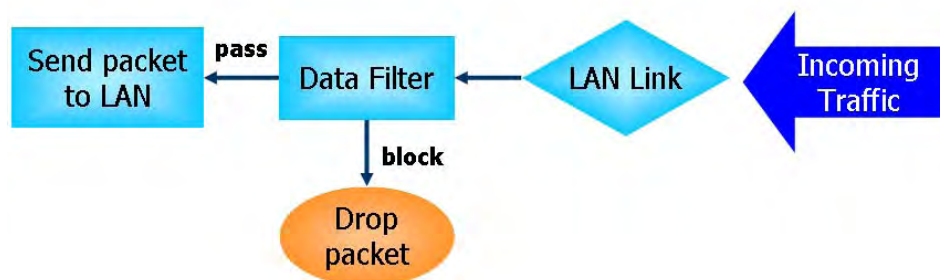
#### IP Filters

Depending on whether there is an existing Internet connection, or in other words “the WAN link status is up or down”, the IP filter architecture categorizes traffic into two: **Call Filter** and **Data Filter**.

- **Call Filter** - When there is no existing Internet connection, **Call Filter** is applied to all traffic, all of which should be outgoing. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass. Then the router shall “**initiate a call**” to build the Internet connection and send the packet to Internet.
- **Data Filter** - When there is an existing Internet connection, **Data Filter** is applied to incoming and outgoing traffic. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass the router.

The following illustrations are flow charts explaining how router will treat incoming traffic and outgoing traffic respectively.





## Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI)

Stateful inspection is a firewall architecture that works at the network layer. Unlike legacy static packet filtering, which examines a packet based on the information in its header, stateful inspection builds up a state machine to track each connection traversing all interfaces of the firewall and makes sure they are valid. The stateful firewall of Vigor router not just examine the header information also monitor the state of the connection.

## Denial of Service (DoS) Defense

The **DoS Defense** functionality helps you to detect and mitigate the DoS attack. The attacks are usually categorized into two types, the flooding-type attacks and the vulnerability attacks. The flooding-type attacks will attempt to exhaust all your system's resource while the vulnerability attacks will try to paralyze the system by offending the vulnerabilities of the protocol or operation system.

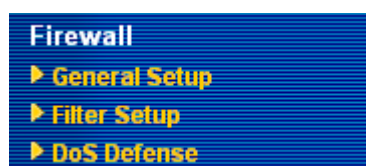
The **DoS Defense** function enables the Vigor router to inspect every incoming packet based on the attack signature database. Any malicious packet that might duplicate itself to paralyze the host in the secure LAN will be strictly blocked and a Syslog message will be sent as warning, if you set up Syslog server.

Also the Vigor router monitors the traffic. Any abnormal traffic flow violating the pre-defined parameter, such as the number of thresholds, is identified as an attack and the Vigor router will activate its defense mechanism to mitigate in a real-time manner.

The below shows the attack types that DoS/DDoS defense function can detect:

- |                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. SYN flood attack  | 8. Trace route           |
| 2. UDP flood attack  | 9. SYN fragment          |
| 3. ICMP flood attack | 10. Fraggle attack       |
| 4. Port Scan attack  | 11. TCP flag scan        |
| 5. IP options        | 12. Tear drop attack     |
| 6. Land attack       | 13. Ping of Death attack |
| 7. Smurf attack      | 14. ICMP fragment        |
|                      | 15. Unknown protocol     |

Below shows the menu items for Firewall.



## 5.4.2 General Setup

General Setup allows you to adjust settings of IP Filter and common options. Here you can enable or disable the **Call Filter** or **Data Filter**. Under some circumstance, your filter set can be linked to work in a serial manner. So here you assign the **Start Filter Set** only. Also you can configure the **Log Flag** settings, and **Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets**.

Click **Firewall** and click **General Setup** to open the general setup page.

[Firewall >> General Setup](#)

**General Setup**

**Call Filter**

☒ Enable  
☐ Disable

Start Filter Set Set#1

**Data Filter**

☒ Enable  
☐ Disable

Start Filter Set Set#2

**Actions for default rule:**

| Application                        | Action/Profile    | Syslog                   |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Filter</b>                      | <span>Pass</span> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <a href="#">IM/P2P Filter</a>      | <span>None</span> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <a href="#">URL Content Filter</a> | <span>None</span> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <a href="#">Web Content Filter</a> | <span>None</span> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Advance Setting Edit

☒ Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets ( for some games, ex. CS )

OK Cancel

### Call Filter

Check **Enable** to activate the Call Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Call Filter.

### Data Filter

Check **Enable** to activate the Data Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Data Filter.

### Action/Profile

Select **Pass** or **Block** for the packets that do not match with the filter rules.

### IM/P2P Filter

Select one of the **IM/P2P Filter Profile** settings (created in **CSM>> IM/P2P Filter**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in **CSM>> IM/P2P Filter Profile** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **IM/P2P Filter Profile** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **System Maintenance>> Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

### URL Content Filter

Select one of the **URL Content Filter Profile** settings (created in **CSM>> URL Content Filter Profile**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in **CSM>> URL Content Filter Profile** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **URL Content Filter** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **System Maintenance>> Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed

information.

## Web Content Filter

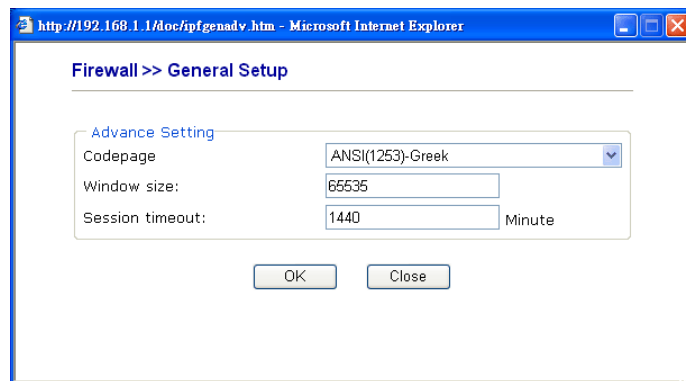
Select one of the **Web Content Filter Profile** settings (created in **CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in **CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **Web Content Filter Profile** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **System Maintenance>> Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

## Syslog

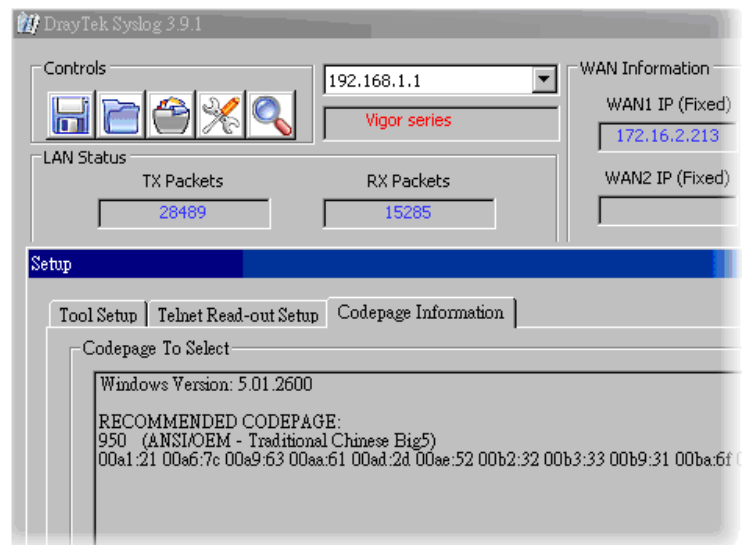
For troubleshooting needs you can specify the filter log and/or CSM log here by checking the box. The log will be displayed on Draytek Syslog window.

## Advance Setting

Click **Edit** to open the following window. However, it is **strongly recommended** to use the default settings here.



**Codepage** - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.



If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup

dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.

**Window size** – It determines the size of TCP protocol (0~65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

**Session timeout**–Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

Some on-line games (for example: Half Life) will use lots of fragmented UDP packets to transfer game data. Instinctively as a secure firewall, Vigor router will reject these fragmented packets to prevent attack unless you enable “**Accept Incoming Fragmented UDP Packets**”. By checking this box, you can play these kinds of on-line games. If security concern is in higher priority, you cannot enable “**Accept Incoming Fragmented UDP Packets**”.

### 5.4.3 Filter Setup

Click **Firewall** and click **Filter Setup** to open the setup page.

[Firewall >> Filter Setup](#)

| Filter Setup       |                     | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |          |
|--------------------|---------------------|--|----------|
| Set                | Comments            | Set                                    | Comments |
| <a href="#">1.</a> | Default Call Filter | <a href="#">7.</a>                     |          |
| <a href="#">2.</a> | Default Data Filter | <a href="#">8.</a>                     |          |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |                     | <a href="#">9.</a>                     |          |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |                     | <a href="#">10.</a>                    |          |
| <a href="#">5.</a> |                     | <a href="#">11.</a>                    |          |
| <a href="#">6.</a> |                     | <a href="#">12.</a>                    |          |

To edit or add a filter, click on the set number to edit the individual set. The following page will be shown. Each filter set contains up to 7 rules. Click on the rule number button to edit each rule. Check **Active** to enable the rule.

[Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set](#)

**Filter Set 1**

**Comments :**

| Filter Rule                      | Active                              | Comments      | Move Up            | Move Down            |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <input type="button" value="1"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Block NetBios |                    | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <input type="button" value="2"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <input type="button" value="3"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <input type="button" value="4"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <input type="button" value="5"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <input type="button" value="6"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | <a href="#">UP</a> | <a href="#">Down</a> |
| <input type="button" value="7"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | <a href="#">UP</a> |                      |

**Next Filter Set**

#### Filter Rule

Click a button numbered (1 ~ 7) to edit the filter rule. Click the button will open Edit Filter Rule web page. For the detailed

information, refer to the following page.

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Active</b>          | Enable or disable the filter rule.   |
| <b>Comment</b>         | Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 23–character long.  |
| <b>Move Up/Down</b>    | Use <b>Up</b> or <b>Down</b> link to move the order of the filter rules.   |
| <b>Next Filter Set</b> | Set the link to the next filter set to be executed after the current filter run. Do not make a loop with many filter sets. |

To edit **Filter Rule**, click the **Filter Rule** index button to enter the **Filter Rule** setup page.

[Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule](#)

**Filter Set 1 Rule 1**

☒ Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments:

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup:

Direction:

Source IP:

Destination IP:

Service Type:

Fragments:

**Application**

Filter:

Branch to Other Filter Set:

[IM/P2P Filter:](#)

[URL Content Filter](#)

[Web Content Filter](#)

**Action/Profile**

**Syslog**

☐

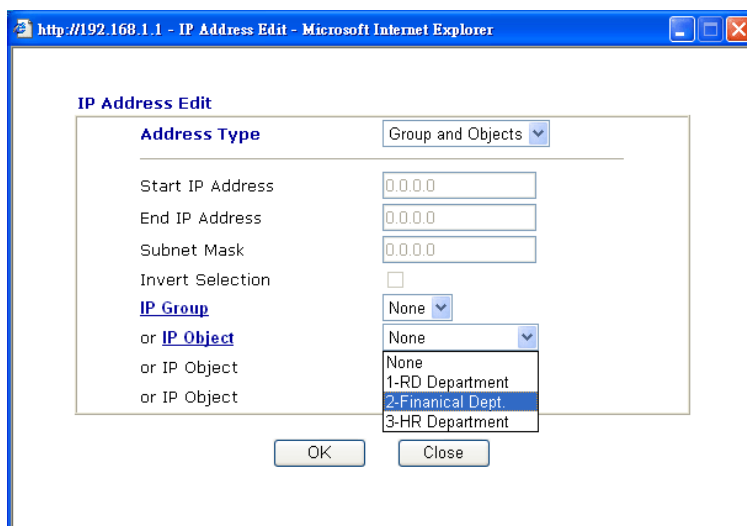
☐

☐

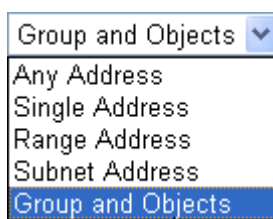
☐

Advance Setting

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Check to enable the Filter Rule</b> | Check this box to enable the filter rule.  |
| <b>Comments</b>                        | Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14-character long.  |
| <b>Index(1-15)</b>                     | Set PCs on LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in <b>Applications &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> setup. The default setting of this filed is blank and the function will always work. |
| <b>Direction</b>                       | Set the direction of packet flow (LAN->WAN/WAN->LAN). It is for <b>Data Filter</b> only. For the <b>Call Filter</b> , this setting is not available since <b>Call Filter</b> is only applied to outgoing traffic.  |
| <b>Source/Destination IP</b>           | Click <b>Edit</b> to access into the following dialog to choose the source/destination IP or IP ranges.  |



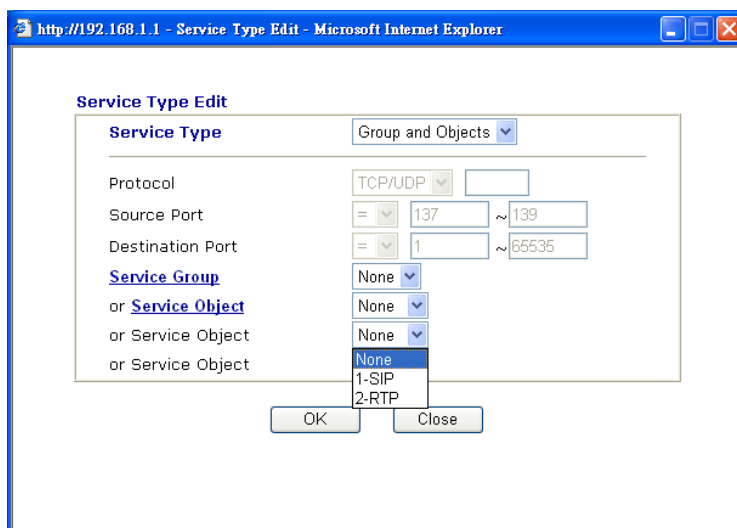
To set the IP address manually, please choose **Any Address/Single Address/Range Address/Subnet Address** as the Address Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the IP range from defined groups or objects, please choose **Group and Objects** as the Address Type.



From the **IP Group** drop down list, choose the one that you want to apply. Or use the **IP Object** drop down list to choose the object that you want.

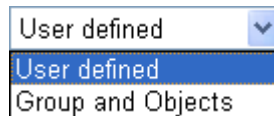
## Service Type

Click **Edit** to access into the following dialog to choose a suitable service type.



To set the service type manually, please choose **User defined** as the Service Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the service type from defined groups or objects, please choose **Group and Objects** as the Service

Type.



**Protocol** - Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to.

**Source/Destination Port -**

(=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type.

(!=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.

(>) – the port number greater than this value is available.

(<) – the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

**Service Group/Object** - Use the drop down list to choose the one that you want.

**Fragments**

Specify the action for fragmented packets. And it is used for **Data Filter** only.

**Don't care** -No action will be taken towards fragmented packets.

**Unfragmented** -Apply the rule to unfragmented packets.

**Fragmented** - Apply the rule to fragmented packets.

**Too Short** - Apply the rule only to packets that are too short to contain a complete header.

**Filter**

Specifies the action to be taken when packets match the rule.

**Block Immediately** - Packets matching the rule will be dropped immediately.

**Pass Immediately** - Packets matching the rule will be passed immediately.

**Block If No Further Match** - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be dropped.

**Pass If No Further Match** - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be passed through.

**Branch to other Filter Set**

If the packet matches the filter rule, the next filter rule will branch to the specified filter set. Select next filter rule to branch from the drop-down menu. Be aware that the router will apply the specified filter rule for ever and will not return to previous filter rule any more.

**IM/P2P Filter**

Select one of the **IM/P2P Filter Profile** settings (created in **CSM>> IM/P2P Filter**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in **CSM>> IM/P2P Filter**



**Profile** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **IM/P2P Filter Profile** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **System Maintenance>> Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

#### URL Content Filter

Select one of the **URL Content Filter** profile settings (created in **CSM>> URL Content Filter**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in **CSM>> URL Content Filter** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **URL Content Filter** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **System Maintenance>> Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

#### Web Content Filter

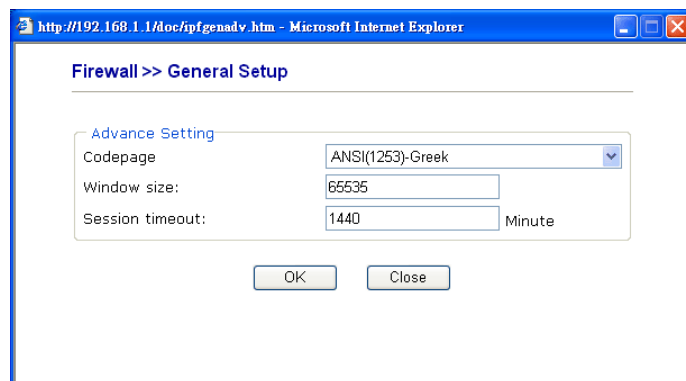
Select one of the **Web Content Filter** profile settings (created in **CSM>> Web Content Filter**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in **CSM>> Web Content Filter** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **Web Content Filter** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section **System Maintenance>> Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

#### SysLog

For troubleshooting needs you can specify the filter log and/or CSM log here. Check the corresponding box to enable the log function. Then, the filter log and/or CSM log will be shown on Draytek Syslog window.

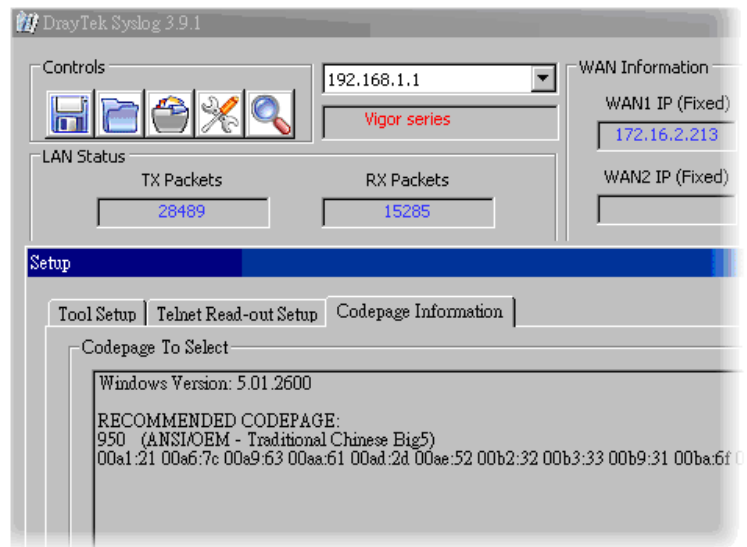
#### Advance Setting

Click **Edit** to open the following window. However, it is **strongly recommended** to use the default settings here.



**Codepage** - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.

If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



**Window size** – It determines the size of TCP protocol (0~65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

**Session timeout**—Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

## Example

As stated before, all the traffic will be separated and arbitrated using one of two IP filters: call filter or data filter. You may preset 12 call filters and data filters in **Filter Setup** and even link them in a serial manner. Each filter set is composed by 7 filter rules, which can be further defined. After that, in **General Setup** you may specify one set for call filter and one set for data filter to execute first.

The image shows a sequence of four screenshots from the DrayTek VigorIPPBX 2820 Series configuration interface, illustrating the setup of IP filters. Red arrows indicate the navigation path between the screens.

**Firewall >> General Setup**

**General Setup**

Call Filter: ☒ Enable ☐ Disable Start Filter Set: Set1

Data Filter: ☒ Enable ☐ Disable Start Filter Set: Set2

Actions for default rule:

| Application        | Action/Profile | Syslog                   |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Filter             | Pass           | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| IM/P2P Filter      | None           | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| URL Content Filter | None           | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Web Content Filter | None           | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Advance Setting: ☒ Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets ( for some games, such as CS )

OK Cancel

**Firewall >> Filter Setup**

**Filter Setup** | Set to Factory Default

| Set | Comments            | Set | Comments |
|-----|---------------------|-----|----------|
| 1.  | Default Call Filter | 7.  |          |
| 2.  | Default Data Filter | 8.  |          |
| 3.  |                     | 9.  |          |
| 4.  |                     | 10. |          |
| 5.  |                     | 11. |          |
| 6.  |                     | 12. |          |

**Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set**

**Filter Set 1**

Comments: Default Call Filter

| Filter Rule | Active                              | Comments      | Move Up | Move Down |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|---------|-----------|
| 1           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Block NetBios |         | Down      |
| 2           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | UP      | Down      |
| 3           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | UP      | Down      |
| 4           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | UP      | Down      |
| 5           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | UP      | Down      |
| 6           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | UP      | Down      |
| 7           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | UP      | Down      |

Next Filter Set

OK Clear Cancel

**Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule**

**Filter Set 1 Rule 1**

☒ Check to enable the Filter Rule

Comments: Block NetBios

Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]

Direction: LAN > WAN

Source IP: Any

Destination IP: Any

Service Type: TCP/UDP, Port: from 137-139 to undefined

Fragments: Don't Care

Application

| Filter                      | Action/Profile    | Syslog                   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| Filter                      | Block Immediately | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Branch to Other Filter Set: | None              | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| IM/P2P Filter:              | None              | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| URL Content Filter          | None              | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Web Content Filter          | None              | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Advance Setting: ☐ Edit

OK Clear Cancel

## 5.4.4 DoS Defense

As a sub-functionality of IP Filter/Firewall, there are 15 types of detect/ defense function in the **DoS Defense** setup. The DoS Defense functionality is disabled for default.

Click **Firewall** and click **DoS Defense** to open the setup page.

Firewall >> DoS defense Setup

**DoS defense Setup**

☒ Enable DoS Defense

|   |           |                                  |               |
|---|-----------|----------------------------------|---------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable SYN flood defense   | Threshold | <input type="text" value="50"/>  | packets / sec |
|   | Timeout   | <input type="text" value="10"/>  | sec           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable UDP flood defense   | Threshold | <input type="text" value="150"/> | packets / sec |
|   | Timeout   | <input type="text" value="10"/>  | sec           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable ICMP flood defense  | Threshold | <input type="text" value="50"/>  | packets / sec |
|   | Timeout   | <input type="text" value="10"/>  | sec           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Port Scan detection | Threshold | <input type="text" value="150"/> | packets / sec |

☐ Block IP options  
☐ Block Land  
☐ Block Smurf  
☐ Block trace route  
☐ Block SYN fragment  
☐ Block Fraggle Attack

☐ Block TCP flag scan  
☐ Block Tear Drop  
☐ Block Ping of Death  
☐ Block ICMP fragment  
☐ Block UnknownProtocol

Enable DoS defense function to prevent the attacks from hacker or crackers.

OK

Clear All

Cancel

### Enable Dos Defense

Check the box to activate the DoS Defense Functionality.

### Enable SYN flood defense

Check the box to activate the SYN flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the TCP SYN packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent TCP SYN packets for a period defined in Timeout. The goal for this is prevent the TCP SYN packets' attempt to exhaust the limited-resource of Vigor router. By default, the threshold and timeout values are set to 50 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.

### Enable UDP flood defense

Check the box to activate the UDP flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the UDP packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent UDP packets for a period defined in Timeout. The default setting for threshold and timeout are 150 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.

### Enable ICMP flood defense

Check the box to activate the ICMP flood defense function. Similar to the UDP flood defense function, once if the Threshold of ICMP packets from Internet has exceeded the defined value, the router will discard the ICMP echo requests coming from the Internet. The default setting for threshold and timeout are 50 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Enable PortScan detection</b> | Port Scan attacks the Vigor router by sending lots of packets to many ports in an attempt to find ignorant services would respond. Check the box to activate the Port Scan detection. Whenever detecting this malicious exploration behavior by monitoring the port-scanning Threshold rate, the Vigor router will send out a warning. By default, the Vigor router sets the threshold as 150 packets per second.   |
| <b>Block IP options</b>          | Check the box to activate the Block IP options function. The Vigor router will ignore any IP packets with IP option field in the datagram header. The reason for limitation is IP option appears to be a vulnerability of the security for the LAN because it will carry significant information, such as security, TCC (closed user group) parameters, a series of Internet addresses, routing messages...etc. An eavesdropper outside might learn the details of your private networks. |
| <b>Block Land</b>                | Check the box to enforce the Vigor router to defense the Land attacks. The Land attack combines the SYN attack technology with IP spoofing. A Land attack occurs when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets with the identical source and destination addresses, as well as the port number to victims.   |
| <b>Block Smurf</b>               | Check the box to activate the Block Smurf function. The Vigor router will ignore any broadcasting ICMP echo request.  |
| <b>Block trace router</b>        | Check the box to enforce the Vigor router not to forward any trace route packets.   |
| <b>Block SYN fragment</b>        | Check the box to activate the Block SYN fragment function. The Vigor router will drop any packets having SYN flag and more fragment bit set.  |
| <b>Block Fraggle Attack</b>      | <p>Check the box to activate the Block fraggle Attack function. Any broadcast UDP packets received from the Internet is blocked.</p> <p>Activating the DoS/DDoS defense functionality might block some legal packets. For example, when you activate the fraggle attack defense, all broadcast UDP packets coming from the Internet are blocked. Therefore, the RIP packets from the Internet might be dropped.</p>   |
| <b>Block TCP flag scan</b>       | Check the box to activate the Block TCP flag scan function. Any TCP packet with anomaly flag setting is dropped. Those scanning activities include <i>no flag scan</i> , <i>FIN without ACK scan</i> , <i>SYN FINscan</i> , <i>Xmas scan</i> and <i>full Xmas scan</i> .  |
| <b>Block Tear Drop</b>           | Check the box to activate the Block Tear Drop function. Many machines may crash when receiving ICMP datagrams (packets) that exceed the maximum length. To avoid this type of attack, the Vigor router is designed to be capable of discarding any fragmented ICMP packets with a length greater than 1024 octets.  |
| <b>Block Ping of Death</b>       | Check the box to activate the Block Ping of Death function. This attack involves the perpetrator sending overlapping packets to the target hosts so that those target hosts will hang once they re-construct the packets. The Vigor routers will  |

block any packets realizing this attacking activity.

### Block ICMP Fragment

Check the box to activate the Block ICMP fragment function. Any ICMP packets with more fragment bit set are dropped.

### Block Unknown Protocol

Check the box to activate the Block Unknown Protocol function. Individual IP packet has a protocol field in the datagram header to indicate the protocol type running over the upper layer. However, the protocol types greater than 100 are reserved and undefined at this time. Therefore, the router should have ability to detect and reject this kind of packets.

### Warning Messages

We provide Syslog function for user to retrieve message from Vigor router. The user, as a Syslog Server, shall receive the report sending from Vigor router which is a Syslog Client.

All the warning messages related to **DoS Defense** will be sent to user and user can review it through Syslog daemon. Look for the keyword **DoS** in the message, followed by a name to indicate what kind of attacks is detected.

[System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert Setup](#)

**SysLog / Mail Alert Setup**

**SysLog Access Setup**

☒ Enable

Server IP Address:

Destination Port:

Enable syslog message:

- ☒ Firewall Log
- ☒ VPN Log
- ☒ User Access Log
- ☒ Call Log
- ☒ WAN Log
- ☒ Router/DSL information

**Mail Alert Setup**

☒ Enable [Send a test e-mail](#)

SMTP Server:

Mail To:

Return-Path:

☐ Authentication

User Name:

Password:

Enable E-Mail Alert:

- ☐ DoS Attack
- ☐ IM-P2P

OK Clear Cancel

**DrayTek Syslog 3.7.0**

Controls:  WAN Status: Gateway IP (Fixed): 172.16.3.4 TX Packets: 343 TX Rate: 3

LAN Status: TX Packets: 4175 RX Packets: 3668 WAN IP (Fixed): 172.16.3.229 RX Packets: 2558 RX Rate: 126

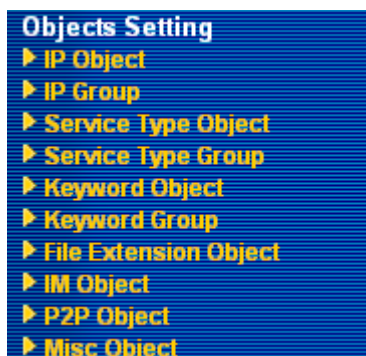
Firewall Log VPN Log User Access Log Call Log WAN Log Others Network Information NetState Traffic Graph

| Time           | Host  | Message  |
|----------------|-------|--|
| Jan 1 00:00:42 | Vigor | DoS syn_flood Block(10s) 192.168.1.115,10605 -> 192.168.1.1,23 PR 6(tcp) len 20 40 -S 394375 |
| Jan 1 00:00:34 | Vigor | DoS icmp_flood Block(10s) 192.168.1.115 -> 192.168.1.1 PR 1 icmp len 20 60 icmp 0/8          |

ADSL Status: Mode: State: Up Speed: Down Speed: SNR Margin: Loop Att:

## 5.5 Objects Settings

For IPs in a range and service ports in a limited range usually will be applied in configuring router's settings, therefore we can define them with **objects** and bind them with **groups** for using conveniently. Later, we can select that object/group that can apply it. For example, all the IPs in the same department can be defined with an IP object (a range of IP address).



### 5.5.1 IP Object

You can set up to 192 sets of IP Objects with different conditions.

[Objects Setting >> IP Object](#)

IP Object Profiles:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index               | Name | Index               | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a> |      |

[<< 1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192 >>](#)

[Next >>](#)

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

Profile Index : 1

|                   |                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| Name:             | RD Department            |
| Interface:        | Any                      |
| Address Type:     | Range Address            |
| Start IP Address: | 192.168.1.64             |
| End IP Address:   | 192.168.1.75             |
| Subnet Mask:      | 0.0.0.0                  |
| Invert Selection: | <input type="checkbox"/> |

OK Clear Cancel

**Name** Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.

**Interface** Choose a proper interface (WAN, LAN or Any).

Interface:

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| Any | ▼ |
| Any |   |
| LAN |   |
| WAN |   |

For example, the **Direction** setting in **Edit Filter Rule** will ask you specify IP or IP range for WAN or LAN or any IP address. If you choose LAN as the **Interface** here, and choose LAN as the direction setting in **Edit Filter Rule**, then all the IP addresses specified with LAN interface will be opened for you to choose in **Edit Filter Rule** page.

**Address Type** Determine the address type for the IP address.

Select **Single Address** if this object contains one IP address only.

Select **Range Address** if this object contains several IPs within a range.

Select **Subnet Address** if this object contains one subnet for IP address.

Select **Any Address** if this object contains any IP address.

**Start IP Address** Type the start IP address for Single Address type.

**End IP Address** Type the end IP address if the Range Address type is selected.

**Subnet Mask** Type the subnet mask if the Subnet Address type is selected.

**Invert Selection** If it is checked, all the IP addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen.



Below is an example of IP objects settings.

## Objects Setting >> IP Object

### IP Object Profiles:

| Index              | Name            |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> | RD Department   |
| <a href="#">2.</a> | Finanical Dept. |
| <a href="#">3.</a> | HR Department   |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |                 |
| <a href="#">5.</a> |                 |

## 5.5.2 IP Group

This page allows you to bind several IP objects into one IP group.

## Objects Setting >> IP Group

### IP Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index               | Name | Index               | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a> |      |

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

Profile Index : 1

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Name:  | <input type="text" value="Administration"/> |
| Interface:   | <input type="button" value="Any"/>          |
| <b>Available IP Objects</b>  | <b>Selected IP Objects</b>                  |
| <div>1-RD Department</div> <div>2-Finanical Dept.</div> <div>3-HR Department</div> | <div>&gt;&gt;</div> <div>&lt;&lt;</div>     |

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Name</b>                 | Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.                                  |
| <b>Interface</b>            | Choose WAN, LAN or Any to display all the available IP objects with the specified interface.      |
| <b>Available IP Objects</b> | All the available IP objects with the specified interface chosen above will be shown in this box. |
| <b>Selected IP Objects</b>  | Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box.                                       |

5.5.3 Service Type Object

You can set up to 96 sets of Service Type Objects with different conditions.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object

Service Type Object Profiles: [Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index               | Name | Index               | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a> |      |

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) >> [Next](#) >>

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.  
Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name

www

Protocol

TCP

6

Source Port

=

1

~

65535

Destination Port

=

70

~

80

OK

Clear

Cancel

**Name** Type a name for this profile.  
**Protocol** Specify the protocol(s) which this profile will apply to.

TCP

Any

ICMP

IGMP

TCP

UDP

TCP/UDP

Other

6

**Source/Destination Port** **Source Port** and the **Destination Port** column are available for TCP/UDP protocol. It can be ignored for other protocols. The filter rule will filter out any port number.

(=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this profile.

(!=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.

(>) – the port number greater than this value is available.

(<) – the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

Below is an example of service type objects settings.

#### Service Type Object Profiles:

| Index              | Name |
|--------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> | SIP  |
| <a href="#">2.</a> | RTP  |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |      |

### 5.5.4 Service Type Group

This page allows you to bind several service types into one group.

[Objects Setting >> Service Type Group](#)

Service Type Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Group               | Name | Group               | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a> |      |

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

## Objects Setting >> Service Type Group Setup

Profile Index : 1

Name:

**Available Service Type Objects**

1-SIP  
2-RTP

**Selected Service Type Objects**


>>

<<

OK

Clear

Cancel

- Name** Type a name for this profile.
- Available Service Type Objects** All the available service objects that you have added on **Objects Setting>>Service Type Object** will be shown in this box.
- Selected Service Type Objects** Click  button to add the selected IP objects in this box.

### 5.5.5 Keyword Object

You can set 200 keyword object profiles for choosing as black /white list in **CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile**.

#### Objects Setting >> Keyword Object

**Keyword Object Profiles:**
[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index               | Name | Index               | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a> |      |

<< [1-32](#) | [33-64](#) | [65-96](#) | [97-128](#) | [129-160](#) | [161-192](#) | [193-200](#) >>
[Next](#) >>

- Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.
- Click the number under Index column for setting in detail.

## Objects Setting >> Keyword Object Setup

### Profile Index : 1

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| Name     | <input type="text"/>                     |
| Contents | <input type="text"/> (Max 63 characters) |

#### Name

Type a name for this profile, e.g., game.

#### Contents

Type the content for such profile. For example, type *gambling* as Contents. When you browse the webpage, the page with gambling information will be watched out and be passed/blocked based on the configuration on Firewall settings.

## 5.5.6 Keyword Group

This page allows you to bind several keyword objects into one group. The keyword groups set here will be chosen as black /white list in **CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile**.

### Objects Setting >> Keyword Group

#### Keyword Group Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index               | Name | Index               | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a> |      |

#### Set to Factory Default

Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for setting in detail.

Profile Index : 1

Name:

Available Keyword Objects

1-Keyword-1  
2-keyword-2

Selected Keyword Objects(Max 16 Objects)

>>

<<

OK

Clear

Cancel


### Name

Type a name for this group.

### Available Keyword Objects

You can gather keyword objects from Keyword Object page within one keyword group. All the available Keyword objects that you have created will be shown in this box.

### Selected Keyword Objects

Click  button to add the selected Keyword objects in this box.

## 5.5.7 File Extension Object

This page allows you to set eight profiles which will be applied in **CSM>>URL Content Filter**. All the files with the extension names specified in these profiles will be processed according to the chosen action.

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object

| File Extension Object Profiles: |      |                    |      | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |  |
|---------------------------------|------|--------------------|------|--|--|
| Profile                         | Name | Profile            | Name |  |  |
| <a href="#">1.</a>              |      | <a href="#">5.</a> |      |  |  |
| <a href="#">2.</a>              |      | <a href="#">6.</a> |      |  |  |
| <a href="#">3.</a>              |      | <a href="#">7.</a> |      |  |  |
| <a href="#">4.</a>              |      | <a href="#">8.</a> |      |  |  |

### Set to Factory Default

Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details.

## Objects Setting >> File Extension Object Setup

Profile Index: 1      Profile Name:

| Categories  | File Extensions  |
|---|--|
| <b>Image</b><br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>       | <input type="checkbox"/> .bmp <input type="checkbox"/> .dib <input type="checkbox"/> .gif <input type="checkbox"/> .jpeg <input type="checkbox"/> .jpg <input type="checkbox"/> .jpg2 <input type="checkbox"/> .jp2<br><input type="checkbox"/> .pct <input type="checkbox"/> .pcx <input type="checkbox"/> .pic <input type="checkbox"/> .pict <input type="checkbox"/> .png <input type="checkbox"/> .tif <input type="checkbox"/> .tiff |
| <b>Video</b><br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>       | <input type="checkbox"/> .asf <input type="checkbox"/> .avi <input type="checkbox"/> .mov <input type="checkbox"/> .mpe <input type="checkbox"/> .mpeg <input type="checkbox"/> .mpg <input type="checkbox"/> .mp4<br><input type="checkbox"/> .qt <input type="checkbox"/> .rm <input type="checkbox"/> .wmv <input type="checkbox"/> .3gp <input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp <input type="checkbox"/> .3gpp2 <input type="checkbox"/> .3g2   |
| <b>Audio</b><br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>       | <input type="checkbox"/> .aac <input type="checkbox"/> .aiff <input type="checkbox"/> .au <input type="checkbox"/> .mp3 <input type="checkbox"/> .m4a <input type="checkbox"/> .m4p <input type="checkbox"/> .ogg<br><input type="checkbox"/> .ra <input type="checkbox"/> .ram <input type="checkbox"/> .vox <input type="checkbox"/> .wav <input type="checkbox"/> .wma  |
| <b>Java</b><br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>        | <input type="checkbox"/> .class <input type="checkbox"/> .jad <input type="checkbox"/> .jar <input type="checkbox"/> .jav <input type="checkbox"/> .java <input type="checkbox"/> .jcm <input type="checkbox"/> .js<br><input type="checkbox"/> .jse <input type="checkbox"/> .jsp <input type="checkbox"/> .jtk   |
| <b>ActiveX</b><br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>     | <input type="checkbox"/> .alx <input type="checkbox"/> .apb <input type="checkbox"/> .axs <input type="checkbox"/> .ocx <input type="checkbox"/> .olb <input type="checkbox"/> .ole <input type="checkbox"/> .tlb<br><input type="checkbox"/> .viv <input type="checkbox"/> .vrn   |
| <b>Compression</b><br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> .ace <input type="checkbox"/> .arj <input type="checkbox"/> .bzip2 <input type="checkbox"/> .bz2 <input type="checkbox"/> .cab <input type="checkbox"/> .gz <input type="checkbox"/> .gzip<br><input type="checkbox"/> .rar <input type="checkbox"/> .sit <input type="checkbox"/> .zip   |
| <b>Execution</b><br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/> .bas <input type="checkbox"/> .bat <input type="checkbox"/> .com <input type="checkbox"/> .exe <input type="checkbox"/> .inf <input type="checkbox"/> .pif <input type="checkbox"/> .reg<br><input type="checkbox"/> .scr   |

**Profile Name**      Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the items of file extension that will be processed in the router. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.



## 5.5.8 IM Object

This page allows you to set 32 profiles for Instant Messenger. These profiles will be applied in **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** for filtering.

[Objects Setting >> IM Object Profile](#)

| IM Profile Table:   |      | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |      |
|---------------------|------|--|------|
| Profile             | Name | Profile                                | Name |
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a>                    |      |

**Set to Factory Default**      Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details. There are several types of Instant Messenger (IM) provided here for you to choose to disallow people using. Simple check the box (es) and then click **OK**. Later, in the **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** page, you can use **IM Object** drop down list to choose the proper profile configured here as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

## Objects Setting >> IM Object Profile

### Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

### Check for Disallow:

| Advanced Management    |                          |                          |                          |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Activity / Application | MSN                      | YahooIM                  | AIM(<=5.9)               | ICQ                      |
| Login                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Message                | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| File Transfer          | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Game                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Video                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Voice                  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Conference             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Other Activities       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

| IM Application                      |                                 |                                     |  | VoIP                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> AIM6       | <input type="checkbox"/> QQ     | <input type="checkbox"/> iChat      | <input type="checkbox"/> Jabber/GoogleTalk | <input type="checkbox"/> Skype |
| <input type="checkbox"/> GoogleChat | <input type="checkbox"/> XFire  | <input type="checkbox"/> GaduGadu   | <input type="checkbox"/> Paltalk           | <input type="checkbox"/> SIP   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Qnext      | <input type="checkbox"/> Meetro | <input type="checkbox"/> POCO/PP365 | <input type="checkbox"/> AresChat          |                                |

| Web IM ( * = more than one address) |                              |                                  |                            |                         |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> WebIM URLs | <a href="#">eMessenger</a>   | <a href="#">WebMSN</a>           | <a href="#">meebo*</a>     | <a href="#">eBuddy</a>  | <a href="#">ILoveIM*</a>     |
|                                     | <a href="#">ICQ Java*</a>    | <a href="#">ICQ Flash*</a>       | <a href="#">goowy*</a>     | <a href="#">IMhaha*</a> | <a href="#">getMessenger</a> |
|                                     | <a href="#">IMUnitive*</a>   | <a href="#">Wabler*</a>          | <a href="#">mabber*</a>    | <a href="#">MSN2GO*</a> | <a href="#">KoolIM</a>       |
|                                     | <a href="#">MessengerFX*</a> | <a href="#">MessengerAdictos</a> | <a href="#">WebYahooIM</a> |                         |                              |

### Profile Name

Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the items that not allowed to be used in the host. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

## 5.5.9 P2P Object

This page allows you to set 32 profiles for peer-to-peer application. These profiles will be applied in **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** for filtering.

[Objects Setting >> P2P Object Profile](#)

| P2P Profile Table:  |      | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |      |
|---------------------|------|--|------|
| Profile             | Name | Profile                                | Name |
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a>                    |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a>                    |      |

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details. There are several items for P2P protocols provided here for you to choose to disallow people using. Simple check the box (es) and then click **OK**. Later, in the **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** page, you can use **P2P Object** drop down list to choose the proper profile configured here as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

[Objects Setting >> P2P Object Profile](#)

**Profile Index: 1**

Profile Name:

**Check for Disallow:**

| Protocol                            | Applications                        |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> SoulSeek   | SoulSeek                            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> eDonkey    | eDonkey, eMule, Shareaza            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> FastTrack  | Kazaa, BearShare, iMesh             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> OpenFT     | KCeasy, FilePipe                    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Gnutella   | BearShare, Limewire, Shareaza, Foxy |
| <input type="checkbox"/> OpenNap    | Lopster, XNap, WinLop               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> BitTorrent | BitTorrent, BitSpirit, BitComet     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Winny      | Winny, WinMX, Share                 |

| Other P2P Applications           |                                |                                 |                               |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Xunlei  | <input type="checkbox"/> Vagaa | <input type="checkbox"/> PP365  | <input type="checkbox"/> POCO |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Clubbox | <input type="checkbox"/> Ares  | <input type="checkbox"/> ezPeer |                               |

**Profile Name**                      Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the protocols that not allowed to be used in the host. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

## 5.5.10 Misc Object

This page allows you to set 32 profiles for miscellaneous applications. These profiles will be applied in **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** for filtering.

[Objects Setting >> Misc Object Profile](#)

Misc Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Profile             | Name | Profile             | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a> |      |

**Set to Factory Default**              Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details. Applications for tunneling and streaming are listed in the page for you to choose to disallow people using. Simple check the box(es) and then click **OK**. Later, in the **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** page, you can use **Misc Object** drop down list to choose the proper profile configured here as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

Check for Disallow:

| Tunneling                            |                                      |                                     |  |                                  |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Socks4/5    | <input type="checkbox"/> PGPNet      | <input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Proxy | <input type="checkbox"/> TOR             | <input type="checkbox"/> VNN     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SoftEther   | <input type="checkbox"/> FolderShare | <input type="checkbox"/> MS TEREDO  | <input type="checkbox"/> Wujie/UltraSurf | <input type="checkbox"/> Hamachi |
| <input type="checkbox"/> HTTP Tunnel | <input type="checkbox"/> Ping Tunnel | <input type="checkbox"/> TinyVPN    |  |                                  |

| Streaming                          |                                  |                                  |                                     |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> MMS       | <input type="checkbox"/> RTSP    | <input type="checkbox"/> TVAnts  | <input type="checkbox"/> PPStream   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> PPlive    | <input type="checkbox"/> FeiDian | <input type="checkbox"/> UUSee   | <input type="checkbox"/> NSPlayer   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> PCAST     | <input type="checkbox"/> TVKoo   | <input type="checkbox"/> SopCast | <input type="checkbox"/> UDLiveX    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> TVUPlayer | <input type="checkbox"/> MySee   | <input type="checkbox"/> Joost   | <input type="checkbox"/> FlashVideo |

| Remote Control                     |                                     |                                      |   |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> VNC       | <input type="checkbox"/> Radmin     | <input type="checkbox"/> SpyAnywhere | <input type="checkbox"/> ShowMyPC         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> LogMeIn   | <input type="checkbox"/> TeamViewer | <input type="checkbox"/> Gogrok      | <input type="checkbox"/> RemoteControlPro |
| <input type="checkbox"/> CrossLoop | <input type="checkbox"/> WindowsRDP | <input type="checkbox"/> pcAnywhere  |   |

**Profile Name** Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the protocols that not allowed to be used in the host. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

## 5.6 CSM

**CSM** is an abbreviation of **Content Security Management** which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

### IM/P2P Filter

As the popularity of all kinds of instant messenger application arises, communication cannot become much easier. Nevertheless, while some industry may leverage this as a great tool to connect with their customers, some industry may take reserve attitude in order to reduce employee misuse during office hour or prevent unknown security leak. It is similar situation for corporation towards peer-to-peer applications since file-sharing can be convenient but insecure at the same time. To address these needs, we provide CSM functionality.

### URL Content Filter

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it

checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

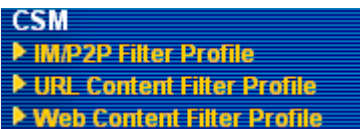
On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

## Web Content Filter

We all know that the content on the Internet just like other types of media may be inappropriate sometimes. As a responsible parent or employer, you should protect those in your trust against the hazards. With Web filtering service of the Vigor router, you can protect your business from common primary threats, such as productivity, legal liability, network and security threats. For parents, you can protect your children from viewing adult websites or chat rooms.

Once you have activated your Web Filtering service in Vigor router and chosen the categories of website you wish to restrict, each URL address requested (e.g. www.bbc.co.uk) will be checked against our server database. This database is updated as frequent as daily by a global team of Internet researchers. The server will look up the URL and return a category to your router. Your Vigor router will then decide whether to allow access to this site according to the categories you have selected. Please note that this action will not introduce any delay in your Web surfing because each of multiple load balanced database servers can handle millions of requests for categorization.

**Note:** The priority of URL Content Filter is higher than Web Content Filter.



## 5.6.1 IM/P2P Filter Profile

You can define policy profiles for different policy of IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer) application. Such profile will be used in **Firewall>>General Setup** and **Firewall>>Filter Setup** pages.

[CSM >> IM/P2P Filter Profile](#)

IM/P2P Filter Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Profile             | Name | Profile             | Name |
|---------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |      | <a href="#">17.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |      | <a href="#">18.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |      | <a href="#">19.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |      | <a href="#">20.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |      | <a href="#">21.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |      | <a href="#">22.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |      | <a href="#">23.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |      | <a href="#">24.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |      | <a href="#">25.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |      | <a href="#">26.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> |      | <a href="#">27.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> |      | <a href="#">28.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> |      | <a href="#">29.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> |      | <a href="#">30.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> |      | <a href="#">31.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> |      | <a href="#">32.</a> |      |

**Set to Factory Default** Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

[CSM >> IM/P2P Filter Profile](#)

Profile Index: 1

Profile Name:

|                             |        |
|-----------------------------|--------|
| <a href="#">IM Object</a>   | None ▼ |
| <a href="#">P2P Object</a>  | None ▼ |
| <a href="#">Misc Object</a> | None ▼ |

OK

Cancel

**Profile Name** Type a name for the CSM profile.

Each profile can contain three objects settings, IM Object, P2P Object and Misc Object. Such profile can be applied in the **Firewall>>General Setup** and **Firewall>>Filter Setup** pages as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

## 5.6.2 URL Content Filter Profile

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide

a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

For example, if you add key words such as "sex", Vigor router will limit web access to web sites or web pages such as "www.sex.com", "www.backdoor.net/images/sex/p\_386.html". Or you may simply specify the full or partial URL such as "www.sex.com" or "sex.com".

Also the Vigor router will discard any request that tries to retrieve the malicious code.

Click **CSM** and click **URL Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page.

[CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile](#)

URL Content Filter Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Profile            | Name | Profile            | Name |
|--------------------|------|--------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> |      | <a href="#">5.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a> |      | <a href="#">6.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |      | <a href="#">7.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |      | <a href="#">8.</a> |      |

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

```
<body><center><br><p>The requested Web page has been blocked by URL Content  
Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further  
information.</center></body>
```

OK

You can set eight profiles as URL content filter. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page.



## Profile Index: 1

|  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| Profile Name: <input type="text"/>   |                        |
| Priority: <span>Both : Pass</span>   | Log: <span>None</span> |
| <b>1.URL Access Control</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable URL Access Control <input type="checkbox"/> Prevent web access from IP address<br>Action: <span>Pass</span> Group/Object Selections: <input type="text"/> <span>Edit</span> |                        |
| <b>2.Web Feature</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable Restrict Web Feature<br>Action: <span>Pass</span> <input type="checkbox"/> Cookie <input type="checkbox"/> Proxy <b>File Extension Profile:</b> <span>None</span>                  |                        |
| <span>OK</span> <span>Clear</span> <span>Cancel</span>   |                        |

**Profile Name**

Type the name for such profile.

**Priority**

It determines the action that this router will apply.

**Both: Pass** – The router will let all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below passing through. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.

**Both: Block** –The router will block all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive.

**Either: URL Access Control First** – When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for URL first, then Web feature second.

**Either: Web Feature First** –When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for web feature first, then URL second.

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Both : Pass                       | ▼ |
| Both : Pass                       |   |
| Both : Block                      |   |
| Either : URL Access Control First |   |
| Either : Web Feature First        |   |

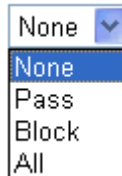
## Log

**None** – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.

**Pass** – Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.

**Block** – Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.

**All** – All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.

A dropdown menu with a blue arrow icon on the right. The menu is open, showing four options: 'None' (highlighted in blue), 'Pass', 'Block', and 'All'.

## URL Access Control

**Enable URL Access Control** - Check the box to activate URL Access Control. Note that the priority for **URL Access Control** is higher than **Restrict Web Feature**. If the web content match the setting set in URL Access Control, the router will execute the action specified in this field and ignore the action specified under Restrict Web Feature.


**Prevent web access from IP address** - Check the box to deny any web surfing activity using IP address, such as http://202.6.5.2. The reason for this is to prevent someone dodges the URL Access Control. You must clear your browser cache first so that the URL content filtering facility operates properly on a web page that you visited before.

**Action** – This setting is available only when **Either : URL Access Control First** or **Either : Web Feature First** is selected. **Pass** - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

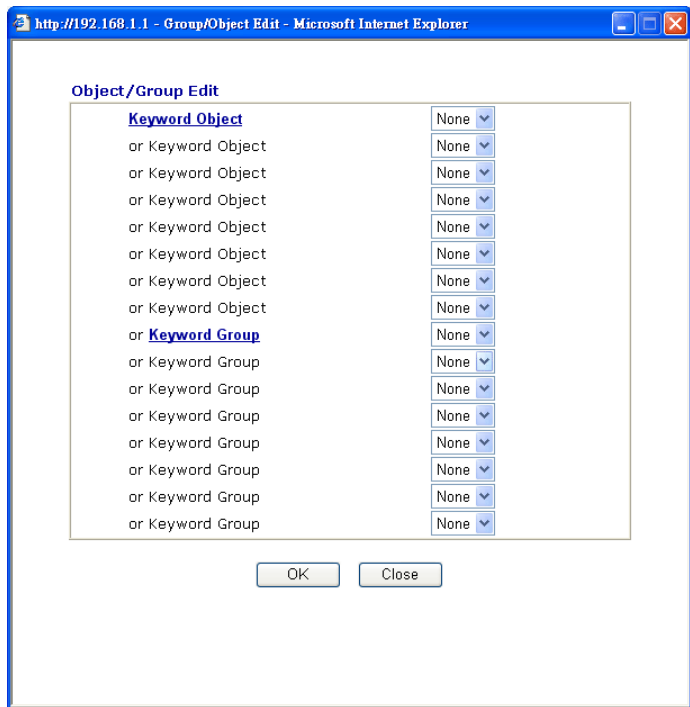
**Block** - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the keyword set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

Action:

A dropdown menu with a blue arrow icon on the right. The menu is open, showing three options: 'Block' (highlighted in blue), 'Pass', and 'Block'.

**Group/Object Selections** – The Vigor router provides several frames for users to define keywords and each frame supports multiple keywords. The keyword could be a noun, a partial noun, or a complete URL string. Multiple keywords within a frame are separated by space, comma, or semicolon. In addition, the maximal length of each frame is 32-character long. After specifying keywords, the Vigor router will decline the connection request to the website whose URL string matched to any user-defined keyword. It should be noticed that the more simplified the blocking keyword list, the more efficiently the Vigor router perform.



## Web Feature

**Enable Restrict Web Feature** - Check this box to make the keyword being blocked or passed.

**Action** - This setting is available only when **Either : URL Access Control First** or **Either : Web Feature First** is selected. **Pass** allows accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

**Pass** - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

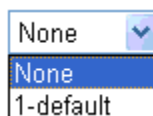
**Block** - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

**Cookie** - Check the box to filter out the cookie transmission from inside to outside world to protect the local user's privacy.

**Proxy** - Check the box to reject any proxy transmission. To control efficiently the limited-bandwidth usage, it will be of great value to provide the blocking mechanism that filters out the multimedia files downloading from web pages.

**File Extension Profile** – Choose one of the profiles that you configured in **Object Setting>> File Extension Objects** previously for passing or blocking the file downloading.



### 5.6.3 Web Content Filter Profile

We all know that the content on the Internet just like other types of media may be inappropriate sometimes. As a responsible parent or employer, you should protect those in your trust against the hazards. With Web filtering service of the Vigor router, you can protect your business from common primary threats, such as productivity, legal liability, network and security threats. For parents, you can protect your children from viewing adult websites or chat rooms.

Once you have activated your Web Filtering service in Vigor router and chosen the categories of website you wish to restrict, each URL address requested (e.g. www.bbc.co.uk) will be checked against our server database. This database is updated as frequent as daily by a global team of Internet researchers. The server will look up the URL and return a category to your router. Your Vigor router will then decide whether to allow access to this site according to the categories you have selected. Please note that this action will not introduce any delay in your Web surfing because each of multiple load balanced database servers can handle millions of requests for categorization.

Click **CSM** and click **Web Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page.

[CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile](#)

Web Content Filter Profile Table:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Profile            | Name | Profile            | Name |
|--------------------|------|--------------------|------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> |      | <a href="#">5.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">2.</a> |      | <a href="#">6.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |      | <a href="#">7.</a> |      |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |      | <a href="#">8.</a> |      |

Web Content Filter Setup

Select a server:

[Test a site to verify whether it is categorized](#)

Administration Message (Max 255 characters)

```
<body><center><br><p>The requested Web page has been blocked by Web Content  
Filter.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further  
information.</center></body>
```

OK

You can set eight profiles as Web content filter. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page.

## Profile Index : 1

Profile Name: 

|   |  |   |   |
|---|--|---|---|
| <b>Action :</b> <span>Block ▾</span>  |  | <b>log :</b> <span>Block ▾</span>   |   |
| <b>Groups</b>   | <b>Categories</b>  |   |   |
| Child Protection<br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> Chat<br><input type="checkbox"/> Gambling<br><input type="checkbox"/> Sex   | <input type="checkbox"/> Criminal<br><input type="checkbox"/> Hacking<br><input type="checkbox"/> Violence  | <input type="checkbox"/> Drugs/Alcohol<br><input type="checkbox"/> Hate speech<br><input type="checkbox"/> Weapons  |
| Leisure<br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>          | <input type="checkbox"/> Advertisements<br><input type="checkbox"/> Games<br><input type="checkbox"/> Hobbies<br><input type="checkbox"/> Personals<br><input type="checkbox"/> Sports | <input type="checkbox"/> Entertainment<br><input type="checkbox"/> Glamour<br><input type="checkbox"/> Lifestyle<br><input type="checkbox"/> Photo Searches<br><input type="checkbox"/> Streaming Media | <input type="checkbox"/> Food<br><input type="checkbox"/> Health<br><input type="checkbox"/> Motor Vehicles<br><input type="checkbox"/> Shopping<br><input type="checkbox"/> Travel |
| Business<br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>         | <input type="checkbox"/> Computing/Internet<br><input type="checkbox"/> Politics<br><input type="checkbox"/> Remote proxies  | <input type="checkbox"/> Finance<br><input type="checkbox"/> Real Estate<br><input type="checkbox"/> Search Engine  | <input type="checkbox"/> Job Search/Career<br><input type="checkbox"/> Reference<br><input type="checkbox"/> Web Mail   |
| Others<br><input type="button" value="Select All"/><br><input type="button" value="Clear All"/>           | <input type="checkbox"/> Education<br><input type="checkbox"/> News<br><input type="checkbox"/> Usenet news  | <input type="checkbox"/> Hosting sites<br><input type="checkbox"/> Religion<br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>uncategorised sites</b>  | <input type="checkbox"/> Kid Sites<br><input type="checkbox"/> Sex Education  |



**Action**

**Pass** - allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.

**Block** - restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the categories listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

**Log**

**None** – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.

**Pass** – Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.

**Block** – Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.

**All** – All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.

Block ▾

None  
Pass  
Block  
All

## 5.7 Bandwidth Management

Below shows the menu items for Bandwidth Management.



### 5.7.1 Sessions Limit

A PC with private IP address can access to the Internet via NAT router. The router will generate the records of NAT sessions for such connection. The P2P (Peer to Peer) applications (e.g., BitTorrent) always need many sessions for proccession and also they will occupy over resources which might result in important accesses impacted. To solve the problem, you can use limit session to limit the session proccession for specified Hosts.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Sessions Limit** to open the web page.

[Bandwidth Management >> Sessions Limit](#)

**Sessions Limit**

☒ **Enable** ☐ **Disable**

Default Max Sessions:

**Limitation List**

| Index | Start IP | End IP | Max Sessions |
|-------|----------|--------|--------------|
|-------|----------|--------|--------------|

**Specific Limitation**

Start IP:  End IP:

Maximum Sessions:

**Time Schedule**

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup: , , ,

**Note:** Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit session, simply click **Enable** and set the default session limit.

**Enable**

Click this button to activate the function of limit session.

**Disable**

Click this button to close the function of limit session.

**Default session limit**

Defines the default session number used for each computer in LAN.

**Limitation List**

Displays a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.

**Start IP**

Defines the start IP address for limit session.

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <b>End IP</b>                         | Defines the end IP address for limit session.   |
| <b>Maximum Sessions</b>               | Defines the available session number for each host in the specific range of IP addresses. If you do not set the session number in this field, the system will use the default session limit for the specific limitation you set for each index. |
| <b>Add</b>                            | Adds the specific session limitation onto the list above.   |
| <b>Edit</b>                           | Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.  |
| <b>Remove</b>                         | Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.   |
| <b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b> | You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application &gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.                            |

## 5.7.2 Bandwidth Limit

The downstream or upstream from FTP, HTTP or some P2P applications will occupy large of bandwidth and affect the applications for other programs. Please use Limit Bandwidth to make the bandwidth usage more efficient.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Bandwidth Limit** to open the web page.

[Bandwidth Management >> Bandwidth Limit](#)

**Bandwidth Limit**

☐ Enable
 ☒ Disable

Default TX Limit:  Kbps
 Default RX Limit:  Kbps

**Limitation List**

| Index | Start IP | End IP | TX limit | RX limit |
|-------|----------|--------|----------|----------|
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |
|       |          |        |          |          |

**Specific Limitation**

Start IP: 
 End IP:

TX Limit:  Kbps
 RX Limit:  Kbps

**Time Schedule**

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup: , , ,

**Note:** Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit bandwidth, simply click **Enable** and set the default upstream and downstream limit.

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Enable</b>  | Click this button to activate the function of limit bandwidth. |
| <b>Disable</b> | Click this button to close the function of limit bandwidth.    |

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Default TX limit</b>               | Define the default speed of the upstream for each computer in LAN.  |
| <b>Default RX limit</b>               | Define the default speed of the downstream for each computer in LAN.  |
| <b>Limitation List</b>                | Display a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.   |
| <b>Start IP</b>                       | Define the start IP address for limit bandwidth.  |
| <b>End IP</b>                         | Define the end IP address for limit bandwidth.  |
| <b>TX limit</b>                       | Define the limitation for the speed of the upstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.                           |
| <b>RX limit</b>                       | Define the limitation for the speed of the downstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.                         |
| <b>Add</b>                            | Add the specific speed limitation onto the list above.  |
| <b>Edit</b>                           | Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.  |
| <b>Delete</b>                         | Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.   |
| <b>Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup</b> | You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in <b>Application&gt;&gt; Schedule</b> web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page. |

### 5.7.3 Quality of Service

Deploying QoS (Quality of Service) management to guarantee that all applications receive the service levels required and sufficient bandwidth to meet performance expectations is indeed one important aspect of modern enterprise network.

One reason for QoS is that numerous TCP-based applications tend to continually increase their transmission rate and consume all available bandwidth, which is called TCP slow start. If other applications are not protected by QoS, it will detract much from their performance in the overcrowded network. This is especially essential to those are low tolerant of loss, delay or jitter (delay variation).

Another reason is due to congestions at network intersections where speeds of interconnected circuits mismatch or traffic aggregates, packets will queue up and traffic can be throttled back to a lower speed. If there's no defined priority to specify which packets should be discarded (or in another term "dropped") from an overflowing queue, packets of sensitive applications mentioned above might be the ones to drop off. How this will affect application performance?

There are two components within Primary configuration of QoS deployment:

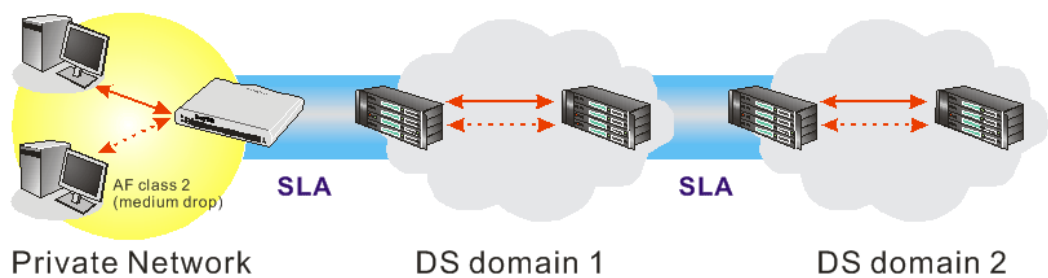
- **Classification:** Identifying low-latency or crucial applications and marking them for high-priority service level enforcement throughout the network.
- **Scheduling:** Based on classification of service level to assign packets to queues and associated service types



The basic QoS implementation in Vigor routers is to classify and schedule packets based on the service type information in the IP header. For instance, to ensure the connection with the headquarter, a teleworker may enforce an index of QoS Control to reserve bandwidth for HTTPS connection while using lots of application at the same time.

One more larger-scale implementation of QoS network is to apply DSCP (Differentiated Service Code Point) and IP Precedence disciplines at Layer 3. Compared with legacy IP Precedence that uses Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header to define 8 service classes, DSCP is a successor creating 64 classes possible with backward IP Precedence compatibility. In a QoS-enabled network, or Differentiated Service (DiffServ or DS) framework, a DS domain owner should sign a Service License Agreement (SLA) with other DS domain owners to define the service level provided toward traffic from different domains. Then each DS node in these domains will perform the priority treatment. This is called per-hop-behavior (PHB). The definition of PHB includes Expedited Forwarding (EF), Assured Forwarding (AF), and Best Effort (BE). AF defines the four classes of delivery (or forwarding) classes and three levels of drop precedence in each class.

Vigor routers as edge routers of DS domain shall check the marked DSCP value in the IP header of bypassing traffic, thus to allocate certain amount of resource execute appropriate policing, classification or scheduling. The core routers in the backbone will do the same checking before executing treatments in order to ensure service-level consistency throughout the whole QoS-enabled network.



However, each node may take different attitude toward packets with high priority marking since it may bind with the business deal of SLA among different DS domain owners. It's not easy to achieve deterministic and consistent high-priority QoS traffic throughout the whole network with merely Vigor router's effort.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Quality of Service** to open the web page.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)

| General Setup |        |                     |           |         |         |         |        | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |                       |
|---------------|--------|---------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--|-----------------------|
| Index         | Status | Bandwidth           | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control                  |                       |
| WAN1          | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive                               | <a href="#">Setup</a> |
| WAN2          | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive                               | <a href="#">Setup</a> |

| Class Rule |      |                      |                      |
|------------|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Index      | Name | Rule                 | Service Type         |
| Class 1    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Class 2    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |
| Class 3    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |

This page displays the QoS settings result of the WAN interface. Click the **Setup** link to access into next page for the general setup of WAN (1/2) interface. As to class rule, simply click the **Edit** link to access into next for configuration.

You can configure general setup for the WAN interface, edit the Class Rule, and edit the Service Type for the Class Rule for your request.

## General Setup for WAN Interface

When you click **Setup**, you can configure the bandwidth ratio for QoS of the WAN interface. There are four queues allowed for QoS control. The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. Yet, the last one is reserved for the packets which are not suitable for the user-defined class rules.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### WAN1 General Setup

☒ **Enable the QoS Control** OUT

| Index   | Class Name | Reserved_bandwidth Ratio          |
|---------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| Class 1 |            | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| Class 2 |            | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
| Class 3 |            | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |
|         | Others     | <input type="text" value="25"/> % |

☐ Enable UDP Bandwidth Control

Limited\_bandwidth Ratio  %

☐ Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize

[Online Statistics](#)

#### Enable the QoS Control

The factory default for this setting is checked.

Please also define which traffic the QoS Control settings will apply to.

**IN-** apply to incoming traffic only.

**OUT-** apply to outgoing traffic only.

**BOTH-** apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic.

Check this box and click **OK**, then click **Setup** link again. You will see the **Online Statistics** link appearing on this page.

#### WAN Inbound Bandwidth

It allows you to set the connecting rate of data input for WAN. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 1000kbps for this box. The default value is 1000kbps.

#### WAN Outbound Bandwidth

It allows you to set the connecting rate of data output for WAN. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 256kbps for this box. The default value is 1000kbps.

#### Reserved Bandwidth Ratio

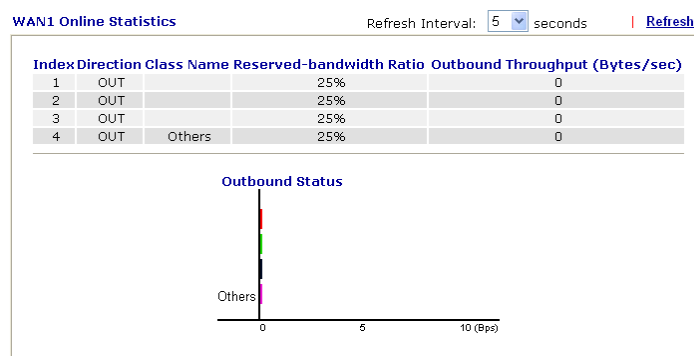
It is reserved for the group index in the form of ratio of **reserved bandwidth to upstream speed** and **reserved bandwidth to downstream speed**.

#### Enable UDP Bandwidth

Check this and set the limited bandwidth ratio on the right

- Control** field. This is a protection of TCP application traffic since UDP application traffic such as streaming video will exhaust lots of bandwidth.
- Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize** The difference in bandwidth between download and upload are great in ADSL2+ environment. For the download speed might be impacted by the uploading TCP ACK, you can check this box to push ACK of upload faster to speed the network traffic.
- Limited\_bandwidth Ratio** The ratio typed here is reserved for limited bandwidth of UDP application.
- Online Statistics** Display an online statistics for quality of service for your reference. This link will be seen only if you click **OK** in WAN1/WAN2 General Setup web page and click Setup again (for WAN1/WAN2) on the **Bandwidth Management>>Quality of Service**.

[Bandwidth Management>> Quality of Service](#)



## Edit the Class Rule for QoS

The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. To add, edit or delete the class rule, please click the **Edit** link of that one.

[Bandwidth Management>> Quality of Service](#)

| General Setup |        |                     |           |         |         |         |        |                       | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |  |
|---------------|--------|---------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|--|--|
| Index         | Status | Bandwidth           | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control |  |  |
| WAN1          | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive              | <a href="#">Setup</a>                  |  |
| WAN2          | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive              | <a href="#">Setup</a>                  |  |

| Class Rule |      |                      |                      |  |
|------------|------|----------------------|----------------------|--|
| Index      | Name | Rule                 | Service Type         |  |
| Class 1    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> | <a href="#">Edit</a> |  |
| Class 2    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |  |
| Class 3    |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |  |

After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page. Now you can define the name for that Class. In this case, “Test” is used as the name of Class Index #1.

## Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

### Class Index # 1

Name

| NO | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint | Service Type |
|----|--------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1  | Empty  | -             | -              | -                  | -            |

For adding a new rule, click **Add** to open the following page.

## Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

### Rule Edit

☒ ACT

Local Address

Remote Address

DiffServ CodePoint

Service Type

**Note:** Please choose/setup the [Service Type](#) first.

### ACT

Check this box to invoke these settings.

### Local Address

Click the **Edit** button to set the local IP address (on LAN) for the rule.

### Remote Address

Click the **Edit** button to set the remote IP address (on LAN/WAN) for the rule.

### Edit

It allows you to edit source address information.

http://192.168.1.1/doc/QoSIpEdit.htm - Microsoft Internet Explorer

Address Type

Start IP Address

End IP Address

Subnet Mask

**Address Type** – Determine the address type for the source address.

For **Single Address**, you have to fill in Start IP address.

For **Range Address**, you have to fill in Start IP address and End IP address.

For **Subnet Address**, you have to fill in Start IP address and Subnet Mask.

### DiffServ CodePoint

All the packets of data will be divided with different levels and will be processed according to the level type by the system. Please assign one of the levels of the data for

processing with QoS control.

## Service Type

It determines the service type of the data for processing with QoS control. It can also be edited. You can choose the predefined service type from the Service Type drop down list. Those types are predefined in factory. Simply choose the one that you want for using by current QoS.

By the way, you can set up to 20 rules for one Class. If you want to edit an existed rule, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit** to open the rule edit page for modification.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### Class Index #1

Name

| NO                      | Status | Local Address | Remote Address | DiffServ CodePoint    | Service Type   |
|-------------------------|--------|---------------|----------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1 <input type="radio"/> | Active |               | Any            | ANY                   | ANY            |
| 2 <input type="radio"/> | Active | ~             | Any            | AF Class4 (High Drop) | TELNET(TCP:23) |

## Edit the Service Type for Class Rule

To add a new service type, edit or delete an existed service type, please click the Edit link under Service Type field.

### Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

#### General Setup

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index | Status | Bandwidth           | Direction | Class 1 | Class 2 | Class 3 | Others | UDP Bandwidth Control |                       |
|-------|--------|---------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| WAN1  | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive              | <a href="#">Setup</a> |
| WAN2  | Enable | 10000Kbps/10000Kbps | Outbound  | 25%     | 25%     | 25%     | 25%    | Inactive              | <a href="#">Setup</a> |

#### Class Rule

| Index   | Name | Rule                 | Service Type         |
|---------|------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Class 1 |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> | <a href="#">Edit</a> |
| Class 2 |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |
| Class 3 |      | <a href="#">Edit</a> |                      |

After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)

**User Defined Service Type**

| NO | Name  | Protocol | Port |
|----|-------|----------|------|
| 1  | Empty | -        | -    |

For adding a new service type, click **Add** to open the following page.

[Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service](#)

**Service Type Edit**

|                    |   |                                |
|--------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| Service Name       | <input type="text"/>  |                                |
| Service Type       | TCP   | <input type="text" value="6"/> |
| Port Configuration |   |                                |
| Type               | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Single <input type="radio"/> Range |                                |
| Port Number        | <input type="text" value="0"/> - <input type="text" value="0"/>     |                                |

**Service Name**

Type in a new service for your request.

**Service Type**

Choose the type (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for the new service.

**Port Configuration**

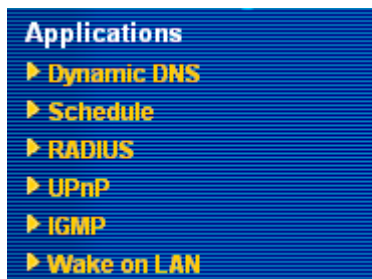
Click **Single** or **Range** as the **Type**. If you select Range, you have to type in the starting port number and the end porting number on the boxes below.

**Port Number** – Type in the starting port number and the end porting number here if you choose Range as the type.

By the way, you can set up to 40 service types. If you want to edit/delete an existed service type, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit/Edit** for modification.

## 5.8 Applications

Below shows the menu items for Applications.



### 5.8.1 Dynamic DNS

The ISP often provides you with a dynamic IP address when you connect to the Internet via your ISP. It means that the public IP address assigned to your router changes each time you access the Internet. The Dynamic DNS feature lets you assign a domain name to a dynamic WAN IP address. It allows the router to update its online WAN IP address mappings on the specified Dynamic DNS server. Once the router is online, you will be able to use the registered domain name to access the router or internal virtual servers from the Internet. It is particularly helpful if you host a web server, FTP server, or other server behind the router.

Before you use the Dynamic DNS feature, you have to apply for free DDNS service to the DDNS service providers. The router provides up to three accounts from three different DDNS service providers. Basically, Vigor routers are compatible with the DDNS services supplied by most popular DDNS service providers such as [www.dyndns.org](http://www.dyndns.org), [www.no-ip.com](http://www.no-ip.com), [www.dtdns.com](http://www.dtdns.com), [www.changeip.com](http://www.changeip.com), [www.dynamic-nameserver.com](http://www.dynamic-nameserver.com). You should visit their websites to register your own domain name for the router.

#### Enable the Function and Add a Dynamic DNS Account

1. Assume you have a registered domain name from the DDNS provider, say *hostname.dyndns.org*, and an account with username: *test* and password: *test*.
2. In the DDNS setup menu, check **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**.

[Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup](#)

Dynamic DNS Setup

[Set to Factory Default](#)

☒ Enable Dynamic DNS Setup

[View Log](#)[Force Update](#)

Accounts:

| Index              | WAN Interface | Domain Name | Active |
|--------------------|---------------|-------------|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> | WAN1 First    | .           | x      |
| <a href="#">2.</a> | WAN1 First    | .           | x      |
| <a href="#">3.</a> | WAN1 First    | .           | x      |

[OK](#)[Clear All](#)

**Set to Factory Default**

Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.

**Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**

Check this box to enable DDNS function.

**Index**

Click the number below Index to access into the setting page

of DDNS setup to set account(s).

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>WAN Interface</b> | Display current WAN interface used for accessing Internet.              |
| <b>Domain Name</b>   | Display the domain name that you set on the setting page of DDNS setup. |
| <b>Active</b>        | Display if this account is active or inactive.                          |
| <b>View Log</b>      | Display DDNS log status.  |
| <b>Force Update</b>  | Force the router updates its information to DDNS server.                |

3. Select Index number 1 to add an account for the router. Check **Enable Dynamic DNS Account**, and choose correct Service Provider: dyndns.org, type the registered hostname: *hostname* and domain name suffix: dyndns.org in the **Domain Name** block.

[Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup](#)

**Index : 1**

|                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable Dynamic DNS Account          |
| WAN Interface                       | WAN1 First                          |
| Service Provider                    | dyndns.org (www.dyndns.org)         |
| Service Type                        | Dynamic                             |
| Domain Name                         | chronic6633 . dyndns.org dyndns.org |
| Login Name                          | chronic6633 (max. 64 characters)    |
| Password                            | ..... (max. 23 characters)          |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | Wildcards                           |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | Backup MX                           |
| Mail Extender                       |                                     |

OK Clear Cancel

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>Enable Dynamic DNS Account</b> | Check this box to enable the current account. If you did check the box, you will see a check mark appeared on the Active column of the previous web page in step 2). |
| <b>WAN Interface</b>              | Select the WAN interface order to apply settings here.   |
| <b>Service Provider</b>           | Select the service provider for the DDNS account.  |
| <b>Service Type</b>               | Select a service type (Dynamic, Custom or Static). If you choose Custom, you can modify the domain that is chosen in the Domain Name field.                          |
| <b>Domain Name</b>                | Type in one domain name that you applied previously. Use the drop down list to choose the desired domain.  |
| <b>Login Name</b>                 | Type in the login name that you set for applying domain.   |
| <b>Password</b>                   | Type in the password that you set for applying domain.   |

4. Click **OK** button to activate the settings. You will see your setting has been saved.

The Wildcard and Backup MX features are not supported for all Dynamic DNS providers. You could get more detailed information from their websites.



## 5.8.2 Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in real time clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

You have to set your time before set schedule. In **System Maintenance>> Time and Date** menu, press **Inquire Time** button to set the Vigor router's clock to current time of your PC. The clock will reset once if you power down or reset the router. There is another way to set up time. You can inquiry an NTP server (a time server) on the Internet to synchronize the router's clock. This method can only be applied when the WAN connection has been built up.

### Applications >> Schedule

| Schedule:          |        | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |        |
|--------------------|--------|--|--------|
| Index              | Status | Index                                  | Status |
| <a href="#">1.</a> | x      | <a href="#">9.</a>                     | x      |
| <a href="#">2.</a> | x      | <a href="#">10.</a>                    | x      |
| <a href="#">3.</a> | x      | <a href="#">11.</a>                    | x      |
| <a href="#">4.</a> | x      | <a href="#">12.</a>                    | x      |
| <a href="#">5.</a> | x      | <a href="#">13.</a>                    | x      |
| <a href="#">6.</a> | x      | <a href="#">14.</a>                    | x      |
| <a href="#">7.</a> | x      | <a href="#">15.</a>                    | x      |
| <a href="#">8.</a> | x      |  |        |

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive

#### Set to Factory Default

Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.

#### Index

Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of schedule.

#### Status

Display if this schedule setting is active or inactive.

You can set up to 15 schedules. Then you can apply them to your **Internet Access** or **VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN** settings.

To add a schedule, please click any index, say Index No. 1. The detailed settings of the call schedule with index 1 are shown below.

### Applications >> Schedule

#### Index No. 1

☒ Enable Schedule Setup

Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)  -  -

Start Time (hh:mm)  :

Duration Time (hh:mm)  :

Action

Idle Timeout  minute(s). (max. 255, 0 for default)

How Often

☐ Once

☒ Weekdays

☐ Sun ☒ Mon ☒ Tue ☒ Wed ☒ Thu ☒ Fri ☐ Sat

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <b>Enable Schedule Setup</b>   | Check to enable the schedule.  |
| <b>Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)</b> | Specify the starting date of the schedule.   |
| <b>Start Time (hh:mm)</b>      | Specify the starting time of the schedule.   |
| <b>Duration Time (hh:mm)</b>   | Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule.   |
| <b>Action</b>                  | Specify which action Call Schedule should apply during the period of the schedule.<br><br><b>Force On</b> -Force the connection to be always on.<br><b>Force Down</b> -Force the connection to be always down.<br><b>Enable Dial-On-Demand</b> -Specify the connection to be dial-on-demand and the value of idle timeout should be specified in <b>Idle Timeout</b> field.<br><b>Disable Dial-On-Demand</b> -Specify the connection to be up when it has traffic on the line. Once there is no traffic over idle timeout, the connection will be down and never up again during the schedule. |
| <b>Idle Timeout</b>            | Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule.<br><br><b>How often</b> -Specify how often the schedule will be applied<br><b>Once</b> -The schedule will be applied just once<br><b>Weekdays</b> -Specify which days in one week should perform the schedule.  |

### Example

Suppose you want to control the PPPoE Internet access connection to be always on (Force On) from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week. Other time the Internet access connection should be disconnected (Force Down).

**Office**

**Hour:**

**(Force On)**



**Mon - Sun      9:00 am      to      6:00 pm**

1. Make sure the PPPoE connection and **Time Setup** is working properly.
2. Configure the PPPoE always on from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week.
3. Configure the **Force Down** from 18:00 to next day 9:00 for whole week.
4. Assign these two profiles to the PPPoE Internet access profile. Now, the PPPoE Internet connection will follow the schedule order to perform **Force On** or **Force Down** action according to the time plan that has been pre-defined in the schedule profiles.

### 5.8.3 RADIUS

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

#### Applications >> RADIUS

##### RADIUS Setup

☒ Enable

Server IP Address

Destination Port

1812

Shared Secret

Confirm Shared Secret

OK

Clear

Cancel

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Enable</b>                | Check to enable RADIUS client feature   |
| <b>Server IP Address</b>     | Enter the IP address of RADIUS server   |
| <b>Destination Port</b>      | The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using.<br>The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138.   |
| <b>Shared Secret</b>         | The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. |
| <b>Confirm Shared Secret</b> | Re-type the Shared Secret for confirmation.   |

## 5.8.4 UPnP

The **UPnP** (Universal Plug and Play) protocol is supported to bring to network connected devices the ease of installation and configuration which is already available for directly connected PC peripherals with the existing Windows 'Plug and Play' system. For NAT routers, the major feature of UPnP on the router is "NAT Traversal". This enables applications inside the firewall to automatically open the ports that they need to pass through a router. It is more reliable than requiring a router to work out by itself which ports need to be opened. Further, the user does not have to manually set up port mappings or a DMZ. **UPnP is available on Windows XP** and the router provide the associated support for MSN Messenger to allow full use of the voice, video and messaging features.

### Applications >> UPnP

#### UPnP

☒ Enable UPnP Service

☐ Enable Connection control Service☐ Enable Connection Status Service

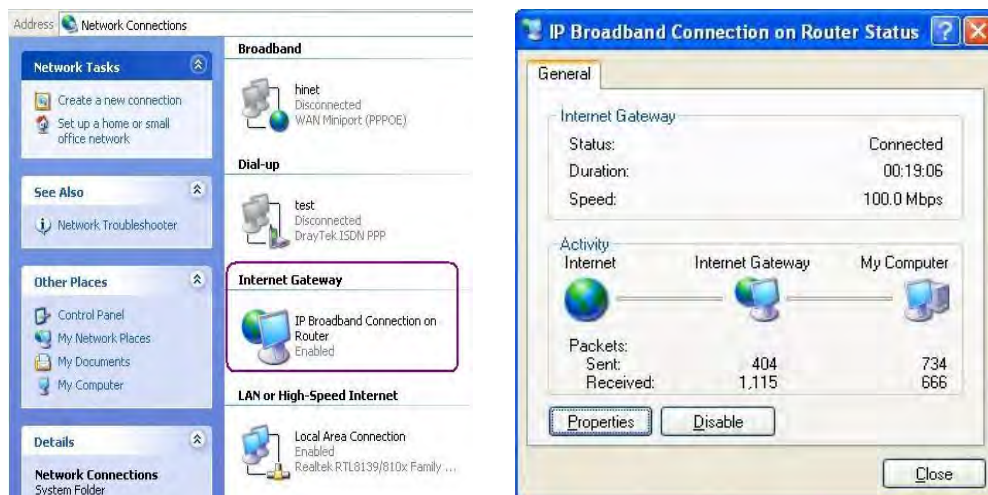
**Note:** If you intend running UPnP service inside your LAN, you should check the appropriate service above to allow control, as well as the appropriate UPnP settings.

OK Clear Cancel

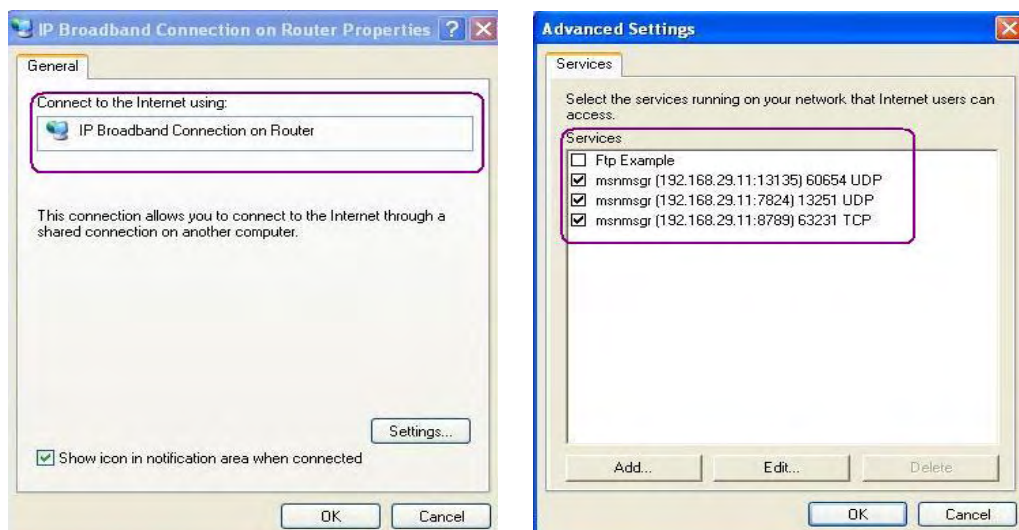
#### Enable UPNP Service

Accordingly, you can enable either the **Connection Control Service** or **Connection Status Service**.

After setting **Enable UPNP Service** setting, an icon of **IP Broadband Connection on Router** on Windows XP/Network Connections will appear. The connection status and control status will be able to be activated. The NAT Traversal of UPnP enables the multimedia features of your applications to operate. This has to manually set up port mappings or use other similar methods. The screenshots below show examples of this facility.



The UPnP facility on the router enables UPnP aware applications such as MSN Messenger to discover what are behind a NAT router. The application will also learn the external IP address and configure port mappings on the router. Subsequently, such a facility forwards packets from the external ports of the router to the internal ports used by the application.



The reminder as regards concern about Firewall and UPnP

### **Can't work with Firewall Software**

Enabling firewall applications on your PC may cause the UPnP function not working properly. This is because these applications will block the accessing ability of some network ports.

### **Security Considerations**

Activating the UPnP function on your network may incur some security threats. You should consider carefully these risks before activating the UPnP function.

- Some Microsoft operating systems have found out the UPnP weaknesses and hence you need to ensure that you have applied the latest service packs and patches.
- Non-privileged users can control some router functions, including removing and adding port mappings.

The UPnP function dynamically adds port mappings on behalf of some UPnP-aware applications. When the applications terminate abnormally, these mappings may not be removed.

5.8.5 IGMP

IGMP is the abbreviation of *Internet Group Management Protocol*. It is a communication protocol which is mainly used for managing the membership of Internet Protocol multicast groups. For invoking IGMP Snooping function, you have to check the Enable IGMP Proxy box first for activating the IGMP proxy function.

Applications >> IGMP

IGMP

☐ **Enable IGMP Proxy**

WAN1 ▾

IGMP Proxy is to act as a multicast proxy for hosts on the LAN side. Enable IGMP Proxy, if you will access any multicast group. But this function **take no affect when Bridge Mode is enabled**.

☐ **Enable IGMP Snooping**

Enable IGMP Snooping, multicast traffic is only forwarded to ports that have members of that group. Disable IGMP snooping, multicast traffic is treated in the same manner as broadcast traffic.

OK

Cancel

Refresh

Working Multicast Groups

| Index | Group ID | P1 | P2 | P3 | P4 |
|-------|----------|----|----|----|----|
|-------|----------|----|----|----|----|

- Enable IGMP Proxy

Check this box to enable this function. The application of multicast will be executed through WAN port you specified.

WAN1 ▾

WAN1

WAN2

PVC
- Enable IGMP Snooping

Check this box to enable this function. The application of multicast will be executed for the clients in LAN.
- Group ID

This field displays the ID port for the multicast group. The available range for IGMP starts from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.254.
- P1 to P4

It indicates the LAN port used for the multicast group.
- Refresh

Click this link to renew the working multicast group status.

If you check Enable IGMP Proxy, you will get the following page. All the multicast groups will be listed and all the LAN ports (P1 to P4) are available for use.

## 5.8.6 Wake on LAN

A PC client on LAN can be woken up by the router it connects. When a user wants to wake up a specified PC through the router, he/she must type correct MAC address of the specified PC on this web page of **Wake on LAN** of this router.

In addition, such PC must have installed a network card supporting WOL function. By the way, WOL function must be set as “Enable” on the BIOS setting.

### Application >> Wake on LAN

**Wake on LAN**

**Note:** Wake on LAN integrates with [Bind IP to MAC](#) function, only binded PCs can wake up through IP.

Wake by:

IP Address:

MAC Address:

**Result**

#### Wake by

Two types provide for you to wake up the binded IP. If you choose Wake by MAC Address, you have to type the correct MAC address of the host in MAC Address boxes. If you choose Wake by IP Address, you have to choose the correct IP address.

Wake by:

MAC Address

IP Address

#### IP Address

The IP addresses that have been configured in **Firewall>>Bind IP to MAC** will be shown in this drop down list. Choose the IP address from the drop down list that you want to wake up.

#### MAC Address

Type any one of the MAC address of the binded PCs.

#### Wake Up

Click this button to wake up the selected IP. See the following figure. The result will be shown on the box.

### Application >> Wake on LAN

**Wake on LAN**

**Note:** Wake on LAN integrates with [Bind IP to MAC](#) function, only binded PCs can wake up through IP.

Wake by:

IP Address:

MAC Address:

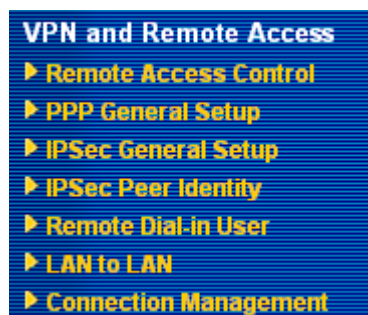
**Result**

Send command to client done.

## 5.9 VPN and Remote Access

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

Below shows the menu items for VPN and Remote Access.



### 5.9.1 Remote Access Control

Enable the necessary VPN service as you need. If you intend to run a VPN server inside your LAN, you should disable the VPN service of Vigor Router to allow VPN tunnel pass through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings, such as DMZ or open port.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Access Control Setup

##### Remote Access Control Setup

|                                     |                          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable PPTP VPN Service  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable IPSec VPN Service |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Enable L2TP VPN Service  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>            | Enable ISDN Dial-In      |

**Note:** If you intend running a VPN server inside your LAN, you should uncheck the appropriate protocol above to allow pass-through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings.

|    |       |        |
|----|-------|--------|
| OK | Clear | Cancel |
|----|-------|--------|

The Vigor router will not accept the ISDN dial-in connection if the box of **Enable ISDN Dial-in** is not checked.



## 5.9.2 PPP General Setup

This submenu only applies to PPP-related VPN connections, such as PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPSec.

[VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup](#)

**PPP General Setup**

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>PPP/MP Protocol</b>        |   | <b>IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users<br/>(When DHCP Disable set)</b> |
| Dial-In PPP Authentication    | <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/>                      | Start IP Address <input type="text" value="192.168.1.200"/>                |
| Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE) | <input type="text" value="Optional MPPE"/>                    |  |
| Mutual Authentication (PAP)   | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No |  |
| Username                      | <input type="text"/>  |  |
| Password                      | <input type="text"/>  |  |

### Dial-In PPP Authentication

**PAP Only** - Select this option to force the router to authenticate dial-in users with the PAP protocol.

**PAP or CHAP** - Selecting this option means the router will attempt to authenticate dial-in users with the CHAP protocol first. If the dial-in user does not support this protocol, it will fall back to use the PAP protocol for authentication.

### Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)

**Optional MPPE** - This option represents that the MPPE encryption method will be optionally employed in the router for the remote dial-in user. If the remote dial-in user does not support the MPPE encryption algorithm, the router will transmit “no MPPE encrypted packets”. Otherwise, the MPPE encryption scheme will be used to encrypt the data.

Optional MPPE  
Require MPPE(40/128 bit)  
Maximum MPPE(128 bit)

**Require MPPE (40/128bits)** - Selecting this option will force the router to encrypt packets by using the MPPE encryption algorithm. In addition, the remote dial-in user will use 40-bit to perform encryption prior to using 128-bit for encryption. In other words, if 128-bit MPPE encryption method is not available, then 40-bit encryption scheme will be applied to encrypt the data.

**Maximum MPPE** - This option indicates that the router will use the MPPE encryption scheme with maximum bits (128-bit) to encrypt the data.

### Mutual Authentication (PAP)

The Mutual Authentication function is mainly used to communicate with other routers or clients who need bi-directional authentication in order to provide stronger security, for example, Cisco routers. So you should enable this function when your peer router requires mutual authentication. You should further specify the **User Name**

and **Password** of the mutual authentication peer.

#### Start IP Address

Enter a start IP address for the dial-in PPP connection. You should choose an IP address from the local private network. For example, if the local private network is 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0, you could choose 192.168.1.200 as the Start IP Address. But, you have to notice that the first two IP addresses of 192.168.1.200 and 192.168.1.201 are reserved for ISDN remote dial-in user.

### 5.9.3 IPSec General Setup

In **IPSec General Setup**, there are two major parts of configuration.

There are two phases of IPSec.

- Phase 1: negotiation of IKE parameters including encryption, hash, Diffie-Hellman parameter values, and lifetime to protect the following IKE exchange, authentication of both peers using either a Pre-Shared Key or Digital Signature (x.509). The peer that starts the negotiation proposes all its policies to the remote peer and then remote peer tries to find a highest-priority match with its policies. Eventually to set up a secure tunnel for IKE Phase 2.
- Phase 2: negotiation IPSec security methods including Authentication Header (AH) or Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) for the following IKE exchange and mutual examination of the secure tunnel establishment.

There are two encapsulation methods used in IPSec, **Transport** and **Tunnel**. The **Transport** mode will add the AH/ESP payload and use original IP header to encapsulate the data payload only. It can just apply to local packet, e.g., L2TP over IPSec. The **Tunnel** mode will not only add the AH/ESP payload but also use a new IP header (Tunneled IP header) to encapsulate the whole original IP packet.

Authentication Header (AH) provides data authentication and integrity for IP packets passed between VPN peers. This is achieved by a keyed one-way hash function to the packet to create a message digest. This digest will be put in the AH and transmitted along with packets. On the receiving side, the peer will perform the same one-way hash on the packet and compare the value with the one in the AH it receives.

Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) is a security protocol that provides data confidentiality and protection with optional authentication and replay detection service.

#### VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

##### VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup

Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).

**IKE Authentication Method**

Pre-Shared Key

Confirm Pre-Shared Key

**IPSec Security Method**

☒ Medium (AH)  
Data will be authentic, but will not be encrypted.

High (ESP)  
Data will be encrypted and authentic.

☒ DES ☒ 3DES ☒ AES

OK Cancel

#### IKE Authentication

This usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Method</b>                | (LAN-to-LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPSec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPSec and IPSec tunnel.<br><br><b>Pre-Shared Key</b> -Currently only support Pre-Shared Key for IKE authentication<br><br><b>Confirm Pre-Shared Key</b> - Retype the characters to confirm the pre-shared key.  |
| <b>IPSec Security Method</b> | <b>Medium</b> - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.<br><br><b>High</b> - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES. |

## 5.9.4 IPSec Peer Identity

To use digital certificate for peer authentication in either LAN-to-LAN connection or Remote User Dial-In connection, here you may edit a table of peer certificate for selection. As shown below, the router provides **32** entries of digital certificates for peer dial-in users.

[VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec Peer Identity](#)

| <b>X509 Peer ID Accounts:</b> |      |        | <a href="#">Set to Factory Default</a> |      |        |
|-------------------------------|------|--------|--|------|--------|
| Index                         | Name | Status | Index                                  | Name | Status |
| <a href="#">1.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">17.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">18.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">19.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">20.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">21.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">22.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">23.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">24.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>            | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">25.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">10.</a>           | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">26.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">11.</a>           | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">27.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">12.</a>           | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">28.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">13.</a>           | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">29.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">14.</a>           | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">30.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">15.</a>           | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">31.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |
| <a href="#">16.</a>           | ???  | ×      | <a href="#">32.</a>                    | ???  | ×      |

**Set to Factory Default** Click it to clear all indexes.

**Index** Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of IPSec Peer Identity.

**Name** Display the profile name of that index.

Click each index to edit one peer digital certificate. There are three security levels of digital signature authentication: Fill each necessary field to authenticate the remote peer. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

## Profile Index : 1

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| <b>Profile Name</b> ???                                      |                      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable this account                 |                      |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> <b>Accept Any Peer ID</b>   |                      |
| <input type="radio"/> <b>Accept Subject Alternative Name</b> |                      |
| Type   | IP Address ▼         |
| IP   | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="radio"/> <b>Accept Subject Name</b>             |                      |
| Country (C)  | <input type="text"/> |
| State (ST)   | <input type="text"/> |
| Location (L)   | <input type="text"/> |
| Organization (O)   | <input type="text"/> |
| Organization Unit (OU)                                       | <input type="text"/> |
| Common Name (CN)   | <input type="text"/> |
| Email (E)  | <input type="text"/> |

OK Clear Cancel

**Profile Name**

Type in a name in this file.

**Accept Any Peer ID**

Click to accept any peer regardless of its identity.

**Accept Subject Alternative Name**

Click to check one specific field of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field can be **IP Address**, **Domain**, or **E-mail Address**. The box under the Type will appear according to the type you select and ask you to fill in corresponding setting.

**Accept Subject Name**

Click to check the specific fields of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field includes **Country (C)**, **State (ST)**, **Location (L)**, **Organization (O)**, **Organization Unit (OU)**, **Common Name (CN)**, and **Email (E)**.

## 5.9.5 Remote Dial-in User

You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via ISDN or build the VPN connection. You may set parameters including specified connection peer ID, connection type (ISDN Dial-In connection, VPN connection - including PPTP, IPSec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPSec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router provides **32** access accounts for dial-in users. Besides, you can extend the user accounts to the RADIUS server through the built-in RADIUS client function. The following figure shows the summary table.

### VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

#### Remote Access User Accounts:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index               | User | Status | Index               | User | Status |
|---------------------|------|--------|---------------------|------|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">17.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">18.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">19.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">20.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">21.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">22.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">23.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">24.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">25.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">26.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">27.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">28.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">29.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">30.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">31.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">32.</a> | ???  | X      |

#### Set to Factory Default

Click to clear all indexes.

#### Index

Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of Remote Dial-in User.

#### User

Display the username for the specific dial-in user of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.

#### Status

Display the access state of the specific dial-in user. The symbol V and X represent the specific dial-in user to be active and inactive, respectively.

Click each index to edit one remote user profile. **Each Dial-In Type requires you to fill the different corresponding fields on the right.** If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

## Index No. 1

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <b>User account and Authentication</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable this account<br>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)  |  | Username <input type="text" value="???"/><br>Password <input type="password"/>   |
| <b>Allowed Dial-In Type</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPsec Tunnel<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPsec Policy <input type="text" value="None"/> |  | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key<br>IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><input type="text" value="None"/>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Specify Remote Node<br>Remote Client IP or Peer ISDN Number<br><input type="text"/><br>or Peer ID <input type="text"/><br>Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block                              |  | <b>IPsec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH)<br>High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES<br>Local ID (optional) <input type="text"/>   |
|   |  | <b>Callback Function</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback function<br><input type="checkbox"/> Specify the callback number<br>Callback Number <input type="text"/><br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Check to enable Callback Budget Control<br>Callback Budget <input type="text" value="30"/> minute(s) |

OK Clear Cancel

**Enable this account**

Check the box to enable this function.

**Idle Timeout-** If the dial-in user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the router will drop this connection. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 300 seconds.

**ISDN**

Allow the remote ISDN dial-in connection. You can further set up Callback function below. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below

**PPTP**

Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below

**IPsec Tunnel**

Allow the remote dial-in user to make an IPsec VPN connection through Internet.

**L2TP**

Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below:

**None** - Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.

**Nice to Have** - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection.

**Must** -Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Specify Remote Node</b>       | <p><b>Check the checkbox</b>-You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user, ISDN number or peer ID (used in IKE aggressive mode).</p> <p><b>Uncheck the checkbox</b>-This means the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the <b>general settings</b>.</p>   |
| <b>Netbios Naming Packet</b>     | <p><b>Pass</b> – click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting.</p> <p><b>Block</b> – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.</p>   |
| <b>User Name</b>                 | This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.   |
| <b>Password</b>                  | This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.   |
| <b>IKE Authentication Method</b> | <p>This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPSec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.</p> <p><b>Pre-Shared Key</b> - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.</p> <p><b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b> – Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and Select one predefined Profiles set in the <b>VPN and Remote Access &gt;&gt;IPSec Peer Identity</b>.</p>  |
| <b>IPSec Security Method</b>     | <p>This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the remote node. Check the Medium, DES, 3DES or AES box as the security method.</p> <p><b>Medium - Authentication Header (AH)</b> means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it.</p> <p><b>High - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)</b> means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p> <p><b>Local ID</b> - Specify a local ID to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.</p> |
| <b>Callback Function</b>         | <p>The callback function provides a callback service only for the ISDN dial-in user. The remote user will be charged the connection fee by the telecom.</p> <p><b>Check to enable Callback function</b>-Enables the callback function.</p>  |

**Specify the callback number**-The option is for extra security. Once enabled, the router will ONLY call back to the specified Callback Number.

**Check to enable callback budget control**-By default, the callback function has a time restriction. Once the callback budget has been exhausted, the callback mechanism will be disabled automatically.

**Callback Budget (Unit: minutes)**- Specify the time budget for the dial-in user. The budget will be decreased automatically per callback connection.

## 5.9.6 LAN to LAN

Here you can manage LAN-to-LAN connections by maintaining a table of connection profiles. You may set parameters including specified connection direction (dial-in or dial-out), connection peer ID, connection type (VPN connection - including PPTP, IPSec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPSec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router supports 2 VPN tunnels and provides up to **32** profiles simultaneously. The following figure shows the summary table.

[VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN](#)

LAN-to-LAN Profiles:

[Set to Factory Default](#)

| Index               | Name | Status | Index               | Name | Status |
|---------------------|------|--------|---------------------|------|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">17.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">18.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">19.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">20.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">21.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">22.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">23.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">24.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  | ???  | X      | <a href="#">25.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">26.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">11.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">27.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">12.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">28.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">13.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">29.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">14.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">30.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">15.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">31.</a> | ???  | X      |
| <a href="#">16.</a> | ???  | X      | <a href="#">32.</a> | ???  | X      |

### Set to Factory Default

Click to clear all indexes.

### Name

Indicate the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.

### Status

Indicate the status of individual profiles. The symbol V and X represent the profile to be active and inactive, respectively.

Click each index to edit each profile and you will get the following page. Each LAN-to-LAN profile includes 4 subgroups. If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanations will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

For the web page is too long, we divide the page into several sections for explanation.



## Profile Index : 1

## 1. Common Settings

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Profile Name <input type="text" value="???"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable this profile | Call Direction <input checked="" type="radio"/> Both <input type="radio"/> Dial-Out <input type="radio"/> Dial-in<br><input type="checkbox"/> Always on<br>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="300"/> second(s)<br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive<br>PING to the IP <input type="text"/> |
| VPN Connection Through <input type="button" value="WAN1 First"/>                              |   |
| Netbios Naming Packet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pass <input type="radio"/> Block       |   |

## 2. Dial-Out Settings

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Type of Server I am calling</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> ISDN<br><input type="radio"/> PPTP<br><input type="radio"/> IPSec Tunnel<br><input type="radio"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy <input type="button" value="None"/> | Link Type <input type="button" value="64k bps"/><br>Username <input type="text" value="???"/><br>Password <input type="text"/><br>PPP Authentication <input type="button" value="PAP/CHAP"/><br>VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off |
| Dial Number for ISDN or<br>Server IP/Host Name for VPN.<br>(such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)<br><input type="text"/>   | <b>IKE Authentication Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre-Shared Key<br><input type="button" value="IKE Pre-Shared Key"/> <input type="text"/><br><input type="radio"/> Digital Signature(X.509)<br><input type="button" value="None"/>                       |
|   | <b>IPSec Security Method</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Medium(AH)<br><input type="radio"/> High(ESP) <input type="button" value="DES without Authentication"/><br><input type="button" value="Advanced"/>  |
|   | Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br><input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/>  |
|   | <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Require Remote to Callback<br><input type="checkbox"/> Provide ISDN Number to Remote   |

**Profile Name**

Specify a name for the profile of the LAN-to-LAN connection.

**Enable this profile**

Check here to activate this profile.

**Netbios Naming Packet**

**Pass** – click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting.

**Block** – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.

**VPN Connection Through**

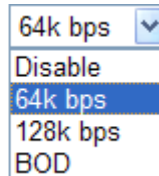
Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.

VPN Connection Through:

WAN1 First  
 WAN1 Only  
 WAN2 First  
 WAN2 Only

**WAN1 First** - While connecting, the router will use

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
|                                  | <p>WAN1 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.</p> <p><b>WAN1 Only</b> - While connecting, the router will use WAN1 as the only channel for VPN connection.</p> <p><b>WAN2 First</b> - While connecting, the router will use WAN2 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN2 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.</p> <p><b>WAN2 Only</b> - While connecting, the router will use WAN2 as the only channel for VPN connection.</p>  |
| <b>Call Direction</b>            | <p>Specify the allowed call direction of this LAN-to-LAN profile.</p> <p><b>Both</b>:-initiator/responder</p> <p><b>Dial-Out</b>- initiator only</p> <p><b>Dial-In</b>- responder only</p>   |
| <b>Always On or Idle Timeout</b> | <p><b>Always On</b>-Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.</p> <p><b>Idle Timeout</b>: The default value is 300 seconds. If the connection has been idled over the value, the router will drop the connection.</p>   |
| <b>Enable PING to keep alive</b> | <p>This function is to help the router to determine the status of IPsec VPN connection, especially useful in the case of abnormal VPN IPsec tunnel disruption. For details, please refer to the note below. Check to enable the transmission of PING packets to a specified IP address.</p>  |
| <b>PING to the IP</b>            | <p>Enter the IP address of the remote host that located at the other-end of the VPN tunnel.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Enable PING to Keep Alive</b> is used to handle abnormal IPsec VPN connection disruption. It will help to provide the state of a VPN connection for router's judgment of redial.</p> <p>Normally, if any one of VPN peers wants to disconnect the connection, it should follow a serial of packet exchange procedure to inform each other. However, if the remote peer disconnect without notice, Vigor router will by no where to know this situation. To resolve this dilemma, by continuously sending PING packets to the remote host, the Vigor router can know the true existence of this VPN connection and react accordingly. This is independent of DPD (dead peer detection).</p> </div> |
| <b>ISDN</b>                      | <p>Build ISDN LAN-to-LAN connection to remote network. You should set up Link Type and identity like User Name and Password for the authentication of remote server. You can further set up Callback (CBCP) function below.</p>  |
| <b>PPTP</b>                      | <p>Build a PPTP VPN connection to the server through the Internet. You should set the identity like User Name and Password below for the authentication of remote server.</p>  |

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>IPSec Tunnel</b>              | Build an IPSec VPN connection to the server through Internet.   |
| <b>L2TP with IPSec Policy</b>    | <p>Build a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPSec. Select from below:</p> <p><b>None:</b> Do not apply the IPSec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPSec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.</p> <p><b>Nice to Have:</b> Apply the IPSec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-out VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection.</p> <p><b>Must:</b> Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.</p>   |
| <b>Link Type</b>                 | <p>There are three link types provided here for different purpose. <b>Disable</b> disables the LAN to LAN dial-out function. <b>64Kbps</b> allows you to use one channel for Internet access. <b>128Kbps</b> allows you to use both channels for Internet access. <b>BOD</b> stands for bandwidth-on-demand. The router will use only one channel in low traffic situations. Once the single channel bandwidth is fully used, the other channel will be activated automatically through the dialup.</p> <div> <div>Link Type</div>  </div> |
| <b>User Name</b>                 | This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.   |
| <b>Password</b>                  | This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.   |
| <b>PPP Authentication</b>        | This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. PAP/CHAP is the most common selection due to wild compatibility.  |
| <b>VJ compression</b>            | This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. Normally set to <b>Yes</b> to improve bandwidth utilization.   |
| <b>IKE Authentication Method</b> | <p>This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy.</p> <p><b>Pre-Shared Key</b> - Input 1-63 characters as pre-shared key.</p> <p><b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b> - Select one predefined Profiles set in the <b>VPN and Remote Access &gt;&gt;IPSec Peer Identity</b>.</p>   |
| <b>IPSec Security Method</b>     | This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP   |

## Medium

with IPSec Policy.

**Authentication Header (AH)** means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.

**High (ESP-Encapsulating Security Payload)-** means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. Select from below:

**DES without Authentication** -Use DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

**DES with Authentication**-Use DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

**3DES without Authentication**-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

**3DES with Authentication**-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

**AES without Authentication**-Use AES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme.

**AES with Authentication**-Use AES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm.

## Advanced

Specify mode, proposal and key life of each IKE phase, Gateway etc.

The window of advance setup is shown as below:

http://192.168.1.1 - IKE advanced settings - Microsoft Internet Explorer

**IKE advanced settings**

IKE phase 1 mode: ☒ Main mode ☐ Aggressive mode

IKE phase 1 proposal: DES\_MD5\_G1/DES\_SHA1\_G1/3DES\_MD5\_G1/3DES\_MD5\_G2

IKE phase 2 proposal: HMAC\_SHA1/HMAC\_MD5

IKE phase 1 key lifetime: 28800 (900 ~ 86400)

IKE phase 2 key lifetime: 3600 (600 ~ 86400)

Perfect Forward Secret: ☒ Disable ☐ Enable

Local ID:

OK Close

**IKE phase 1 mode** -Select from **Main** mode and **Aggressive** mode. The ultimate outcome is to exchange security proposals to create a protected secure channel. **Main** mode is more secure than **Aggressive** mode since more exchanges are done in a secure channel to set up the IPSec session. However, the **Aggressive** mode is faster. The default value in Vigor router is Main mode.

**IKE phase 1 proposal**-To propose the local available authentication schemes and encryption algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Two combinations are available for Aggressive mode and nine

for **Main** mode. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most schemes.

**IKE phase 2 proposal**-To propose the local available algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Three combinations are available for both modes. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most algorithms.

**IKE phase 1 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 28800 seconds. You may specify a value in between 900 and 86400 seconds.

**IKE phase 2 key lifetime**-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 3600 seconds. You may specify a value in between 600 and 86400 seconds.

**Perfect Forward Secret (PFS)**-The IKE Phase 1 key will be reused to avoid the computation complexity in phase 2. The default value is inactive this function.

**Local ID**-In **Aggressive** mode, Local ID is on behalf of the IP address while identity authenticating with remote VPN server. The length of the ID is limited to 47 characters.

## Callback Function

The callback function provides a callback service as a part of PPP suite only for the ISDN dial-in user. The router owner will be charged the connection fee by the telecom.

**Require Remote to Callback**-Enable this to let the router to require the remote peer to callback for the connection afterwards.

**Provide ISDN Number to Remote**-In the case that the remote peer requires the Vigor router to callback, the local ISDN number will be provided to the remote peer. Check [here](#) to allow the Vigor router to send the ISDN number to the remote router.

### 3. Dial-In Settings

| Allowed Dial-In Type   |      |
|--|------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN                         |      |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PPTP                         |      |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IPSec Tunnel                 |      |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> L2TP with IPSec Policy       | None |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Specify ISDN CLID or Remote VPN Gateway |      |
| Peer ISDN Number or Peer VPN Server IP                           |      |
| <input type="text"/>   |      |
| or Peer ID <input type="text"/>                                  |      |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Username <input type="text" value="???"/>  |  |
| Password <input type="text"/>  |  |
| VJ Compression <input checked="" type="radio"/> On <input type="radio"/> Off   |  |
| <b>IKE Authentication Method</b>   |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pre-Shared Key   |  |
| IKE Pre-Shared Key <input type="text"/>  |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Digital Signature(X.509)  |  |
| None   |  |
| <b>IPSec Security Method</b>   |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Medium(AH)   |  |
| High(ESP) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3DES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> AES |  |
| <b>Callback Function (CBCP)</b>  |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Callback Function  |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Use the Following Number to Callback  |  |
| Callback Number <input type="text"/>   |  |
| Callback Budget <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)   |  |

### 4. TCP/IP Network Settings

|   |  |  |         |
|---|--|--|---------|
| My WAN IP   | <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>        | RIP Direction  | Disable |
| Remote Gateway IP   | <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>       | From first subnet to remote network, you have to do  |         |
| Remote Network IP   | <input type="text" value="0.0.0.0"/>       | Route  |         |
| Remote Network Mask   | <input type="text" value="255.255.255.0"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> Change default route to this VPN tunnel ( Only single WAN supports this ) |         |
| <input type="button" value="More"/> |  |  |         |

#### Allowed Dial-In Type

##### ISDN

Determine the dial-in connection with different types.

Allow the remote ISDN LAN-to-LAN connection. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below. In addition, you can further set up Callback function below.

##### PPTP

Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.

##### IPSec Tunnel

Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an IPSec VPN connection through Internet.

##### L2TP

Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPSec. Select from below:

**None** - Do not apply the IPSec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPSec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.

**Nice to Have** - Apply the IPSec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection.

|   |   |
|---|---|
|   | <p><b>Must</b> - Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.</p>  |
| <b>Specify CLID or Remote VPN Gateway</b> | <p>You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user or peer ID (should be the same with the ID setting in dial-in type) by checking the box. Enter Peer ISDN number if you select ISDN above. Also, you should further specify the corresponding security methods on the right side.</p> <p>If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.</p>  |
| <b>User Name</b>                          | <p>This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.</p>  |
| <b>Password</b>                           | <p>This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.</p>  |
| <b>VJ Compression</b>                     | <p>VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.</p>   |
| <b>IKE Authentication Method</b>          | <p>This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPSec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node.</p> <p><b>Pre-Shared Key</b> - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key.</p> <p><b>Digital Signature (X.509)</b> –Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and select one predefined Profiles set in the <b>VPN and Remote Access &gt;&gt;IPSec Peer Identity</b>.</p> |
| <b>IPSec Security Method</b>              | <p>This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the remote node.</p> <p><b>Medium-</b> Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.</p> <p><b>High-</b> Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.</p>  |
| <b>Callback Function</b>                  | <p>The callback function provides a callback service only for the ISDN LAN-to-LAN connection. The remote user will be charged the connection fee by the telecom.</p> <p><b>Check to enable Callback function</b>-Enables the callback function.</p> <p><b>Callback number</b>-The option is for extra security. Once enabled, the router will ONLY call back to the specified Callback Number.</p>  |

**Callback budget-** By default, the callback function has limitation of callback period. Once the callback budget is exhausted, the function will be disabled automatically.

**Callback Budget (Unit: minutes)-** Specify the time budget for the dial-in user. The budget will be decreased automatically per callback connection. The default value 0 means no limitation of callback period.

**My WAN IP**

This field is only applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP.

**Remote Gateway IP**

This field is only applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a remote Gateway PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP.

**Remote Network IP/  
Remote Network Mask**

Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPSec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.

**More**

Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.

**RIP Direction**

The option specifies the direction of RIP (Routing Information Protocol) packets. You can enable/disable one of direction here. Herein, we provide four options: TX/RX Both, TX Only, RX Only, and Disable.

**From first subnet to  
remote network, you have  
to do**

If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose **NAT**, otherwise choose **Route**.

**Change default route to  
this VPN tunnel**

Check this box to change the default route with this VPN tunnel. Be aware that this setting is available only for one WAN interface is enabled. It is not available when both WAN interfaces are enabled. You have to disable one WAN interface (WAN 1 or WAN 2) on **WAN >> General Setup** for enabling such setting.



## 5.9.7 Connection Management

You can find the summary table of all VPN connections. You may disconnect any VPN connection by clicking **Drop** button. You may also aggressively Dial-out by using Dial-out Tool and clicking **Dial** button.

### VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

**Dial-out Tool**

Refresh Seconds : 10

**VPN Connection Status**

Current Page: 1

Page No.   >>

| VPN                              | Type | Remote IP | Virtual Network | Tx Pkts | Tx Rate (Bps) | Rx Pkts | Rx Rate (Bps) | UpTime |
|----------------------------------|------|-----------|-----------------|---------|---------------|---------|---------------|--------|
| xxxxxxxx : Data is encrypted.    |      |           |                 |         |               |         |               |        |
| xxxxxxxx : Data isn't encrypted. |      |           |                 |         |               |         |               |        |

#### Dial

Click this button to execute dial out function.

#### Refresh Seconds

Choose the time for refresh the dial information among 5, 10, and 30.

#### Refresh

Click this button to refresh the whole connection status.

## 5.10 Certificate Management

A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

Any entity wants to utilize digital certificates should first request a certificate issued by a CA server. It should also retrieve certificates of other trusted CA servers so it can authenticate the peer with certificates issued by those trusted CA servers.

Here you can manage generate and manage the local digital certificates, and set trusted CA certificates. Remember to adjust the time of Vigor router before using the certificate so that you can get the correct valid period of certificate.

Below shows the menu items for Certificate Management.



### 5.10.1 Local Certificate

[Certificate Management >> Local Certificate](#)

#### X509 Local Certificate Configuration

| Name  | Subject | Status | Modify                                      |
|-------|---------|--------|---|
| Local | ---     | ---    | <a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> |

[GENERATE](#) [IMPORT](#) [REFRESH](#)

**X509 Local Certificate**

**Generate**

Click this button to open **Generate Certificate Request** window.

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

Generate Certificate Request

|                                 |            |
|---------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Subject Alternative Name</b> |            |
| Type                            | IP Address |
| IP                              |            |
| <b>Subject Name</b>             |            |
| Country (C)                     |            |
| State (ST)                      |            |
| Location (L)                    |            |
| Organization (O)                |            |
| Organization Unit (OU)          |            |
| Common Name (CN)                |            |
| Email (E)                       |            |
| <b>Key Type</b>                 | RSA        |
| <b>Key Size</b>                 | 1024 Bit   |

Generate

Type in all the information that the window request. Then click **Generate** again.

**Import**

Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information.

**Refresh**

Click this button to refresh the information listed below.

**View**

Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request.

After clicking **Generate**, the generated information will be displayed on the window below:

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

| Name  | Subject                         | Status     | Modify                                      |
|-------|---------------------------------|------------|---|
| Local | /C=TW/ST=HS/O=Draytek/OU=RD/... | Requesting | <a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> |

[GENERATE](#) [IMPORT](#) [REFRESH](#)

**X509 Local Certificate Request**

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIIBnTCCAQYCAQAwXTELMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxHzANBgNVBAGTAKhTMRawDgYDVQQK
EwdEcmF5dGVrMQswCQYDVQQLEwJSRDEiMCAGCSqGSIb3DQEJARYTc3VwcG9ydEBk
cmF5dGVrLmNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOBjQAwgYkCgYEAyZELVTvBytix
OTSZSZQdw1Reltv1HnVwma/MFC0y9x+XEWNGK46jdGY1LSAvJTduHH9Oz4OMWx02G
mASVORtj7HbNodYn88p1xRrQFgk8nkbMLdAqb1Ooc/1sYN/smGb4N+Pho4VM01VO
dKiyAPfp/202OWsCddxh/HZ3Ys8m60CAwEAaAAAMAOGCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAA4GB
AGNB9071V44sgXwiWnXHJvdFLD0dwcQ01ZL1XRn+OVdheJjvaISCgiqzJQCkaDQ7
nacBqEc1W0chKzES0dyDc8mtIf7k+iO45SeuY7nxsWxvPIOn31JMJGMZvQSVrTTYu
sOvJGBHHwKSkUb1RAZL5xvHjDoMX16czT1ybedZSsrJw
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
```

## 5.10.2 Trusted CA Certificate

Trusted CA certificate lists three sets of trusted CA certificate.

[Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate](#)

### X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration

| Name         | Subject | Status | Modify               |                        |
|--------------|---------|--------|----------------------|------------------------|
| Trusted CA-1 | ---     | ---    | <a href="#">View</a> | <a href="#">Delete</a> |
| Trusted CA-2 | ---     | ---    | <a href="#">View</a> | <a href="#">Delete</a> |
| Trusted CA-3 | ---     | ---    | <a href="#">View</a> | <a href="#">Delete</a> |

[IMPORT](#)

[REFRESH](#)

To import a pre-saved trusted CA certificate, please click **IMPORT** to open the following window. Use **Browse...** to find out the saved text file. Then click **Import**. The one you imported will be listed on the Trusted CA Certificate window. Then click **Import** to use the pre-saved file.

[Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate](#)

### Import X509 Trusted CA Certificate

Select a trusted CA certificate file.

[Browse...](#)

Click [Import](#) to upload the certification.

[Import](#)

[Cancel](#)

For viewing each trusted CA certificate, click **View** to open the certificate detail information window. If you want to delete a CA certificate, choose the one and click **Delete** to remove all the certificate information.

|                           |              |
|---------------------------|--------------|
| Certificate Name:         | Trusted CA-1 |
| Issuer:                   |              |
| Subject:                  |              |
| Subject Alternative Name: |              |
| Valid From:               |              |
| Valid To:                 |              |

[Close](#)

### 5.10.3 Certificate Backup

Local certificate and Trusted CA certificate for this router can be saved within one file. Please click **Backup** on the following screen to save them. If you want to set encryption password for these certificates, please type characters in both fields of **Encrypt password** and **Confirm password**.

Also, you can use **Restore** to retrieve these two settings to the router whenever you want.

[Certificate Management >> Certificate Backup](#)

**Certificate Backup / Restoration**

**Backup**

Encrypt password:

Confirm password:

Click  to download certificates to your local PC as a file.

**Restoration**

Select a backup file to restore.

Decrypt password:

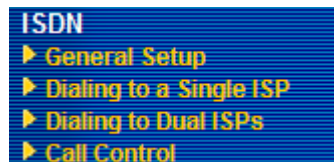
Click  to upload the file.

## 5.11 ISDN

### 5.11.1 Basic Concept

ISDN means integrated services digital network that is an international communications standard for sending voice, video, and data over digital telephone lines or normal telephone wires.

Below shows the menu items for ISDN.



Data call function is supported only when ISDN2 port is configured as ISDN-TE mode. In normal case, the ISDN2 port is configured as ISDN-TE mode in default. If it is configured as ISDN-S0 mode, the data call function will not be supported and **Dialing to a Single ISP**, **Dialing to Dual ISPs** and **Call Control** functions will not be available.

In addition, if ISDN1 port is configured as ISDN-TE mode and ISDN2 is configured as ISDN2-S0 mode, the data call function will not be supported and **Dialing to a Single ISP**, **Dialing to Dual ISPs** and **Call Control** functions will not be available, either.

5.11.2 General Setup

This page provides some basic ISDN settings such as enabling the ISDN port or not, MSN numbers and blocked MSN numbers, etc.

ISDN >> General Setup

ISDN Setup

ISDN Port

☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Country Code

International

D-Channel Mode

ISDN1

☐ Point-to-Point ☒ Point-to-Multipoint

ISDN2

☐ Point-to-Point ☒ Point-to-Multipoint

Own Number

"Own Number" means that the router will tell the remote end the ISDN number when it's placing an outgoing call.

Blocked MSN numbers for the router

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

| Index | MSN numbers for the router | Answer mode    | Phone CLIR/CLIP                                   |
|-------|----------------------------|----------------|---|
| 0.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9.    |                            | Auto Attendant | <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> |

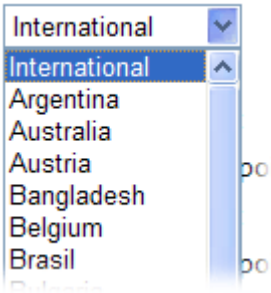
"MSN Numbers" means that the router is able to accept number-matched incoming calls. In addition, MSN service should be supported by the local ISDN network provider.

OK

Cancel

**ISDN Port** Click **Enable** to open the ISDN port and **Disable** to close it.

**Country Code** For proper operation on your local ISDN network, you should choose the correct country code.



**D-Channel Mode** It allows you to configure ISDN layer2 protocol as:  
**Point-to-Point** - Configure ISDN port to use static TEI

(Terminal Endpoint Identifier).

**Point-to-Multipoint** - Configure ISDN port to use Dynamic TEI.

**Own Number**

Enter your ISDN number. Every outgoing call will carry the number to the receiver.

**Blocked MSN Numbers for the router**

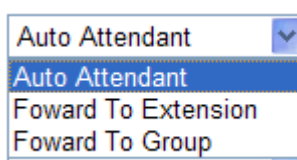
Enter the specified MSN number into the fields to prevent the router from dialing the specific MSN number.

**MSN Numbers for the Router**

**MSN Numbers** mean that the router is able to accept only number-matched incoming calls. In addition, MSN services should be supported by local ISDN network provider. The router provides three fields for MSN numbers. Note that MSN services must be acquired from your local telecommunication operators. By default, MSN function is disabled. If you leave the fields blank, all incoming calls will be accepted without number matching.

**Answer mode**

Specify the way to process incoming phone calls which matched the MSN number for router.



**Auto Attendant** - The incoming call would be picked by router automatically. You could hear IVR voice to remind you to dial extension number you want to reach.

**Forward to Extension** - The incoming call would be forwarded to the extension number you setup directly.

**Forward to Group** - If you have setup group extension number in web page "Hunt Group", the incoming call could be forwarded to the group extension number you selected.

**Phone CLIR/CLIP**

Check this box to hide or present the caller ID to remote user.

### Example:

Below shows an example of TE port MSN number:

| Index | MSN numbers<br>for the router | Answer mode         |                   | Phone<br>CLIR/CLIP                  |
|-------|-------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0.    | 5972727                       | Auto Attendant      |                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 1.    | 5972728                       | Foward To Extension | 1 - 100 Extension | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 2.    | 5972729                       | Foward To Group     | 1 - 300 Group     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 3.    |                               | Auto Attendant      |                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 4.    |                               | Auto Attendant      |                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 5.    |                               | Auto Attendant      |                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 6.    |                               | Auto Attendant      |                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 7.    |                               | Auto Attendant      |                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 8.    |                               | Auto Attendant      |                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 9.    |                               | Auto Attendant      |                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

"MSN Numbers" means that the router is able to accept number-matched incoming calls. In addition, MSN service should be supported by the local ISDN network provider.

Refer to the following explanation:

- If you setup "MSN numbers for the router" as the above figure, it means the Vigor router only accepts MSN numbers of **5972727 / 5972728 / 5972729**.
- If someone dials to the router with **5972727**, the call would be picked up automatically. You could hear IVR voice to remind you to dial the extension number you want to reach.
- If someone dials to the router with **5972728**, the call would be forwarded to extension 100 directly.
- If someone dials to the router with **5972729**, the call would be forwarded to group extension 300.
- If you use a phone with extension 100 to dial an ISDN call, the remote ISDN phone would see the **caller ID: 5972728** (for the Phone CLIP is checked).
- If you use any extension number included in Group extension 300 to dial an ISDN call, the remote ISDN phone would see the **caller ID: 5972729** (for the Phone CLIP is checked).



### 5.11.3 Dial to Single ISP

Select **Dialing to a Single ISP** if you access the Internet via a single ISP.

[ISDN >> Dialing to a Single ISP](#)

**Single ISP**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>ISP Access Setup</b>  | <b>PPP/MP Setup</b>   |
| ISP Name <input type="text"/>  | Link Type <input type="text" value="Dialup BOD"/>                                   |
| Dial Number <input type="text"/>   | PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/>                         |
| Username <input type="text"/>  | Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="180"/> second(s)                             |
| Password <input type="password"/>  | <b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Require ISP callback (CBCP)   | Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) |
| Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:   | Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/>   |
| => <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> |   |

OK

#### ISP Access Setup

**ISP Name** - Enter your ISP name such as Seednet, Hinet and so on.

**Dial Number** -Enter the ISDN access number provided by your ISP.

**Username** - Enter the username provided by your ISP.

**Password** - Enter the password provided by your ISP.

**Require ISP Callback (CBCP)** -If your ISP supports the callback function, check this box to activate the Callback Control Protocol during the PPP negotiation.

**Scheduler (1-15)** - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the Internet access according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **Applications>> Schedule** for detailed configuration.

#### PPP/MP Setup

**Link Type** – There are three link types provided here for different purpose. **Link Disable** disables the ISDN dial-out function. **Dialup 64Kbps** allows you to use one ISDN B channel for Internet access. **Dialup 128Kbps** allows you to use both ISDN B channels for Internet access. **Dialup BOD** stands for bandwidth-on-demand. The router will use only one B channel in low traffic situations. Once the single B channel bandwidth is fully used, the other B channel will be activated automatically through the dialup. For more detailed BOD parameter settings, please refer to the section of **Call Control**.

**PPP Authentication** - PAP only allows you to configure the PPP session to use the PAP protocol to negotiate the username and password with the ISP. **PAP or CHAP** is to configure the PPP session to use the PAP or CHAP protocols to negotiate the username and password with the ISP.

**Idle Timeout** - Idle timeout means the router will be

disconnect after being idle for a preset amount of time. The default is 180 seconds. If you set the time to 0, the ISDN connection to the ISP will always remain on.

**IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)**

In most environments, you should not change these settings as most ISPs provide a dynamic IP address for the router when it connects to the ISP. If your ISP provides a fixed IP address, check **Yes** and enter the IP address in the field of **Fixed IP Address**.

**5.11.4 Dial to Dual ISPs**

Select **Dialing to Dual ISPs** if you have more than one ISP. You will be able to dial to both ISPs at the same time. This is mainly for those ISPs that do not support Multiple-Link PPP (ML-PPP). In such cases, dialing to two ISPs can increase the bandwidth utilization of the ISDN channels to 128kbps data speed.

[ISDN >> Dialing to Dual ISPs](#)

Dual ISP

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Common Settings</b><br>1. <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Dual ISPs Function<br>2. <input type="checkbox"/> Require ISP callback (CBCP)  | <b>PPP/MP Setup</b><br>Link Type <input type="text" value="Dialup BOD"/><br>PPP Authentication <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/><br>Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="180"/> second(s)   |
| <b>Primary ISP Setup</b><br>ISP Name <input type="text"/><br>Dial Number <input type="text"/><br>Username <input type="text"/><br>Password <input type="text"/><br><b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b><br>Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)<br>Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/> | <b>Secondary ISP Setup</b><br>ISP Name <input type="text"/><br>Dial Number <input type="text"/><br>Username <input type="text" value="84005755@hinet.net"/><br>Password <input type="text" value="....."/><br><b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b><br>Fixed IP <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)<br>Fixed IP Address <input type="text"/> |

OK

**Common Settings**

**Enable Dual ISPs Function** - Check to enable the Dual ISPs function. **Require ISP Callback (CBCP)** -If your ISP supports the callback function, check this box to activate the Callback Control Protocol during the PPP negotiation.

**PPP/MP Setup**

**Link Type** – There are three link types provided here for different purpose. **Link Disable** disables the ISDN dial-out function. **Dialup 128Kbps** allows you to use both ISDN B channels for Internet access. **Dialup BOD** stands for bandwidth-on-demand. The router will use only one B channel in low traffic situations. Once the single B channel bandwidth is fully used, the other B channel will be activated automatically through the dialup.

**PPP Authentication** - PAP only allows you to configure the PPP session to use the PAP protocol to negotiate the username and password with the ISP. **PAP or CHAP** can

configure the PPP session to use the PAP or CHAP protocols to negotiate the username and password with the ISP.

**Idle Timeout** - Idle timeout means the router will be disconnect after being idle for a preset amount of time. The default is 180 seconds. If you set the time to 0, the ISDN connection to the ISP will always remain on.

#### **Primary ISP Setup**

**ISP Name** - Enter your ISP name.

**Dial Number** -Enter the ISDN access number provided by your ISP.

**Username** - Enter the username provided by your ISP.

**Password** - Enter the password provided by your ISP.

#### **IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) for primary ISP setup**

In most environments, you should not change these settings as most ISPs provide a dynamic IP address for the router when it connects to the ISP. If your ISP provides a fixed IP address, check **Yes** and enter the IP address in the field of **Fixed IP Address**.

#### **Secondary ISP Setup)**

**ISP Name** - Enter the secondary ISP name.

**Dial Number** -Enter the ISDN access number provided by the ISP.

**Username** - Enter the username provided by your ISP.

**Password** - Enter the password provided by your ISP.

#### **IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) for secondary ISP setup**

In most environments, you should not change these settings as most ISPs provide a dynamic IP address for the router when it connects to the ISP. If your ISP provides a fixed IP address, check **Yes** and enter the IP address in the field of **Fixed IP Address**.

### **5.11.5 Call Control**

Some applications require that the router be remotely activated, or be able to dial up to the ISP via the ISDN interface. Vigor routers provide this feature by allowing user to make a phone call to the router and then ask it to dial up to the ISP. Accordingly, a teleworker can access the remote network to retrieve resources. Of course, a fixed IP address is required for WAN connection and some internal network resource has to be exposed for remote users, such as FTP, and WWW.

**Call Control Setup**

|                     |  |                   |                      |
|---------------------|--|-------------------|----------------------|
| Dial Retry          | <input type="text" value="0"/> times     | Remote Activation | <input type="text"/> |
| Dial Delay Interval | <input type="text" value="0"/> second(s) |                   |                      |

**PPP/MP Dial-Out Setup**

| Basic Setup            |  | Bandwidth On Demand (BOD) Setup |   |
|------------------------|--|---------------------------------|---|
| Link Type              | <input type="text" value="Dialup BOD"/>    | High Water Mark                 | <input type="text" value="7000"/> cps     |
| PPP Authentication     | <input type="text" value="PAP or CHAP"/>   | High Water Time                 | <input type="text" value="30"/> second(s) |
| TCP Header Compression | <input type="text" value="None"/>          | Low Water Mark                  | <input type="text" value="6000"/> cps     |
| Idle Timeout           | <input type="text" value="180"/> second(s) | Low Water Time                  | <input type="text" value="30"/> second(s) |

OK

**Call Control Setup**

**Dial Retry** - It specifies the dial retry counts per triggered packet. A triggered packet is the packet whose destination is outside the local network. The default setting is no dial retry. If set to 5, for each triggered packet, the router will dial 5 times until it is connected to the ISP or remote access router.

**Dial Delay Interval** - It specifies the interval between dialup retries. By default, the interval is 0 second.

**Remote Activation** – It can help users who would like to access the server which is off the Internet in the head office. To remotely make the server to be available on the Internet, i.e. make the router in the head office activating its Internet access either by dialing-up or starting broadband connection, users can make a regular phone call (the number is set in the Remote Activation field) to the router as signaling it for activation. The phone call will be soon disconnected once the router is on line.

Note that **Dialing to a Single ISP** should be pre-configured properly.

**Basic Setup**

**Link Type** - Because ISDN has two B channels (64Kbps/per channel), you can specify whether you would like to have single B channel, two B channels or BOD (Bandwidth on Demand). Four options are available: Link Disable, Dialup 64Kbps, Dialup 128Kbps, Dialup BOD.

Link Type

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="text" value="Dialup BOD"/> | ▼ |
| Link Disable                            |   |
| Dialup 64Kbps                           |   |
| Dialup 128Kbps                          |   |
| Dialup BOD                              |   |

**PPP Authentication** - It specifies the PPP authentication method for PPP/MP connections. Normally you can set it to PAP/CHAP for better compatibility.

**TCP Header Compression - VJ Compression:** It is used

for TCP/IP protocol header compression. Normally it is set to Yes to improve bandwidth utilization.

**Idle Timeout** - Because our ISDN link type is **Dial On Demand**, the connection will be initiated only when needed.

### **Bandwidth-On-Demand (BOD) Setup**

Bandwidth-On-Demand is for Multiple-Link PPP (ML-PPP or MP). The parameters are only applied when you set the **Link Type** to **Dialup BOD**. The ISDN usually use one B channel to access the Internet or remote network when you choose the Dialup BOD link type. The router will use the parameters here to decide on when you activate/drop the additional B channel. Note that **cps** (characters-per-second) measures the total link utilization.

**High Water Mark and High Water Time** - These parameters specify the situation in which the second channel will be activated. With the first connected channel, if its utilization exceeds the High Water Mark and such a channel is being used over the High Water Time, the additional channel will be activated. Thus, the total link speed will be 128kbps (two B channels).

**Low Water Mark and Low Water Time** - These parameters specify the situation in which the second channel will be dropped. In terms of the two B channels, if their utilization is under the Low Water Mark and these two channels are being used over the High Water Time, the additional channel will be dropped. As a result, the total link speed will be 64kbps (one B channel).

## 5.12 IP PBX

IP PBX (**IP -Private Branch eXchange**) is a private telephone network used within an enterprise. Users of the PBX can share a certain number of outside lines for making telephone calls external to the PBX.

IP PBX integrates the benefits of VoIP and transfers the message from IP phone into the data that can be accepted by traditional PBX through IP network. It is a new platform that enterprises can use data network to deliver voice. Additionally, to move the IP phone set(s), users just need to plug into another network connector. Such thing simplifies the procedure of moving, increasing, changing and deleting phone settings; also it can join with other system such as CALL center to be a multi-functional communication platform. Moreover, it can save large cost in communication for the enterprise.

This menu can assist users to configure most of settings in IP PBX.

Below shows menu items for IP PBX:



## 5.12.1 Extension

The system allows you to set 50 extension numbers for ISDN/SIP/Phone call. Please open **IP PBX>>Extension** to get the following page.

### IP PBX >> Extension

#### Internal Phone Extension

| Index               | Ext. | Name | Email Address | Outgoing Call                                | Status |
|---------------------|------|------|---------------|--|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> | ---  | ---  |               | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | x      |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

Please click any number under Index to set detailed configuration.

### Internal Phone Extension Index 1

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Internal Phone Extension Active  | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable            |
| Extension Number   | <input type="text" value="---"/>   |
| Display Name   | <input type="text" value="---"/>   |
| Type   | <input type="text" value="SIP"/>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Authentication  |  |
| Password   | <input type="text" value="..."/>   |
| E-mail Address   | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>           |
| Voice mail Password  | <input type="text" value="..."/>   |
| MWI  |  |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Notify User who Subscribed  | <input type="radio"/> Force Notify User  |
| Outgoing Call Use  |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE |  |
| <b>Answer Mode</b>   |  |
| No answer after  | <input type="text" value="120"/> sec then <input type="text" value="Keep Ring"/> |
| Busy then  | <input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>  |
| Not on-line  | <input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>  |

### Internal Phone Extension Active

Click **Enable** to invoke such profile.

### Extension Number

Type the number of extension for such index.

### Display Name

Type a name as a display for this extension profile.

### Type

Determine the type for such extension profile.

**SIP** – Choose this type to make such extension profile available for general IP phone.

**ISDN** – Choose this type to make such extension profile available for ISDN phone call.

### Authentication

Check this box to make the IP PBX executing authentication while the number is dialed.

### Password

Type a number for the IP PBX to execute authentication. When an IP phone connects to network, IP PBX will use such password for authentication.

### E-mail Address

Type an e-mail address to receive media (voice) file sent by incoming calls.

**Send a test e-mail:** Click this button to send a test e-mail to the mail box you typed here.

### Voice Mail Password

Type a password here. When the user want to listen the voice mail, he/she muse use such password to open it.

## MWI (Message Waiting Indicator)

There are two types of MWI for users to choose. Please click the one according to the real application.

**Notify User who Subscribed** - The user needs to send out SUBSCRIBE message first. When IPPBX detects new voice message from some extension number or the condition of the voice message is changed, it will transfer “NOTIFY” message to the users within the valid time subscribed.

**Force Notify User**- The user does not send out SUBSCRIBE message automatically. The IPPBX will deliver “NOTIFY” message to the users if there is a new message or the user registers on IPPBX again.

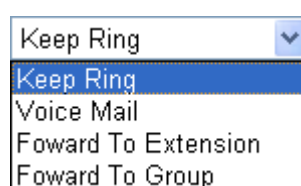
## Outgoing Call Use

There are six outside lines (SIP accounts) and two ISDN lines (available based on the Phone Setting configuration) for you to specify for such extension. Please check the one(s) you want.

## Answer Mode

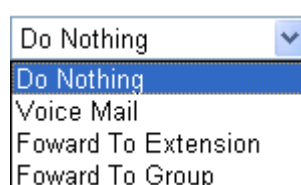
Specify the way to process incoming phone calls.

**No answer after** ..... – When the incoming phone call is not picked up, it will be processed by keeping, forwarding to certain extension or group. Please specify the waiting time and determine the way you want to process.



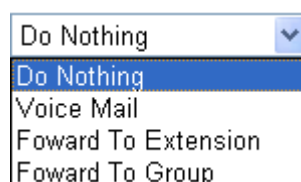
A dropdown menu with a blue arrow icon on the right. The menu is open, showing four options: 'Keep Ring' (highlighted in blue), 'Voice Mail', 'Forward To Extension', and 'Forward To Group'.

**Busy then** – When this extension number is busy, you can forward the incoming phone call to other extension number or group.



A dropdown menu with a blue arrow icon on the right. The menu is open, showing four options: 'Do Nothing' (highlighted in blue), 'Voice Mail', 'Forward To Extension', and 'Forward To Group'.

**Not on-line** – When this extension number is not online, you can forward the incoming phone call to other extension number or group.



A dropdown menu with a blue arrow icon on the right. The menu is open, showing four options: 'Do Nothing' (highlighted in blue), 'Voice Mail', 'Forward To Extension', and 'Forward To Group'.



**Note:** The fiftieth extension profile is dedicated to Phone type.

|                     |     |             |  |  |   |
|---------------------|-----|-------------|--|--|---|
| <a href="#">49.</a> | 903 | ISDN Phone1 |  | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | v |
| <a href="#">50.</a> | 901 | Phone       |  | SIP1 SIP2 SIP3<br>SIP4 SIP5 SIP6<br>ISDN2-TE | v |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >>

<< [Back](#)

In such page, you can configure settings to fit real requirement except for display name, type, authentication, password and not on-line.

#### IP PBX >> Extension Profile

##### Internal Phone Extension Index 50

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| Internal Phone Extension Active         |  | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| Extension Number                        | <input type="text" value="901"/>   |   |
| Display Name                            | <input type="text" value="Phone"/>   |   |
| Type                                    | <input type="text" value="Phone"/>   |   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Authentication |  |   |
| Password                                | <input type="password" value="..."/>   |   |
| E-mail Address                          | <input type="text"/>   | <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/>                     |
| Voice mail Password                     | <input type="password" value="..."/>   |   |
| MWI                                     | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Notify User who Subscribed <input type="radio"/> Force Notify User  |   |
| Outgoing Call Use                       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP4 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SIP6 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ISDN2-TE |   |
| <b>Answer Mode</b>                      |  |   |
| No answer after                         | <input type="text" value="120"/> sec then  | <input type="text" value="Keep Ring"/>                                |
| Busy then                               | <input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>  |   |
| Not on-line                             | <input type="text" value="Do Nothing"/>  |   |

## 5.12.2 Line Setting

There are six SIP outside lines and one ISDN line provided by this IP PBX device. Users can set them respectively from SIP Trunk and ISDN Trunk.

[IP PBX >> Line Setting](#)

[Line Setting](#)

[SIP Trunk](#)

[ISDN Trunk](#)

DID (Direct Inward Dialing) is a service provided by SIP providers. It allows one main SIP account (**SIP Trunk**) attached with several sub-accounts (defined in **Alias List** under **SIP Trunk**). When the main accounts have been registered on VigorIPPBX 2820, it means the router owns these sub-accounts at the same time. That is, people can dial main SIP accounts or sub-accounts via VigorIPPBX 2820.

### 5.12.2.1 SIP Trunk

This page allows you to set profiles for 6 SIP outside lines (main account) at one time with 50 alias names (sub account).

[IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List](#)

[SIP Trunk List](#)

Refresh Seconds:

[Refresh](#)

| Index              | Profile Name | Domain/Realm | Proxy | Account Number/Name | Trunk Number | Status |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|-------|---------------------|--------------|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 001          | -      |
| <a href="#">2.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 002          | -      |
| <a href="#">3.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 003          | -      |
| <a href="#">4.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 004          | -      |
| <a href="#">5.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 005          | -      |
| <a href="#">6.</a> |              |              |       |                     | 006          | -      |

R:Success registered on SIP server  
-:Fail to register on SIP server

[Alias List](#)

|                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <b>Profile Name</b>        | Display the name for such main account.  |
| <b>Domain/Realm</b>        | Display domain name or IP address of the SIP <b>Registrar</b> server.                    |
| <b>Proxy</b>               | Display the domain name or IP address of SIP <b>proxy</b> server.                        |
| <b>Account Number/Name</b> | Display the account name of SIP Address.   |
| <b>Trunk Number</b>        | Display the short number for such account.   |
| <b>Status</b>              | Display current status for the account (successful registration or failed registration). |
| <b>Alias List</b>          | Allows you to set sub accounts for the main accounts in SIP Trunk.                       |

Please click any number under Index to set detailed configuration.

## IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List

### SIP Trunk Index 1

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Profile Name                               | <input type="text"/>                           |
| Register via                               | None ▾   |
| SIP Local Port                             | 5070   |
| Domain/Reallm                              | <input type="text"/>                           |
| Proxy                                      | <input type="text"/>                           |
| Proxy Port                                 | 5060   |
| Display Name                               | <input type="text"/>                           |
| Account Number/Name                        | <input type="text"/>                           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Authentication ID | <input type="text"/>                           |
| Password                                   | <input type="text"/>                           |
| Expiry Time                                | 1 hour ▾ <input type="text" value="3600"/> sec |
| Trunk number                               | 001  |
| Office hours answer mode                   | Auto Attendant ▾                               |
| Non-Office hours answer mode               | Auto Attendant ▾                               |

**Note:** SIP Local Port can not be equal to PBX Proxy Port.

OK Cancel

#### Profile Name

Assign a name for this profile for identifying. You can type similar name with the domain. For example, if the domain name is *draytel.org*, then you might set *draytel-1* in this field.

#### Register via

If you want to make VoIP call without register personal information, please choose **None** and check the box to achieve the goal. Some SIP server allows user to use VoIP function without registering. Choosing **Auto** is recommended. The system will select a proper way for your VoIP call.

|        |
|--------|
| None ▾ |
| None   |
| Auto   |
| WAN1   |
| WAN2   |

#### SIP Port

Set the port number for sending/receiving SIP message for building a session. The default value is **6060**. Your peer must set the same value in his/her Registrar.

#### Domain/Realm

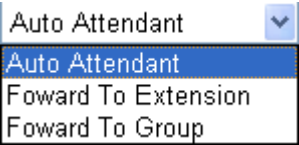
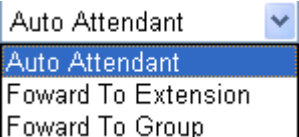
Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server.

#### Proxy

Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server. By the time you can type **:port number** after the domain name to specify that port as the destination of data transmission (e.g., **nat.draytel.org:5065**)

#### Proxy Port

Set port number for the proxy server.

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Display Name</b>                 | The caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen.  |
| <b>Account Number/Name</b>          | Enter your account name of SIP Address, e.g. every text before @..  |
| <b>Authentication ID</b>            | Check the box to invoke this function and enter the name or number used for SIP Authorization with SIP Registrar. If this setting value is the same as Account Name, it is not necessary for you to check the box and set any value in this field.  |
| <b>Password</b>                     | The password provided to you when you registered with a SIP service.  |
| <b>Expiry Time</b>                  | It is the time duration that your SIP Registrar server keeps your registration record. Before the time expires, the router will send another register request to SIP Registrar again.   |
| <b>Trunk Number</b>                 | There are two ways to dial outside lines for an extension number. First, dial a short number and wait for a while. When dial tone appears, please dial the real outside line number. Second, dial a short number and then the real outside line number without waiting for dial tone. The short number is defined here as Trunk Number. |
| <b>Office hours answer mode</b>     | <p>Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p>   |
| <b>Non-office hours answer mode</b> | <p>Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.</p>   |

## Alias List

Click the **Alias List** link to access into the configuration page as shown below.

## Alias List

| Index               | Profile Name | Number | Office Hours   | Non Office Hours | Active | Trunk |
|---------------------|--------------|--------|----------------|------------------|--------|-------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |              |        | Auto Attendant | Auto Attendant   | No     |       |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) | [21-30](#) | [31-40](#) | [41-50](#) >>[Next](#) >>

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Profile Name</b>     | Display the alias name for such sub account.                             |
| <b>Number</b>           | Display the phone number of such account.                                |
| <b>Office Hours</b>     | Display the selected answer mode for office hours.                       |
| <b>Non Office Hours</b> | Display the selected answer mode for non office hours.                   |
| <b>Active</b>           | Display current activation status for such account, enabled or disabled. |
| <b>Trunk</b>            | Display the SIP Trunk for such sub account attached.                     |

You can set 50 profiles as alias for SIP Trunk list. Click the number under Index to set detailed configuration.

## IP PBX &gt;&gt; Alias

## Alias 1.

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Active                       | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |
| Alias Name                   | <input type="text"/>  |
| Alias Number                 | <input type="text"/>  |
| Alias of SIP Trunk           | 1 - ??? <input type="button" value="v"/>                              |
| <b>Answer Mode</b>           |   |
| Office hours answer mode     | Auto Attendant <input type="button" value="v"/>                       |
| Non-Office hours answer mode | Auto Attendant <input type="button" value="v"/>                       |




|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>Active</b>             | Click <b>Enable</b> to activate this entry. Or, click <b>Disable</b> to inactive this entry. |
| <b>Alias</b>              | Type a name for such account.  |
| <b>Alias Number</b>       | Type a number for such account.  |
| <b>Alias of SIP Trunk</b> | Choose one of the items listed in SIP Trunk List for this alias profile.                     |

**Office hours answer mode** Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.

Auto Attendant ▼

Auto Attendant

Foward To Extension

Foward To Group

**Non-office hours answer mode** Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.

Auto Attendant ▼

Auto Attendant

Foward To Extension

Foward To Group

### 5.12.2.2 ISDN Trunk

This page allows you to set profile for ISDN outside line.

#### IP PBX >> ISDN Trunk

##### ISDN Trunk

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| Office hours answer mode                      | Auto Attendant ▼ |
| Non-Office hours answer mode                  | Auto Attendant ▼ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> ISDN Trunk Auto Hunt | 666              |

OK Cancel

**Office hours answer mode** Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.

Auto Attendant ▼

Auto Attendant

Foward To Extension

Foward To Group

**Non-office hours answer mode** Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.

AA ▼

AA

Foward To Extension

Foward To Group

**ISDN Trunk Auto Hunt** When both ISDN ports set to TE mode, you can specify an auto hunt number. When people want to dialing to I SDN network via this number by using extension, the router will auto hunt an available line for it.

# 5.12.3 Dial Plan

IP PBX >> Dial Plan

Dial Plan Configuration

[Digit Map](#)  
[Call Barring](#)

## 5.12.3.1 Digit Map

For the convenience of user, this page allows users to edit prefix number for the SIP account with adding number, stripping number or replacing number. It is used to help user having a quick and easy way to dial out through VoIP interface.

IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

Digit Map Setup

| #  | Enable                              | Prefix Number | Mode    | OP Number | Min Len | Max Len | Route    |
|----|-------------------------------------|---------------|---------|-----------|---------|---------|----------|
| 1  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 886           | None    | 886       | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 2  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 3  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | Add     |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 4  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | Strip   |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 5  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | Replace |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 6  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 7  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 8  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 9  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 17 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 18 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 19 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |
| 20 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |               | None    |           | 0       | 0       | ISDN2-TE |

**Note:** The length for Min Len and Max Len fields should be between 0~25.

Tips for One stage dialing for trunk line:

- 1. Set the mode to "Strip".
- 2. Let the OP number and Prefix number be the same.
- 3. Set a suitable range for the length fields.
- 4. Select a specific route for this rule.

For example, set op number and prefix number to 1, and set the route to VoIP1. When an extension dial "12345", PBX will dial "2345" to the route of VoIP1.

**Enable**

Check this box to invoke this setting.

**Prefix Number**

It is used to match with the number you dialed and can be modified with the **OP Number** by the mode (add, strip or replace).

**Mode**

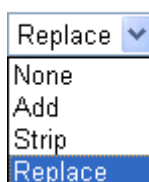
**None** - No action.

**Add** - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be added before the prefix number for calling out through the specific route.

**Strip** - When you choose this mode, partial or the whole prefix number will be deleted according to the OP number. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the OP number of 886 will be deleted completely for the prefix number is set with 886.

**Replace** - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be replaced by the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the prefix number of 03 will be replaced by 8863. For example: dial number of “031111111” will be changed to “8863111111” and sent to SIP server.

Mode



**OP Number**

The front number you type here is the first part of the account number that you want to execute special function (according to the chosen mode) by using the prefix number.

**Min Len**

Set the minimal length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, if the dial number is between 7 and 9, that number can apply the prefix number settings here.

**Max Len**

Set the maximum length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings.

**Interface**

Choose the one that you want to enable the prefix number settings from the saved SIP accounts. Please set up one SIP account first to make this interface available. This item will be changed according to the port settings configured in **IP PBX>>PBX System>>Phone Settings** and **IP PBX>>Line Settings>>SIP Trunk**.

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

#### Phone List

| Index | Port     | Call Feature | Codec    | T  |
|-------|----------|--------------|----------|----|
| 1     | Phone    | CW,CT,       | G.729A/B | De |
| 2     | ISDN1-S0 |              | G.729A/B | De |
| 3     | ISDN2-TE |              | G.729A/B | De |



Refresh Seconds:  | [Refresh](#) |

| Account Number/Name | Trunk Number | Status |
|---------------------|--------------|--------|
|                     | 001          | -      |
|                     | 002          | -      |
|                     | 003          | -      |
|                     | 004          | -      |
|                     | 005          | -      |
|                     | 006          | -      |

### 5.12.3.2 Call Barring

Call barring is used to block phone calls coming from the one that is not welcomed.

[IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup](#)

**Call Barring Setup** | [Set to Factory Default](#) |

| Index               | Call Direction | Barring Type | Barring Number/URL/URI | Interface | Schedule | Status |
|---------------------|----------------|--------------|------------------------|-----------|----------|--------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |                |              |                        |           |          | X      |

<< [1-10](#) | [11-20](#) >>

[Next](#) >>

**Advanced:**  
[Block Anonymous](#)  
[Block Unknown Domain](#)

Click any index number to display the dial plan setup page.

[IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup](#)

**Call Barring Index No. 1**

☒ Enable

Call Direction

IN

Barring Type

Specific URI/URL

Specific URI/URL

Interface

1-???

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup

All ISDN2-TE

,  ,

OK

1-???

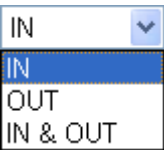
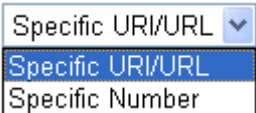
2-???

3-???

4-???

5-???

6-???

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Enable</b>                           | Click this to enable this entry.   |
| <b>Call Direction</b>                   | Determine the direction for the phone call, IN – incoming call, OUT-outgoing call, IN & OUT – both incoming and outgoing calls.<br> |
| <b>Barring Type</b>                     | Determine the type of the VoIP phone call, URI/URL or number. It will bring out different setting options.<br>                      |
| <b>Specific Number/Specific URI/URL</b> | This field will be changed based on the type you selected for barring Type. Please type numbers or URI/URL   |
| <b>Interface</b>                        | “All” means all the phone calls (including ISDN1/2 & SIP) will be blocked with such mechanism. Or you can specify certain port to be blocked by choosing from the drop down list.                                    |
| <b>Index (1-15) in Schedule</b>         | Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the call barring according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section <b>Application &gt;&gt;Schedule</b> for detailed configuration.                          |

Additionally, you can set advanced settings for call barring such as **Block Anonymous**, **Block Unknown Domain** or **Block IP Address**. Simply click the relational links to open the web page.

For **Block Anonymous** – this function can block the incoming calls without caller ID on the interface specified in the following window. Such controlling also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

#### IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

##### Call Barring Block Anonymous

☒ Enable

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup
  ,  ,  ,

**Note:**Block the incoming calls which do not have the caller ID.

OK Cancel

For **Block Unknown Domain** – this function can block incoming calls from unrecognized domain that is not specified in SIP accounts. Such controlling also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

## IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

### Call Barring Block Unknown Domain

☒ Enable

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup

, , , 

**Note:** If the domain of the incoming call is different from the domain found in SIP accounts, the call should be blocked.

OK

Cancel

## 5.12.4 PBX System

This page allows you to set relational (advanced) settings for PBX

### IP PBX >> PBX System

#### PBX System

[SIP Proxy Setting](#)

[Hunt Group](#)

[Voice Mail Configuration](#)

[Office Hours](#)

[Auto Attendant Wizard](#)

[Prompt Maintenance](#)

[Phone Setting](#)

### 5.12.4.1 SIP Proxy Setting

To make the IP phone to be registered in IP PBX device successfully, it is necessary for the users to configure settings in this page.

### IP PBX >> PBX System

#### SIP Proxy Setting

|                       |                                      |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| SIP Local Port        | <input type="text" value="5060"/>    |
| SIP Proxy Realm       | <input type="text" value="PBX.com"/> |
| Parking Server Number | <input type="text" value="777"/>     |
| RTP Local Port Start  | <input type="text" value="15050"/>   |
| RTP Local Port End    | <input type="text" value="20000"/>   |

OK

Cancel

#### SIP Local Port

Set a port number as SIP local port. The default setting is 5060.

#### SIP Proxy Realm

Type SIP service domain name. In full SIP URI, such is the part after @ symbol.

#### Parking Server Number

This number is used to communicate with the parking server and invoke the parking function. The default setting number is "777".

1. When you receive a phone call and need to go to the remote end to talk with the same caller, you have to hold the phone call and transfer the call to this number from

VoIP phone set.

2. The parking server will give you another voice number (e.g., your parking number is XXXX).

Please remember it and hang up the phone set.

3. Next, use another phone set in remote end to communicate with that caller again by dialing the voice number (XXXX).

**RTP Local Port Start/  
RTP Local Port End**

If your VoIP service provider gave you such information, please type the port number for RTP traffic. Otherwise, keep the default setting. For one port number used, type the same port number in RTP Local Port Start and RTP Local Port End fields. To set a range for port numbers type different port numbers in RTP Local Port Start and RTP Local Port End fields.

### 5.12.4.2 Hunt Group

This page allows you to make several extension numbers under certain group. Thus, when a phone call comes, all the extension numbers under such group will ring.

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

#### Hunt Group

| Index               | Group Name | Group Extension | Hunt List (Max 20 Extension) |
|---------------------|------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| <a href="#">1.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">2.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">3.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">4.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">5.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">6.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">7.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">8.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">9.</a>  |            |                 |                              |
| <a href="#">10.</a> |            |                 |                              |

**Index**

You can set 10 groups for using in different conditions. Simply click the number under Index to specify detailed information.

**Group Name**

Display the name of such group.

**Group Extension**

Display the extension number of such group.

**Hunt List**

Display the members inside the group.

Click any index number to display the hunt group setup page.

### Hunt Groups Index 1

Hunt Group Name

Hunt Group Extension

Hunt Rule

**Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Member:20)**

| Available            |  | Chosen |
|----------------------|--|--------|
| 34 - ---             | <input type="button" value="Add &gt;&gt;"/><br><input type="button" value="Add All"/><br><input type="button" value="Remove &lt;&lt;"/><br><input type="button" value="Remove All"/><br><input type="button" value="Move Up"/><br><input type="button" value="Move Down"/> |        |
| 35 - ---             |  |        |
| 36 - ---             |  |        |
| 37 - ---             |  |        |
| 38 - ---             |  |        |
| 39 - ---             |  |        |
| 40 - ---             |  |        |
| 41 - ---             |  |        |
| 42 - ---             |  |        |
| 43 - ---             |  |        |
| 44 - ---             |  |        |
| 45 - ---             |  |        |
| 46 - ---             |  |        |
| 47 - ---             |  |        |
| 48 - ---             |  |        |
| 49 - ---             |  |        |
| 50 - ---             |  |        |
| 51 - FXS PHONE-901   |  |        |
| 52 - ISDN PHONE1-903 |  |        |

**Hunt Group Name**

Type suitable name for such group.

**Hunt Group Extension**

Type extension number for such group.

**Hunt Rule**

Use the drop down menu to choose rule for such group.

**Simultaneously** – Choose such rule can make all the phones in the groups ring while receiving incoming calls.

**Sequentially** - Choose such rule can make all the phones in the groups ring one by one while receiving incoming calls.

**Add>>**

Click this button to move the selected item in Available area to Chosen area.

**Add All**

Click this button to move all of the items in Available area to Chosen area.

**Remove<<**

Click this button to move the selected item in Chosen area to Available area.

**Remove All**

Click this button to clear all of the selections in Chosen area.

**Move Up**

Click this button to move the selected item to the upper place.

**Move Down**

Click this button to move the selected item to the lower place.

### 5.12.4.3 Voice Mail Configuration

This page allows users to set actions for voices mails.

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

#### Voice Mail Configuration

|  |                                     |              |
|--|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| Extension for checking messages                                  | <input type="text" value="888"/>    | (20 ~ 65535) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Send Voice Message by Email             |                                     |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Delete Voice Message after Sending Mail |                                     |              |
| Day for keeping voice mail                                       | <input type="text" value="3"/>      | (1~7)        |
| Maximum messages time  | <input type="text" value="30 Sec"/> |              |
| <b>Mail Voice-Mail Setup</b>                                     |                                     |              |
| SMTP Server  | <input type="text"/>                |              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Authentication                          |                                     |              |
| User Name  | <input type="text"/>                |              |
| Password   | <input type="text"/>                |              |

#### Extension for checking messages

The number specified here is used for the user to listen personal voice mail from IP PBX device.

#### Send Voice Message by Email

IP PBX can send the voice mail to the specified e-mail address for the incoming call if you check this box.

**Delete Voice Message after Sending Mail** - IP PBX can send the voice mail to the specified e-mail address for the incoming call directly and delete the temporary file in IP PBX if you check this box.

#### Days for keeping voice mail

Type the days for keeping each voice mail.

#### Maximum message time

Type the recording length for each voice mail.

#### SMTP Server

Type IP address or domain name for the server specified for receiving voice messages.

#### Authentication

Check this box to authenticate the mail server.

#### User Name

Type a name for IP PBX to authenticate the mail server automatically while connecting.

#### Password

Type a password for IP PBX to authenticate the mail server automatically while connecting.

#### 5.12.4.4 Office Hours

You can set ten groups of office hours including starting point, ending point on duty day(s).

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

##### Office Hours

| Index | Enable                              | Office Hour Start (HHMM) | Office Hour End (HHMM) | Weekdays   |
|-------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|--|
| 1     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 02 25                    | 04 25                  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat |
| 2     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |
| 3     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |
| 4     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |
| 5     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |
| 6     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |
| 7     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |
| 8     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |
| 9     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |
| 10    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | 00 00                    | 00 00                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Sun <input type="checkbox"/> Mon <input type="checkbox"/> Tue <input type="checkbox"/> Wed <input type="checkbox"/> Thu <input type="checkbox"/> Fri <input type="checkbox"/> Sat                       |

##### Holiday Setting

| Month | Date |
|-------|------|
| 1     |      |
| 2     |      |
| 3     |      |
| 4     |      |
| 5     |      |
| 6     |      |
| 7     |      |
| 8     |      |
| 9     |      |
| 10    |      |
| 11    |      |
| 12    |      |

##### Office Hour Start

Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the starting point.

##### Office Hour End

Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the ending point.

##### Weekdays

Check the day(s) to apply the office hour for that index.

##### Date

Specify date(s) for applying the office hour settings in holiday, for example, type 2,4 6 & 7 in the field of Date for Month 1. It means January 2,4,6 & 7 will apply the office hour settings configured in this page.

### 5.12.4.5 Auto Attendant Wizard

The first page is configured for phone calls in office hours.

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

#### Auto Attendant Wizard - Office Hours

Caller calls Auto Attendant

Auto Attendant answers the call, plays office hours greeting (prompt 5), and waits for caller input

| Key | Action                 |
|-----|------------------------|
| 0   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 1   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 2   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 3   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 4   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 5   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 6   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 7   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 8   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 9   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |

Click **Next**. The second page is configured for phone calls in non-office hours.

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

#### Auto Attendant Wizard - Non-Office Hours

Caller calls Auto Attendant

Auto Attendant answers the call, plays non-office hours greeting (prompt 6), and waits for caller input

| Key | Action                 |
|-----|------------------------|
| 0   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 1   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 2   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 3   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 4   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 5   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 6   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 7   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 8   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |
| 9   | Ring Extension 1 - --- |

< Back

Next >

Cancel

#### Key 0-9

Key 0 is fixed with Ring Extension.

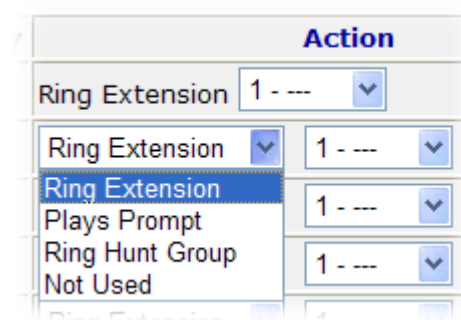
Key 1 – 9 can be set with different actions.

#### Action

Drop down menu 1 contains Ring Extension /Plays



Prompt/Ring Hunt Group/Not Used.



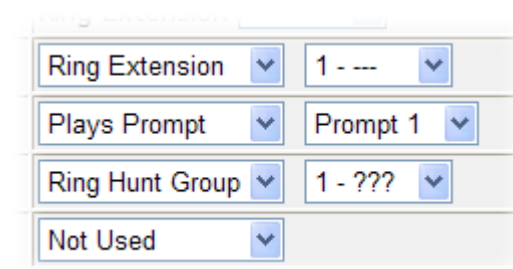
**Ring Extension** - Only the extension number selected here will ring.

**Plays Prompt** - Audio file will be played automatically.

**Ring Hunt Group** – Only the extension number within the Hunt Group will ring.

**Not Used** – Nothing will be done for the key.

Drop down menu 2 contains extension name (ex. Tom, Mike)] or prompt [Prompt 1~ Prompt 10, audio files] or Hunt Group Name [(ex. Sales, RD2)]. It will be changed according to drop down menu 1.



Finally, the following window will appear.

#### IP PBX >> PBX System

##### Auto Attendant Wizard - Record Prompts

Please enter \*\*\*\* and to XXXX access IVR and auto-attendant message menu.

You can record the office hours and non-office hour greetings or other prompts.

**Prompt 5** is used as office hours greeting.

**Prompt 6** is used as non-office hours greeting.

**Prompt 7** is used as specific purposes.

< Back

OK

Cancel

#### 5.12.4.6 Prompt Maintenance

The IP PBX system provides several audio files for users to choose for playing. Moreover, users can upload other audio files from USB storage or hard disk or others to make the IP PBX system playing. Users can record audio files and upload to router or download to PC. However, the file format of the audio file must follow the rule stated on the web page. Users

can record the audio files through a phone set connected to the router or use audio record program on PC.

## IP PBX >> PBX System

### Prompt Maintenance

#### Download

Prompt G711 01

Back Up

#### Upload

Browse..

Restore

**Note:** The file name follows a pre-defined rule:

System Prompt File: v2820pbx\_sysprompt.ivr ;

User Prompt File: v2820pbx\_g711\_userpromptXX.wav; XX: 01~10 ;

If g711 Prompt File is upload, we will generate related G729 Prompt File automatically. But we can not generate G711 Prompt file based on G729 Prompt file;

Supported wav file format, the length of time is 75 sec at most.

| Codec      | Channels     | Sample rate   | Bits |
|------------|--------------|---|------|
| Linear PCM | Stereo, Mono | 8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k | 16   |
| A-law g711 | Stereo, Mono | 8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k | 8    |
| u-law g711 | Stereo, Mono | 8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k | 8    |

### Download

The audio file can be saved with IVR file format or WAV file format. In general, it will be saved in the router's memory after you record it. To back up the audio file(s) (saved in FLASH of the router) to your computer, please choose the one you want from the drop-down menu and click **Back Up**.

#### Download

- Prompt G711 01
- Prompt G711 01
  - Prompt G711 02
  - Prompt G711 03
  - Prompt G711 04
  - Prompt G711 05
  - Prompt G711 06
  - Prompt G711 07
  - Prompt G711 08
  - Prompt G711 09
  - Prompt G711 10
  - Prompt G729 01
  - Prompt G729 02
  - Prompt G729 03
  - Prompt G729 04
  - Prompt G729 05
  - Prompt G729 06
  - Prompt G729 07
  - Prompt G729 08
  - Prompt G729 09
  - Prompt G729 10
  - System Prompt G711
  - System Prompt G729

Prompt 1 to prompt 10 will be used for user-defined audio files (file format must be .WAV). System Prompt file is provided by router firmware.

### Upload

System Prompt file is provided by router firmware. To use such audio file, you have to upload it to flash memory of the router after finishing firmware update.

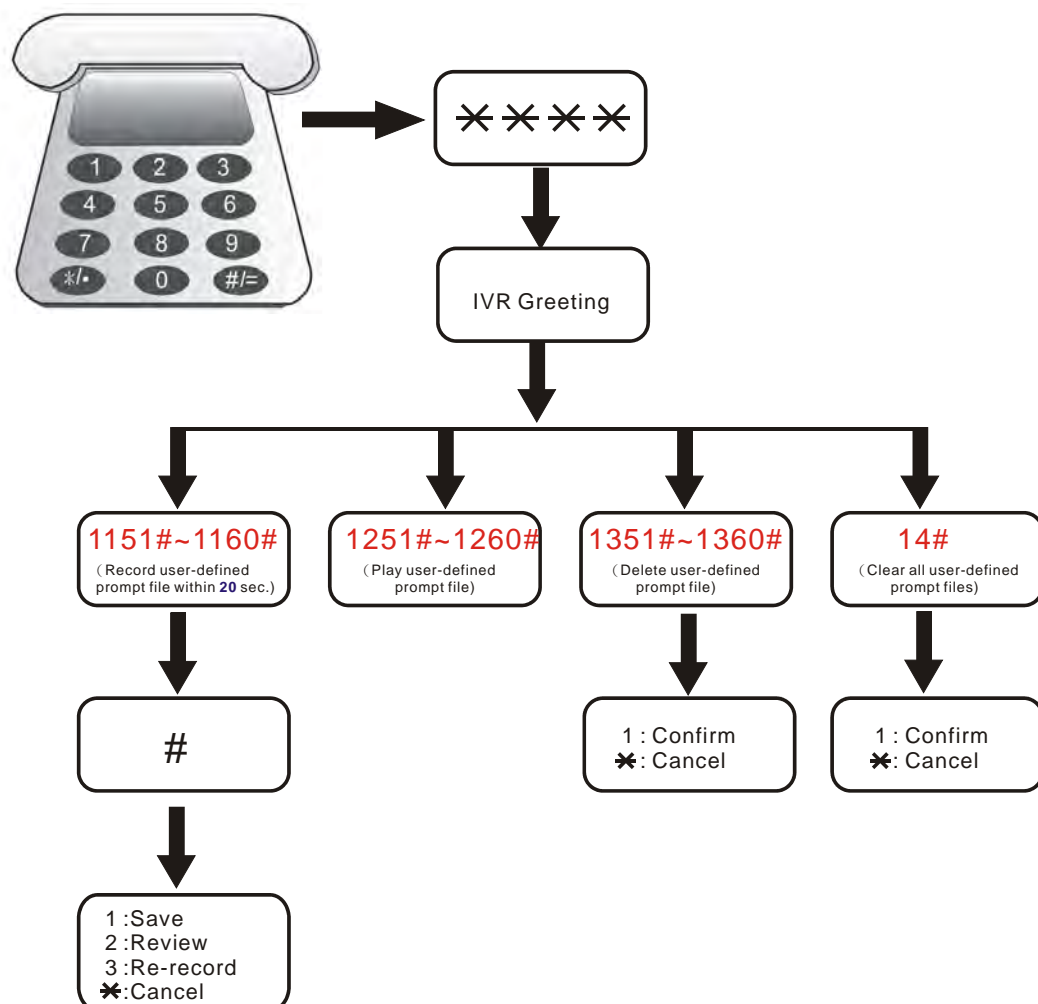
Click this **Browse** button to browse and choose other audio files.

### Restore

Click this button to save the file to the router. Next time, the audio file will be played in IP PBX system.

## Record audio file

Below shows a flow chart for using a phone set to record audio file.



### 5.12.4.7 Phone Setting

This page allows user to set phone settings.

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

#### Phone List

| Index             | Port       | Call Feature | Codec    | Tone         | Gain (Mic/Speaker) | Extension Number | DTMF Relay |
|-------------------|------------|--------------|----------|--------------|--------------------|------------------|------------|
| <a href="#">1</a> | Phone      | CW,CT,       | G.729A/B | User Defined | 5/5                | 901              | OutBand    |
| <a href="#">2</a> | ISDN1-S0 ▾ |              | G.729A/B | User Defined | 5/5                | 903              | OutBand    |
| <a href="#">3</a> | ISDN2-TE ▾ |              | G.729A/B | User Defined | 5/5                | 904              | OutBand    |

#### RTP

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Symmetric RTP |  |
| Dynamic RTP Port Start                 | <input type="text" value="10050"/>   |
| Dynamic RTP Port End                   | <input type="text" value="15000"/>   |
| RTP TOS                                | <input type="text" value="IP precedence 5"/> <input type="text" value="10100000"/> |
| VoIP Collection Timer                  | <input type="text" value="4"/> sec   |
| VoIP Collection Timer Length           | <input type="text" value="4"/>   |

OK

#### Phone List

**Port** – There are three phone ports provided here for you to configure. One (Index 1) is fixed and two (Index 2 & 3) are configurable. **Phone** port allows you to set general settings for analog phones. **ISDN** port allows you to set common settings for ISDN network connection. ISDN1 and ISDN2 port are configurable. Please use the drop down list to choose **ISDN1/2-TE** for Internet connection or choose **ISDN1/2-S0** (ISDN intern) for ISDN phone. In addition, you can connect six phones to this router in certain case. Please refer to **Section 1-4** for detailed information of ISDN phone/network connection.

**Call Feature** – A brief description for call feature will be shown in this field for your reference.

**Codec** – The default Codec setting for each port will be shown in this field for your reference. You can click the number below the Index field to change it for each phone port.

**Tone** - Display the tone settings that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.

**Gain** - Display the volume gain settings for Mic/Speaker that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.

**Default SIP Account** – “draytel\_1” is the default SIP account. You can click the number below the Index field to change SIP account for each phone port.

**DTMF Relay** – Display DTMF mode that configured in

## RTP

the advanced settings page of Phone Index.

**Symmetric RTP** – Check this box to invoke the function. To make the data transmission going through on both ends of local router and remote router not misleading due to IP lost (for example, sending data from the public IP of remote router to the private IP of local router), you can check this box to solve this problem.

**Dynamic RTP Port Start** - Specifies the start port for RTP stream. The default value is 10050.

**Dynamic RTP Port End** - Specifies the end port for RTP stream. The default value is 15000.

**RTP TOS** – It decides the level of VoIP package. Use the drop down list to choose any one of them.

RTP TOS

Manual  
IP precedence 1  
IP precedence 2  
IP precedence 3  
IP precedence 4  
IP precedence 5  
IP precedence 6  
IP precedence 7  
AF Class1 (Low Drop)  
AF Class1 (Medium Drop)  
AF Class1 (High Drop)  
AF Class2 (Low Drop)  
AF Class2 (Medium Drop)  
AF Class2 (High Drop)  
AF Class3 (Low Drop)  
AF Class3 (Medium Drop)  
AF Class3 (High Drop)  
AF Class4 (Low Drop)  
AF Class4 (Medium Drop)  
AF Class4 (High Drop)  
EF Class  
Manual

**VoIP Collection Timer** – Not available.

**VoIP Collection Timer Length** - Not available.

## Detailed Settings for Phone Port

Click the number link of Phone port, you can access into the following page for configuring Phone settings. Below is the sample page for Phone port.

[IP PBX >> PBX System](#)

**Phone**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Call Feature</b>   | <b>Codecs</b>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Hotline <input type="text"/>                                     | Prefer Codec <input type="text" value="G.729A/B (8Kbps)"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer <input type="text" value="90"/> sec                | <input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec                      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> DND(Do Not Disturb) Mode   | Packet Size <input type="text" value="20ms"/>              |
| Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:  | Voice Active Detector <input type="text" value="Off"/>     |
| <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> |  |
| <b>Note:</b> Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.                            |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> CLIR (hide caller ID)  |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Call Waiting  |  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Call Transfer   |  |

### Hotline

Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set.

### Session Timer

Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.

### DND (Do Not Disturb) Mode

Set a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call. During the period, the one who dial in will listen busy tone, yet the local user will not listen any ring tone.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule** - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the DND mode according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **Applications>> Schedule** for detailed configuration.

### CLIR (hide caller ID)

Check this box to hide the caller ID on the display panel of the phone set.

### Call Waiting

Check this box to invoke this function. A notice sound will appear to tell the user new phone call is waiting for your response. Click hook flash to pick up the waiting phone call.

### Call Transfer

Check this box to invoke this function. Click hook flash to initiate another phone call. When the phone call connection succeeds, hang up the phone. The other two sides can communicate, then.

### Codecs

**Prefer Codec** - Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining

good voice quality.

If the upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.

Prefer Codec

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| G.711A (64Kbps)   | ▼ |
| G.711MU (64Kbps)  |   |
| G.711A (64Kbps)   |   |
| G.729A/B (8Kbps)  |   |
| G.723 (6.4kbps)   |   |
| G.726_32 (32kbps) |   |

**Single Codec** – If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.

**Packet Size** - The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.

Packet Size

|      |   |
|------|---|
| 20ms | ▼ |
| 10ms |   |
| 20ms |   |
| 30ms |   |
| 40ms |   |
| 50ms |   |
| 60ms |   |

**Voice Active Detector** - This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to invoke this function; click off to close the function.

Voice Active Detector

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| Off | ▼ |
| Off |   |
| On  |   |

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC and DTMF mode. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.

## Advance Settings &gt;&gt; Phone1

| Tone Settings   |                |                |               |                |               |                |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| Region          | User Defined ▼ |                |               |                |               |                |
|                 | Low Freq (Hz)  | High Freq (Hz) | T on 1 (msec) | T off 1 (msec) | T on 2 (msec) | T off 2 (msec) |
| Dial tone       | 350            | 440            | 0             | 0              | 0             | 0              |
| Ringing tone    | 400            | 450            | 400           | 200            | 400           | 2000           |
| Busy tone       | 400            | 0              | 375           | 375            | 0             | 0              |
| Congestion tone | 0              | 0              | 0             | 0              | 0             | 0              |

|                       |    |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|----|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Volume Gain</b>    |    | <b>DTMF</b>           |                     |
| Mic Gain(1-10)        | 5  | DTMF Mode             | OutBand (RFC2833) ▼ |
| Speaker Gain(1-10)    | 5  | Payload Type(RFC2833) | 101                 |
| <b>MISC</b>           |    |                       |                     |
| Dial Tone Power Level | 27 |                       |                     |
| Ring Frequency        | 25 |                       |                     |

OK

Cancel

**Region**

Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of **Caller ID Type**, **Dial tone**, **Ringing tone**, **Busy tone** and **Congestion tone** will be shown automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose **User Defined** and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.

User Defined ▼

User Defined

UK  
 US  
 Denmark  
 Italy  
 Germany  
 Netherlands  
 Portugal  
 Sweden  
 Australia  
 Slovenia  
 Czech  
 Slovakia

Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.

**Volume Gain**

**Mic Gain (1-10)/Speaker Gain (1-10)** - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.

**MISC**

**Dial Tone Power Level** - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the



louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

**Ring Frequency** - This setting is used to drive the frequency of the ring tone. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

## DTMF

**DTMF Mode** – There are four DTMF modes for you to choose.

**InBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone

**OutBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone.

**SIP INFO**- Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message.

DTMF mode

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| InBand                   | ▼ |
| InBand                   |   |
| OutBand ( RFC2833)       |   |
| SIP INFO (cisco format)  |   |
| SIP INFO (nortel format) |   |

**Payload Type (rfc2833)** - Choose a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode.

## Detailed Settings for ISDN1/2-S0 Port

Click the number link of Index 2 or Index 3 (ISDN1-S0 or ISDN2-S0), you can access into the following page for configuring Phone settings.

### IP PBX >> PBX System

#### ISDN1-S0

| Call Feature   | Codecs   |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Hotline <input type="text" value=""/>   | Prefer Codec <input type="text" value="G.729A/B (8Kbps)"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer <input type="text" value="90"/> sec   | <input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec                      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> DND(Do Not Disturb) Mode<br>Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br><input type="text" value=""/> , <input type="text" value=""/> , <input type="text" value=""/> , <input type="text" value=""/> | Packet Size <input type="text" value="20ms"/>              |
| <b>Note:</b> Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.   | Voice Active Detector <input type="text" value="Off"/>     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> CLIR (hide caller ID)   |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Call Waiting  |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Call Transfer   |  |

OK Cancel Advanced

#### Hotline

Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set.

#### Session Timer

Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.

#### DND (Do Not Disturb) mode

Set a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call. During the period, the one who dial in will listen busy tone, yet the local user will not listen any ring tone.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule** - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the DND mode according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **Applications>> Schedule** for detailed configuration.

#### CLIR (hide caller ID)

Check this box to hide the caller ID on the display panel of the phone set.

#### Call Waiting

Check this box to invoke this function. A notice sound will appear to tell the user new phone call is waiting for your response. Click hook flash to pick up the waiting phone call.

#### Call Transfer

Check this box to invoke this function. Click hook flash to initiate another phone call. When the phone call connection succeeds, hang up the phone. The other two sides can communicate, then.

#### Codecs

**Prefer Codec** - Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining

good voice quality.

If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.

Prefer Codec

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| G.711A (64Kbps)   | ▼ |
| G.711MU (64Kbps)  |   |
| G.711A (64Kbps)   |   |
| G.729A/B (8Kbps)  |   |
| G.723 (6.4kbps)   |   |
| G.726_32 (32kbps) |   |

**Single Codec** – If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.

**Packet Size** - The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.

Packet Size

|      |   |
|------|---|
| 20ms | ▼ |
| 10ms |   |
| 20ms |   |
| 30ms |   |
| 40ms |   |
| 50ms |   |
| 60ms |   |

**Voice Active Detector** - This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to invoke this function; click off to close the function.

Voice Active Detector

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| Off | ▼ |
| Off |   |
| On  |   |

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC, DTMF mode and MSN number. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.

## Advance Settings &gt;&gt; ISDN1-S0

| Tone Settings   |               |                |               |                |               |                |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| Region          | Low Freq (Hz) | High Freq (Hz) | T on 1 (msec) | T off 1 (msec) | T on 2 (msec) | T off 2 (msec) |
| Dial tone       | 350           | 440            | 0             | 0              | 0             | 0              |
| Ringing tone    | 400           | 450            | 400           | 200            | 400           | 2000           |
| Busy tone       | 400           | 0              | 375           | 375            | 0             | 0              |
| Congestion tone | 0             | 0              | 0             | 0              | 0             | 0              |

| Volume Gain        |   | DTMF                              |                    |
|--------------------|---|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| Mic Gain(1-10)     | 5 | DTMF Mode                         | OutBand ( RFC2833) |
| Speaker Gain(1-10) | 5 | Payload Type (RFC2833) (96 - 127) | 101                |

| MISC                           |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Dial Tone Power Level (1 - 35) | 27 |
| Ring Frequency (10 - 50HZ)     | 25 |

OK

Cancel

**Region**

Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of **Caller ID Type**, **Dial tone**, **Ringing tone**, **Busy tone** and **Congestion tone** will be shown automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose **User Defined** and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.

| Region       |
|--------------|
| User Defined |
| User Defined |
| UK           |
| US           |
| Denmark      |
| Italy        |
| Germany      |
| Netherlands  |
| Portugal     |
| Sweden       |
| Australia    |
| Slovenia     |
| Czech        |
| Slovakia     |

Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.

**Volume Gain**

**Mic Gain (1-10)/Speaker Gain (1-10)** - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.

**MISC**

**Dial Tone Power Level** - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use

the default setting.

**Ring Frequency** - This setting is used to drive the frequency of the ring tone. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

## DTMF

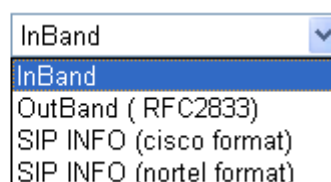
**DTMF Mode** – There are four DTMF modes for you to choose.

**InBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone

**OutBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone.

**SIP INFO**- Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message.

DTMF mode



**Payload Type (rfc2833)** - Choose a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode.

## Detailed Settings for ISDN1/2-TE Port

The vigor router allows users to switch the function of ISDN1/ISDN2 port between TE or S0 mode. Please use the drop down list to choose the one you want.



Choose ISDN-TE and click the number link for that port, you will see the following page.

## ISDN2-TE

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Call Feature</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Session Timer <input type="text" value="90"/> sec<br><input type="checkbox"/> DND(Do Not Disturb) Mode<br>Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br><input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/> , <input type="text"/><br><b>Note:</b> Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.<br><input type="checkbox"/> CLIR (hide caller ID) | <b>Codecs</b><br>Prefer Codec <input type="text" value="G.729A/B (8Kbps)"/><br><input type="checkbox"/> Single Codec<br>Packet Size <input type="text" value="20ms"/><br>Voice Active Detector <input type="text" value="Off"/><br><b>Extension Number</b> <input type="text" value="904"/> |
|---|---|

OK

Cancel

Advanced

**Session Timer**

Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.

**DND (Do Not Disturb) mode**

Set a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call. During the period, the one who dial in will listen busy tone, yet the local user will not listen any ring tone.

**Index (1-15) in Schedule** - Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the DND mode according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **Applications>>Schedule** for detailed configuration.

**CLIR (hide caller ID)**

Check this box to hide the caller ID on the display panel of the phone set.

**Codecs**

**Prefer Codec** - Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality.

If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.

Prefer Codec

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| G.711A (64Kbps)   | ▼ |
| G.711MU (64Kbps)  |   |
| G.711A (64Kbps)   |   |
| G.729A/B (8Kbps)  |   |
| G.723 (6.4kbps)   |   |
| G.726_32 (32kbps) |   |

**Single Codec** – If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.

**Packet Size**-The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.

Packet Size

20ms

10ms

20ms

30ms

40ms

50ms

60ms

**Voice Active Detector** - This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click On to invoke this function; click off to close the function.

Voice Active Detector

Off

Off

On

**Extension Number**                      Type for specifying an extension number for such phone set.

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC and DTMF mode. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.

IP PBX >> Phone Settings

Advance Settings >> ISDN2-TE

Tone Settings

Region

User Defined

|                 | Low Freq<br>(Hz) | High Freq<br>(Hz) | T on 1<br>(msec) | T off 1<br>(msec) | T on 2<br>(msec) | T off 2<br>(msec) |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Dial tone       | 350              | 440               | 0                | 0                 | 0                | 0                 |
| Ringing tone    | 400              | 450               | 400              | 200               | 400              | 2000              |
| Busy tone       | 400              | 0                 | 375              | 375               | 0                | 0                 |
| Congestion tone | 0                | 0                 | 0                | 0                 | 0                | 0                 |

Volume Gain

Mic Gain(1-10)

5

Speaker Gain(1-10)

5

DTMF

DTMF Mode

OutBand ( RFC2833)

Payload Type (RFC2833)  
(96 - 127)

101

MISC

Dial Tone Power Level (1 - 35)

27

Authentication PIN Code

☒
Check for ISDN to VoIP Calls
0000

☐
Check for VoIP to ISDN Calls
0000

OK

Cancel

**Region**                                      Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of **Caller ID Type**, **Dial tone**, **Ringing tone**, **Busy tone** and **Congestion tone** will be shown

automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose **User Defined** and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, and congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.



Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.

#### **Volume Gain**

**Mic Gain (1-10)/Speaker Gain (1-10)** - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.

#### **MISC**

**Dial Tone Power Level** - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting.

#### **Authentication PIN Code**

**Check for ISDN to VoIP Calls** – Set a pin code for the router to authenticate which one is allowed to dial ISDN to VoIP call. The figure that you can type in this field is limited from three to eight with digits from zero to nine.

**Check for VoIP to ISDN Calls** - Set a pin code for the router to authenticate which one is allowed to dial VoIP to ISDN call. The figure that you can type in this field is limited from three to eight with digits from zero to nine.

#### **DTMP**

**DTMF mode** – There are four selections provided here:

**InBand:** Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone

**OutBand:** Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone.

**SIP INFO:** Choose this one then the Vigor will capture



the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message.

DTMF mode

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| InBand                   | ▼ |
| InBand                   |   |
| OutBand ( RFC2833)       |   |
| SIP INFO (cisco format)  |   |
| SIP INFO (nortel format) |   |

**Payload Type (rfc2833)** - Choose a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode.

# 5.12.5 PBX Status

IP PBX >> PBX Status

PBX Status

[Call Detail Records](#)  
[Extension Monitor](#)

## 5.12.5.1 Call Detail Records

This page displays call records of IP PBX such as failed call, successful call, no-answer call, date of the call and the duration of each call, and so on.

IP PBX >> PBX Status

Call Detail Records

Refresh Seconds: 10 | [Refresh](#) |

| Index | Date ▾ | From | To | Result | Duration |
|-------|--------|------|----|--------|----------|
| 1     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 2     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 3     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 4     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 5     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 6     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 7     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 8     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 9     |        |      |    |        |          |
| 10    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 11    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 12    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 13    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 14    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 15    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 16    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 17    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 18    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 19    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 20    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 21    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 22    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 23    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 24    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 25    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 26    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 27    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 28    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 29    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 30    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 31    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 32    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 33    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 34    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 35    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 36    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 37    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 38    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 39    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 40    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 41    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 42    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 43    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 44    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 45    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 46    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 47    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 48    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 49    |        |      |    |        |          |
| 50    |        |      |    |        |          |

<< [1-50](#) | [51-100](#) | [101-150](#) | [151-200](#) | [201-250](#) | [251-300](#) | [301-350](#) | [351-400](#) | [401-450](#) | [451-500](#)  
| [501-550](#) | [551-600](#) | [601-650](#) | [651-700](#) | [701-750](#) | [751-800](#) | [801-850](#) | [851-900](#) | [901-950](#) | [951-1000](#) >>

### 5.12.5.2 Extension Monitor

This page displays owner's name, IP address, status and peer ID for each extension number.

[IP PBX >> PBX Status](#)

| Extension Monitor  |      |           |                     |                         |                               |
|--|------|-----------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
|  |      |           | Refresh Seconds: 10 | <a href="#">Refresh</a> |                               |
| Index  | Name | Extension | IP                  | Status                  | Peer ID                       |
| 1  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 2  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 3  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 4  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 5  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 6  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 7  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 8  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 9  | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| 10   | ---  | ---       |                     | Offline                 |                               |
| << <a href="#">1-10</a>   <a href="#">11-20</a>   <a href="#">21-30</a>   <a href="#">31-40</a>   <a href="#">41-50</a> >> |      |           |                     |                         |                               |
|  |      |           |                     |                         | <a href="#">Next &gt;&gt;</a> |

## 5.13 Wireless LAN

This function is used for “n” models only.

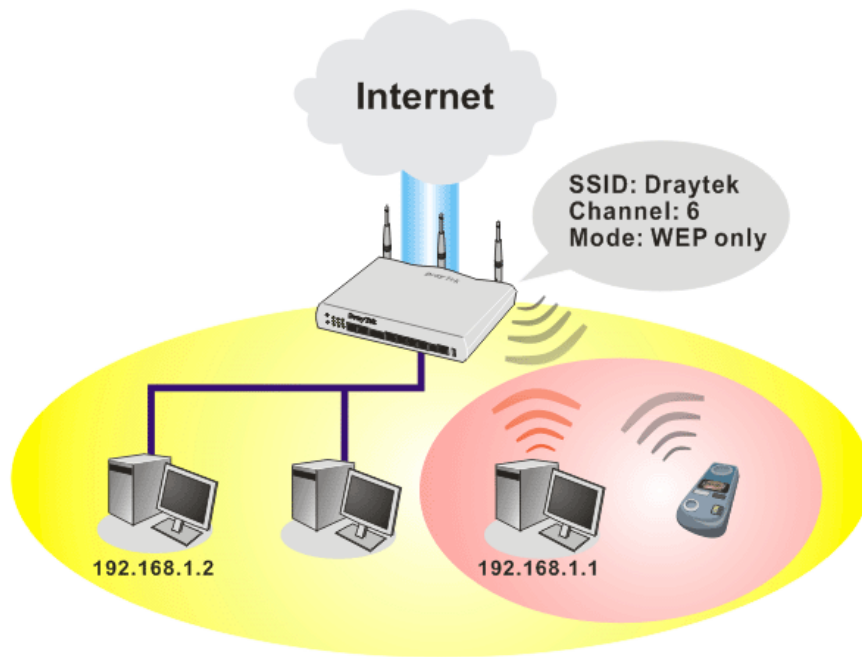
### 5.13.1 Basic Concepts

Over recent years, the market for wireless communications has enjoyed tremendous growth. Wireless technology now reaches or is capable of reaching virtually every location on the surface of the earth. Hundreds of millions of people exchange information every day via wireless communication products. The Vigor “n” model, a.k.a. Vigor wireless router, is designed for maximum flexibility and efficiency of a small office/home. Any authorized staff can bring a built-in WLAN client PDA or notebook into a meeting room for conference without laying a clot of LAN cable or drilling holes everywhere. Wireless LAN enables high mobility so WLAN users can simultaneously access all LAN facilities just like on a wired LAN as well as Internet access.

The Vigor wireless routers are equipped with a wireless LAN interface compliant with the standard IEEE 802.11n protocol. To boost its performance further, the Vigor Router is also loaded with advanced wireless technology to lift up data rate up to 300 Mbps\*. Hence, you can finally smoothly enjoy stream music and video.

**Note:** \* The actual data throughput will vary according to the network conditions and environmental factors, including volume of network traffic, network overhead and building materials.

In an Infrastructure Mode of wireless network, Vigor wireless router plays a role as an Access Point (AP) connecting to lots of wireless clients or Stations (STA). All the STAs will share the same Internet connection via Vigor wireless router. The **General Settings** will set up the information of this wireless network, including its SSID as identification, located channel etc.



## Security Overview

**Real-time Hardware Encryption:** Vigor Router is equipped with a hardware AES encryption engine so it can apply the highest protection to your data without influencing user experience.

**Complete Security Standard Selection:** To ensure the security and privacy of your wireless communication, we provide several prevailing standards on market.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a legacy method to encrypt each frame transmitted via radio using either a 64-bit or 128-bit key. Usually access point will preset a set of four keys and it will communicate with each station using only one out of the four keys.

WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access), the most dominating security mechanism in industry, is separated into two categories: WPA-personal or called WPA Pre-Share Key (WPA/PSK), and WPA-Enterprise or called WPA/802.1x.

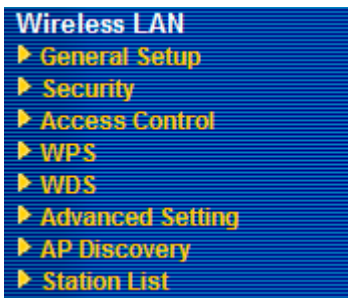
In WPA-Personal, a pre-defined key is used for encryption during data transmission. WPA applies Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) for data encryption while WPA2 applies AES. The WPA-Enterprise combines not only encryption but also authentication.

Since WEP has been proved vulnerable, you may consider using WPA for the most secure connection. You should select the appropriate security mechanism according to your needs. No matter which security suite you select, they all will enhance the over-the-air data protection and /or privacy on your wireless network. The Vigor wireless router is very flexible and can support multiple secure connections with both WEP and WPA at the same time.

**Separate the Wireless and the Wired LAN- WLAN Isolation** enables you to isolate your wireless LAN from wired LAN for either quarantine or limit access reasons. To isolate means neither of the parties can access each other. To elaborate an example for business use, you may set up a wireless LAN for visitors only so they can connect to Internet without hassle of the confidential information leakage. For a more flexible deployment, you may add filters of MAC addresses to isolate users' access from wired LAN.

**Manage Wireless Stations - Station List** will display all the station in your wireless network and the status of their connection.

Below shows the menu items for Wireless LAN.



## 5.13.2 General Setup

By clicking the **General Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the SSID and the wireless channel. Please refer to the following figure for more information.

### Wireless LAN >> General Setup

#### General Setting ( IEEE 802.11 )

☒ Enable Wireless LAN

Mode : Mixed(11b+11g+11n) ▼

---

Index(1-15) in [Schedule](#) Setup: , , ,

Only schedule profiles that have the action "Force Down" are applied to the WLAN, all other actions are ignored.

---

|   | Enable                   | Hide SSID                | SSID    | Isolate                  | LAN                      | Member                   |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|---------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | default | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

**Hide SSID:** Prevent SSID from being scanned.

**Isolate Member:**  
Wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID cannot access for each other.

**Isolate LAN:**  
Wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID cannot access wired PCs on LAN.

---

Channel: Channel 6, 2437MHz ▼ Long Preamble: ☐

Long Preamble: necessary for some old 802.11 b devices only(lower performance)

---

Packet-OVERDRIVE™

☐ Tx Burst

**Note:**  
The same technology must also be supported in clients to boost WLAN performance.

---

Rate Control

|        | Enable                   | Upload                  | Download                |
|--------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| SSID 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <span>30000</span> kbps | <span>30000</span> kbps |
| SSID 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <span>30000</span> kbps | <span>30000</span> kbps |
| SSID 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <span>30000</span> kbps | <span>30000</span> kbps |
| SSID 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <span>30000</span> kbps | <span>30000</span> kbps |

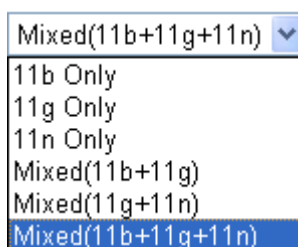
**Note:** range 100~50,000 kbps

OK Cancel

#### Enable Wireless LAN

Check the box to enable wireless function.

**Mode** At present, the router can connect to 11b Only, 11g Only, 11n Only, Mixed(11b+11g), Mixed(11g+11n) and Mixed (11b+11g+11n) stations simultaneously. Simply choose Mix (11b+11g+11n) mode.



**Index(1-15)** Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.

**Hide SSID** Check it to prevent from wireless sniffing and make it harder for unauthorized clients or STAs to join your wireless LAN. Depending on the wireless utility, the user may only see the information except SSID or just cannot see any thing about Vigor wireless router while site surveying. The system allows you to set four sets of SSID for different usage. In default, the first set of SSID will be enabled. You can hide it for your necessity.

**SSID** Means the identification of the wireless LAN. SSID can be any text numbers or various special characters. The default SSID is "default". We suggest you to change it.

**Isolate** **Member** –Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other.

**LAN** –Check this box to make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing wired PC on LAN.

**Channel** Means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The default channel is 6. You may switch channel if the selected channel is under serious interference. If you have no idea of choosing the frequency, please select Auto to let system determine for you.

Channel: Channel 6, 2437MHz ▾

- Auto
- Channel 1, 2412MHz
- Channel 2, 2417MHz
- Channel 3, 2422MHz
- Channel 4, 2427MHz
- Channel 5, 2432MHz
- Channel 6, 2437MHz
- Channel 7, 2442MHz
- Channel 8, 2447MHz
- Channel 9, 2452MHz
- Channel 10, 2457MHz
- Channel 11, 2462MHz
- Channel 12, 2467MHz
- Channel 13, 2472MHz

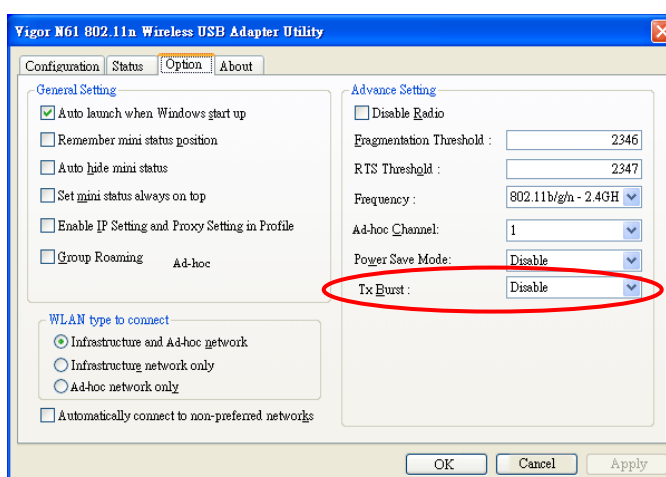
### Long Preamble

This option is to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. Check it to use **Long Preamble** if needed to communicate with this kind of devices.

### Packet-OVERDRIVE

This feature can enhance the performance in data transmission about 40% for 11g (5% for 11n) by checking **Tx Burst**. It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time. That is, the wireless client must support this feature and invoke the function, too.

**Note:** Vigor N61 wireless adapter supports this function. Therefore, you can use and install it into your PC for matching with Packet-OVERDRIVE (refer to the following picture of Vigor N61 wireless utility window, choose **Enable** for **TxBURST** on the tab of **Option**).



### Rate Control

It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection.

**Upload** – Check Enable and type the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps.

**Download** – Type the transmitting rate for data download.  
Default value is 30,000 kbps.

### 5.13.3 Security

This page allows you to set security with different modes for SSID 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively. After configuring the correct settings, please click **OK** to save and invoke it.

By clicking the **Security Settings**, a new web page will appear so that you could configure the settings of WEP and WPA.

[Wireless LAN >> Security Settings](#)

| SSID 1  | SSID 2 | SSID 3 | SSID 4 |
|---|--------|--------|--------|
| <p>Mode: <span>WPA/PSK</span></p> <p>Set up <a href="#">RADIUS Server</a> if 802.1x is enabled.</p> <p><b>WPA:</b></p> <p>Encryption Mode: <span>TKIP</span></p> <p>Pre-Shared Key(PSK): <span>*****</span></p> <p>Type 8~63 ASCII character or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "cfs01a2..." or "0x655abcd..."</p> <p><b>WEP:</b></p> <p>Encryption Mode: <span>64-Bit</span></p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Key 1 : <span>*****</span></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 2 : <span>*****</span></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 3 : <span>*****</span></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Key 4 : <span>*****</span></p> <p><b>For 64 bit WEP key</b><br/>Type 5 ASCII character or 10 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "AB312" or "0x414233132".</p> <p><b>For 128 bit WEP key</b><br/>Type 13 ASCII character or 26 Hexadecimal digits leading by "0x", for example "0123456789abc" or "0x30313233343536373839414243".</p> <p><span>OK</span> <span>Cancel</span></p> |        |        |        |

#### Mode

There are several modes provided for you to choose.

|                             |
|-----------------------------|
| WPA/PSK                     |
| Disable                     |
| WEP                         |
| WEP/802.1x Only             |
| WPA/802.1x Only             |
| WPA2/802.1x Only            |
| Mixed(WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) |
| <b>WPA/PSK</b>              |
| WPA2/PSK                    |
| Mixed(WPA+WPA2)/PSK         |

**Disable** - Turn off the encryption mechanism.

**WEP**-Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key should be entered in WEP Key.

**WEP/802.1x Only** - Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.



**WPA/802.1x Only**- Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

**WPA2/802.1x Only**- Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

**Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only)** - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol.

**WPA/PSK**-Accepts only WPA clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.

**WPA2/PSK**-Accepts only WPA2 clients and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.

**Mixed (WPA+ WPA2)/PSK** - Accepts WPA and WPA2 clients simultaneously and the encryption key should be entered in PSK.

**Note:** You should also set RADIUS Server simultaneously if WEP/802.1x Only, WPA/802.1x Only, WPA2/802.1x Only or Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) is selected.

## WPA

The WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which either PSK (Pre-Shared Key) entered manually in this field below or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication. Either **8~63** ASCII characters, such as 012345678(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").

**Type** - Select from Mixed (WPA+WPA2) or WPA2 only.

**Pre-Shared Key (PSK)** - Either **8~63** ASCII characters, such as 012345678..(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").

## WEP

**64-Bit** - For 64 bits WEP key, either **5** ASCII characters, such as 12345 (or 10 hexadecimal digitals leading by 0x, such as 0x4142434445.)

**128-Bit** - For 128 bits WEP key, either **13** ASCII characters, such as ABCDEFGHIJKLM (or 26 hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as 0x4142434445464748494A4B4C4D).

Encryption Mode:

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 64-Bit  | ▼ |
| 64-Bit  |   |
| 128-Bit |   |

All wireless devices must support the same WEP encryption bit size and have the same key. **Four keys** can be entered here, but only one key can be selected at a time. The keys can be entered in ASCII or Hexadecimal. Check the key you wish to use.

### 5.13.4 Access Control

For additional security of wireless access, the **Access Control** facility allows you to restrict the network access right by controlling the wireless LAN MAC address of client. Only the valid MAC address that has been configured can access the wireless LAN interface. By clicking the **Access Control**, a new web page will appear, as depicted below, so that you could edit the clients' MAC addresses to control their access rights.

[Wireless LAN >> Access Control](#)

Access Control

[Set to Factory Default](#)

Enable Mac Address Filter

☐ SSID 1    ☐ SSID 2    ☐ SSID 3    ☐ SSID 4

MAC Address Filter

| Index | Attribute | MAC Address |
|-------|-----------|-------------|
|-------|-----------|-------------|

Client's MAC Address :

:  :  :  :  :

Attribute :

☐ s: Isolate the station from LAN

Add

Delete

Edit

Cancel

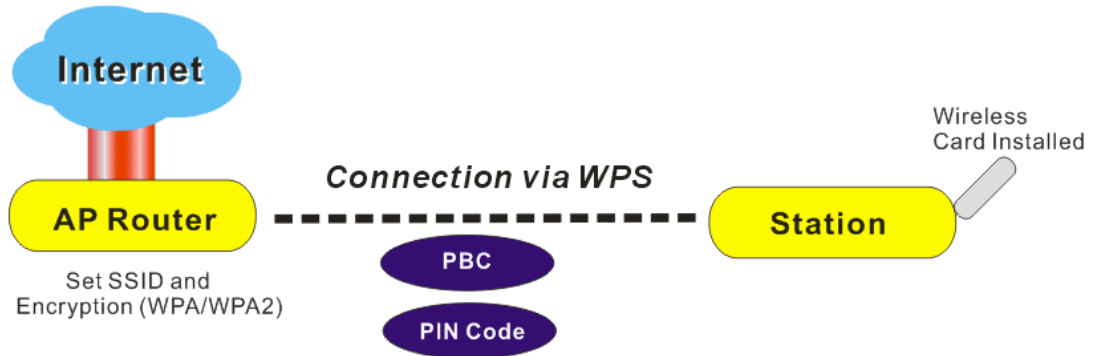
OK

Clear All

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <b>Enable Max Access Filter</b> | Select to enable the MAC Address filter for wireless LAN identified with SSID 1 to 4 respectively. All the clients (expressed by MAC addresses) listed in the box can be grouped under different wireless LAN. For example, they can be grouped under SSID 1 and SSID 2 at the same time if you check SSID 1 and SSID 2. |
| <b>MAC Address Filter</b>       | Display all MAC addresses that are edited before.  |
| <b>Client's MAC Address</b>     | Manually enter the MAC address of wireless client.   |
| <b>Attribute</b>                | <b>s: Isolate the station from LAN</b> - select to isolate the wireless connection of the wireless client of the MAC address from LAN.   |
| <b>Add</b>                      | Add a new MAC address into the list.   |
| <b>Delete</b>                   | Delete the selected MAC address in the list.   |
| <b>Edit</b>                     | Edit the selected MAC address in the list.   |
| <b>Cancel</b>                   | Give up the access control set up.   |
| <b>OK</b>                       | Click it to save the access control list.  |
| <b>Clear All</b>                | Clean all entries in the MAC address list.   |

### 5.13.5 WPS

**WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)** provides easy procedure to make network connection between wireless station and wireless access point (vigor router) with the encryption of WPA and WPA2.

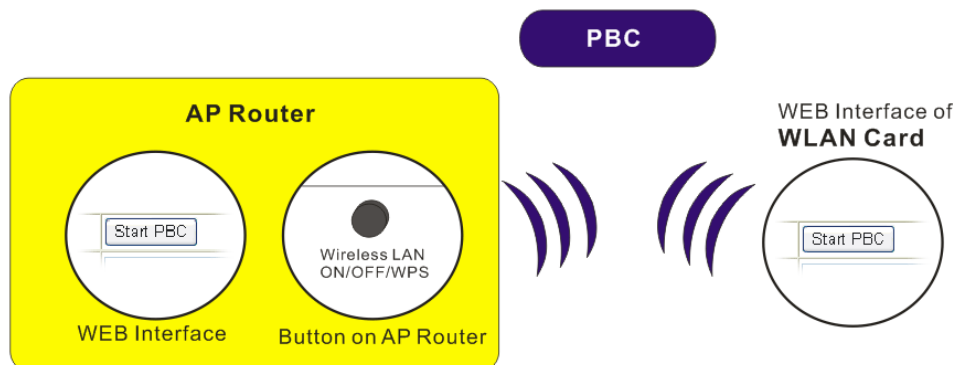


**Note:** Such function is available for the wireless station with WPS supported.

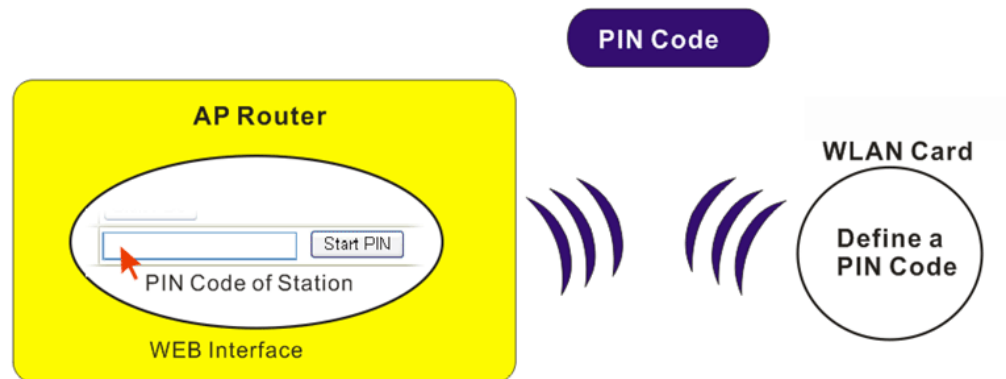
It is the simplest way to build connection between wireless network clients and vigor router. Users do not need to select any encryption mode and type any long encryption passphrase to setup a wireless client every time. He/she only needs to press the **WPS** button on AP and selects that AP on the utility of wireless station. Then WPS will connect for client and router automatically.

There are two methods to do network connection through WPS between AP and Stations: pressing the **Start PBC** button or using **PIN Code**.

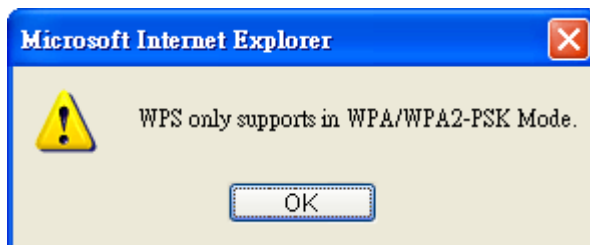
- On the side of VigorIPPBX 2820 series which served as an AP, press **Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS** button for 2 seconds to wait for client device making network connection through WPS or click **Start PBC** on web configuration interface. On the side of a station with network card installed, press **Start PBC** button of network card.



- If you want to use PIN code, you have to know the PIN code specified in wireless client. Then provide the PIN code of the wireless client you wish to connect to the vigor router.



For WPS is supported in WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode, if you do not choose such mode in **Wireless LAN>>Security**, you will see the following message box.



Please click **OK** and go back **Wireless LAN>>Security** to choose WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode and access WPS again.

Below shows **Wireless LAN>>WPS** web page.

#### Wireless LAN >> WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)

☒ Enable WPS

##### Wi-Fi Protected Setup Information

|                            |            |
|----------------------------|------------|
| <b>WPS Status</b>          | Configured |
| <b>SSID</b>                | DrayTek    |
| <b>Authentication Mode</b> | Disable    |

##### Device Configure

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Configure via Push Button</b>    | <input type="button" value="Start PBC"/>                      |
| <b>Configure via Client PinCode</b> | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Start PIN"/> |

Status: The Authentication Mode is NOT WPA/WPA2 PSK!!

**Note:** WPS can help your wireless client automatically connect to the Access point.

: WPS is Disabled.

: WPS is Enabled.

: Waiting for WPS requests from wireless clients.

**Enable WPS**

Check this box to enable WPS setting.

**WPS Status**

Display related system information for WPS.

**SSID**

Display the SSID1 of the router. WPS is supported by SSID1 only.

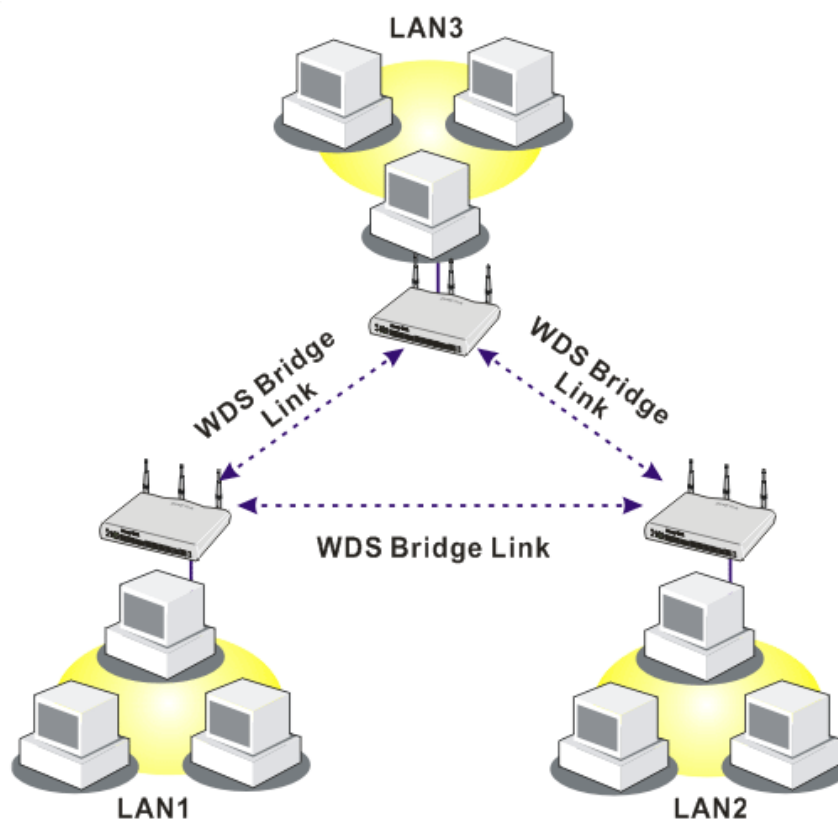
|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Authentication Mode</b>          | Display current authentication mode of the router. Only WPA2/PSK and WPA/PSK support WPS.  |
| <b>Configure via Push Button</b>    | Click <b>Start PBC</b> to invoke Push-Button style WPS setup procedure. The router will wait for WPS requests from wireless clients about two minutes. The WPS LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes) |
| <b>Configure via Client PinCode</b> | Please input the PIN code specified in wireless client you wish to connect, and click <b>Start PIN</b> button. The WLAN LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress. It will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within two minutes)  |

### 5.13.6 WDS

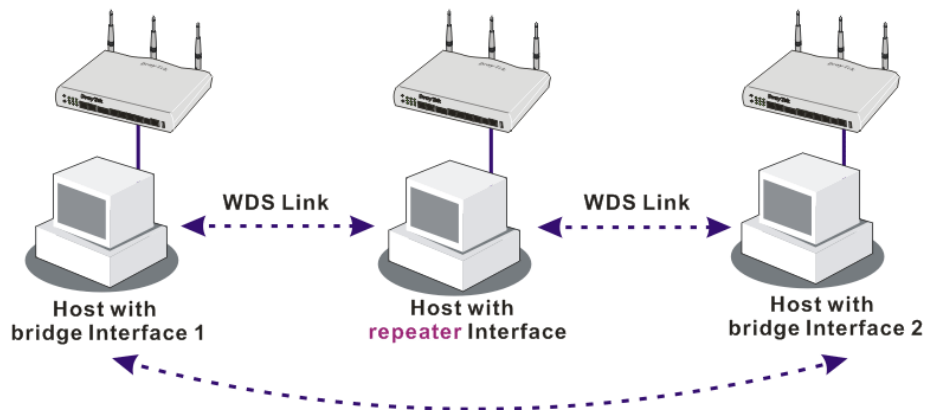
WDS means Wireless Distribution System. It is a protocol for connecting two access points (AP) wirelessly. Usually, it can be used for the following application:

- Provide bridge traffic between two LANs through the air.
- Extend the coverage range of a WLAN.

To meet the above requirement, two WDS modes are implemented in Vigor router. One is **Bridge**, the other is **Repeater**. Below shows the function of WDS-bridge interface:

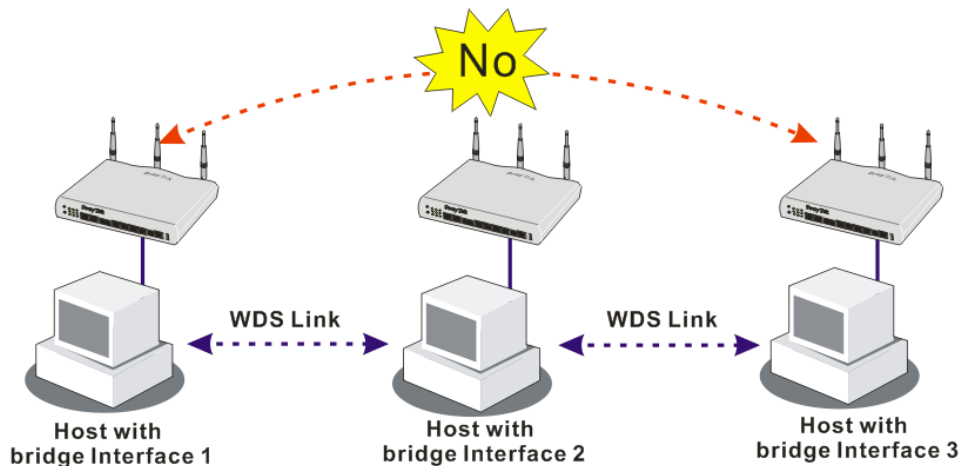


The application for the WDS-Repeater mode is depicted as below:



The major difference between these two modes is that: while in **Repeater** mode, the packets received from one peer AP can be repeated to another peer AP through WDS links. Yet in **Bridge** mode, packets received from a WDS link will only be forwarded to local wired or wireless hosts. In other words, only Repeater mode can do WDS-to-WDS packet forwarding.

In the following examples, hosts connected to Bridge 1 or 3 can communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 2 through WDS links. However, hosts connected to Bridge 1 **CANNOT** communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 3 through Bridge 2.



Click **WDS** from **Wireless LAN** menu. The following page will be shown.

OK Cancel

Choose the mode for WDS setting. **Disable** mode will not invoke any WDS setting. **Bridge** mode is designed to fulfill the first type of application. **Repeater** mode is for the second one.

- Disable
- Bridge
- Repeater

There are three types for security, **Disable**, **WEP** and **Pre-shared key**. The setting you choose here will make the following WEP or Pre-shared key field valid or not. Choose one of the types for the router.

Check this box to use the same key set in **Security Settings** page. If you did not set any key in **Security Settings** page, this check box will be dimmed.

**Type** – There are three types for you to choose.  
**DrayTek WPA** can be used for all DrayTek wireless routers like Vigor2700, Vigor2800, Vigor2820, and etc., except for other brand's wireless routers. **WPA** and **WPA2** are used for WDS devices (e.g., AP700). For example, if you have a wireless AP and a Vigor2820n wireless router, you can set the encryption mode as WPA

or WPA2 to establish your WDS system between AP and the router.

**Key** - Type 8 ~ 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits leading by “0x”.

### Bridge

If you choose Bridge as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Yet please disable the unused link to get better performance. If you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check **Enable** box in the front of the MAC address after typing.

### Repeater

If you choose Repeater as the connecting mode, please type in the peer MAC address in these fields. Four peer MAC addresses are allowed to be entered in this page at one time. Similarly, if you want to invoke the peer MAC address, remember to check **Enable** box in the front of the MAC address after typing.

### Access Point Function

Click **Enable** to make this router serving as an access point; click **Disable** to cancel this function.

### Status

It allows user to send “hello” message to peers. Yet, it is valid only when the peer also supports this function.

## 5.13.7 Advanced Setting

This page allows users to set advanced settings such as operation mode, channel bandwidth, guard interval, and aggregation MSDU for wireless data transmission.

### Wireless LAN >> Advanced Setting

#### HT Physical Mode

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Operation Mode           | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Mixed Mode <input type="radio"/> Green Field |
| Channel Bandwidth        | <input type="radio"/> 20 <input checked="" type="radio"/> 20/40               |
| Guard Interval           | <input type="radio"/> long <input checked="" type="radio"/> auto              |
| Aggregation MSDU(A-MSDU) | <input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable         |

OK

### Operation Mode

**Mixed Mode** – the router can transmit data with the ways supported in both 802.11a/b/g and 802.11n standards. However, the entire wireless transmission will be slowed down if 802.11g or 802.11b wireless client is connected.

**Green Field** – to get the highest throughput, please choose such mode. Such mode can make the data transmission happening between 11n systems only. In addition, it does not have protection mechanism to avoid the conflict with neighboring devices of 802.11a/b/g.

### Channel Bandwidth

**20** - the router will use 20Mhz for data transmission and receiving between the AP and the stations.

**20/40** – the router will use 20Mhz or 40Mhz for data



transmission and receiving according to the station capability. Such channel can increase the performance for data transit.

### Guard Interval

It is to assure the safety of propagation delays and reflections for the sensitive digital data. If you choose **auto** as guard interval, the AP router will choose short guard interval (increasing the wireless performance) or long guard interval for data transmit based on the station capability.

### Aggregation MSDU

Aggregation MSDU can combine frames with different sizes. It is used for improving MAC layer's performance for some brand's clients. The default setting is **Enable**.

## 5.13.8 AP Discovery

Vigor router can scan all regulatory channels and find working APs in the neighborhood. Based on the scanning result, users will know which channel is clean for usage. Also, it can be used to facilitate finding an AP for a WDS link. Notice that during the scanning process (about 5 seconds), no client is allowed to connect to Vigor.

This page is used to scan the existence of the APs on the wireless LAN. Yet, only the AP which is in the same channel of this router can be found. Please click **Scan** to discover all the connected APs.

### Wireless LAN >> Access Point Discovery

#### Access Point List

| BSSID | Channel | SSID |
|-------|---------|------|
|       |         |      |

See [Statistics](#).

**Note:** During the scanning process (~5 seconds), no station is allowed to connect with the router.

---

**Add to [WDS Settings](#) :**

AP's MAC address  :  :  :  :  :

☒ Bridge ☐ Repeater

### Scan

It is used to discover all the connected AP. The results will be shown on the box above this button.

### Statistics

It displays the statistics for the channels used by APs.

Recommended channels for usage:  
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13

AP number v.s. Channel

| AP number | Channel |
|-----------|---------|
| 1         | 2       |
| 2         | 3       |
| 3         | 4       |
| 4         | 5       |
| 5         | 6       |
| 6         | 7       |
| 7         | 8       |
| 8         | 9       |
| 9         | 10      |
| 10        | 11      |
| 11        | 12      |
| 12        | 13      |
| 13        | 14      |

Channel

Cancel

**Add to**

If you want the found AP applying the WDS settings, please type in the AP's MAC address on the bottom of the page or choose the AP MAC address from the Scan result field, and click **Bridge** or **Repeater**. Next, click **Add to**. Later, the MAC address of the AP will be added to Bridge or Repeater field of WDS settings page.

### 5.13.9 Station List

**Station List** provides the knowledge of connecting wireless clients now along with its status code. There is a code summary below for explanation. For convenient **Access Control**, you can select a WLAN station and click **Add to Access Control** below.

**Station List**

| Status | MAC Address | Associated with |
|--------|-------------|-----------------|
|        |             |                 |

Refresh

**Status Codes :**  
**C:** Connected, No encryption.  
**E:** Connected, WEP.  
**P:** Connected, WPA.  
**A:** Connected, WPA2.  
**B:** Blocked by Access Control.  
**N:** Connecting.  
**F:** Fail to pass 802.1X or WPA/PSK authentication.

**Note:** After a station connects to the router successfully, it may be turned off without notice. In that case, it will still be on the list until the connection expires.

---

**Add to [Access Control](#) :**

Client's MAC address     :  :  :  :  :

Add

**Refresh**

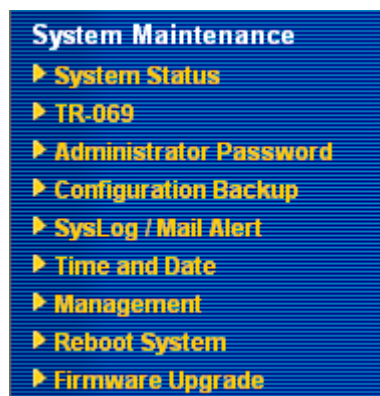
Click this button to refresh the status of station list.

**Add**Click this button to add current selected MAC address into **Access Control**.

## 5.14 System Maintenance

For the system setup, there are several items that you have to know the way of configuration: Status, Administrator Password, Configuration Backup, Syslog, Time setup, Reboot System, and Firmware Upgrade.

Below shows the menu items for System Maintenance.



### 5.14.1 System Status

The **System Status** provides basic network settings of Vigor router. It includes LAN and WAN interface information. Also, you could get the current running firmware version or firmware related information from this presentation.

#### System Status

Model Name : VigorIPPBX 2820n  
Firmware Version : 3.5.4\_211011  
Build Date/Time : Jan 18 2010 18:22:08  
ADSL Firmware Version : 211011\_A Annex A

| LAN             |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| MAC Address     | : 00-50-7F-94-E7-80 |
| 1st IP Address  | : 192.168.1.1       |
| 1st Subnet Mask | : 255.255.255.0     |
| DHCP Server     | : Yes               |
| DNS             | : 194.109.6.66      |

| WAN 1           |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Link Status     | : <b>Disconnected</b> |
| MAC Address     | : 00-50-7F-94-E7-81   |
| Connection      | : ---                 |
| IP Address      | : ---                 |
| Default Gateway | : ---                 |

| SIP Trunk |         |        |
|-----------|---------|--------|
| Index     | Profile | Status |
| 1.        | ---     | ---    |
| 2.        | ---     | ---    |
| 3.        | ---     | ---    |
| 4.        | ---     | ---    |
| 5.        | ---     | ---    |
| 6.        | ---     | ---    |

| WAN 2           |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| Link Status     | : <b>Connected</b>  |
| MAC Address     | : 00-50-7F-94-E7-82 |
| Connection      | : Static IP         |
| IP Address      | : 172.16.3.102      |
| Default Gateway | : 172.16.1.1        |

| Wireless LAN     |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| MAC Address      | : 00-50-7F-94-E7-80 |
| Frequency Domain | : Europe            |
| Firmware Version | : 1.8.1.0           |
| SSID             | : default           |

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Model Name</b>            | Display the model name of the router.                    |
| <b>Firmware Version</b>      | Display the firmware version of the router.              |
| <b>Build Date/Time</b>       | Display the date and time of the current firmware build. |
| <b>ADSL Firmware Version</b> | Display the ADSL firmware version.                       |

#### LAN-----

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>MAC Address</b> | Display the MAC address of the LAN Interface. |
|--------------------|---|

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>1<sup>st</sup> IP Address</b>  | Display the IP address of the LAN interface.   |
| <b>1<sup>st</sup> Subnet Mask</b> | Display the subnet mask address of the LAN interface.  |
| <b>DHCP Server</b>                | Display the current status of DHCP server of the LAN interface.  |
| <b>DNS</b>                        | Display the assigned IP address of the primary DNS.  |
| <b>WAN-----</b>                   |  |
| <b>Link Status</b>                | Display current connection status.   |
| <b>MAC Address</b>                | Display the MAC address of the WAN Interface.  |
| <b>Connection</b>                 | Display the connection type.   |
| <b>IP Address</b>                 | Display the IP address of the WAN interface.   |
| <b>Default Gateway</b>            | Display the assigned IP address of the default gateway.  |
| <b>SIP Trunk-----</b>             |  |
| <b>Index/Profile/Status</b>       | Display current status for SIP profiles.   |
| <b>Wireless LAN-----</b>          |  |
| <b>MAC Address</b>                | Display the MAC address of the WLAN Interface.   |
| <b>Frequency Domain</b>           | It can be Europe (13 usable channels), USA (11 usable channels) etc. The available channels supported by the wireless products in different countries are various. |
| <b>Firmware Version</b>           | It indicates information about equipped WLAN miniPCi card. This also helps to provide availability of some features that are bound with some WLAN miniPCi.         |
| <b>SSID</b>                       | Display the SSID of the router.  |

## 5.14.2 TR-069

This device supports TR-069 standard. It is very convenient for an administrator to manage a TR-069 device through an Auto Configuration Server, e.g., VigorACS.

[System Maintenance >> TR-069 Setting](#)

### ACS and CPE Settings

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>ACS Server On</b>  | Internet ▼   |
| <b>ACS Server</b>   |  |
| URL   | <input type="text"/>   |
| Username  | <input type="text"/>   |
| Password  | <input type="password"/>   |
| <b>CPE Client</b>   |  |
| <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |  |
| URL   | <input type="text" value="http://172.16.3.229:8069/cwm/CRN.html"/> |
| Port  | <input type="text" value="8069"/>                                  |
| Username  | <input type="text" value="vigor"/>                                 |
| Password  | <input type="password"/>   |

### Periodic Inform Settings

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable |  |
| Interval Time   | <input type="text" value="900"/> second(s) |

OK

#### ACS Server On

Choose the interface for the router connecting to ACS server.

#### ACS Server On

|          |
|----------|
| PVC ▼    |
| Internet |
| PVC      |

#### ACS Server

**URL/Username/Password** – Such data must be typed according to the ACS (Auto Configuration Server) you want to link. Please refer to Auto Configuration Server user's manual for detailed information.

#### CPE Client

It is not necessary for you to type them. Such information is useful for Auto Configuration Server.

**Enable/Disable** – Sometimes, port conflict might be occurred. To solve such problem, you might want to change port number for CPE. Please click Enable and change the port number.

#### Periodic Inform Settings

The default setting is **Enable**. Please set interval time or schedule time for the router to send notification to CPE. Or click **Disable** to close the mechanism of notification.

### 5.14.3 Administrator Password

This page allows you to set new password.

[System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup](#)

**Administrator Password**

|                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Old Password     | <input type="text"/> |
| New Password     | <input type="text"/> |
| Confirm Password | <input type="text"/> |

**Old Password** Type in the old password. The factory default setting for password is blank.

**New Password** Type in new password in this field.

**Confirm Password** Type in the new password again.

When you click OK, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web configurator again.

### 5.14.4 Configuration Backup

#### Backup the Configuration

Follow the steps below to backup your configuration.

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.

[System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup](#)

**Configuration Backup / Restoration**

**Restoration**

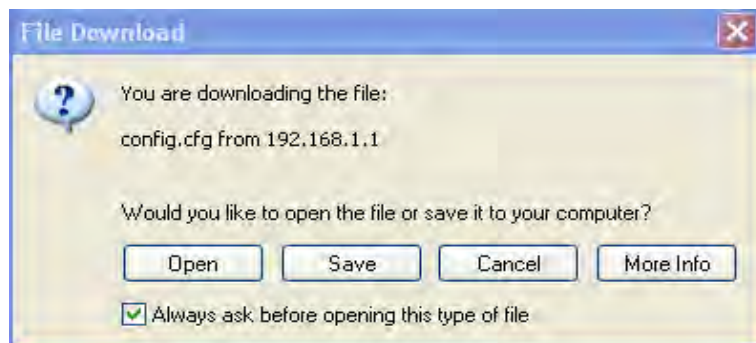
Select a configuration file.

Click Restore to upload the file.

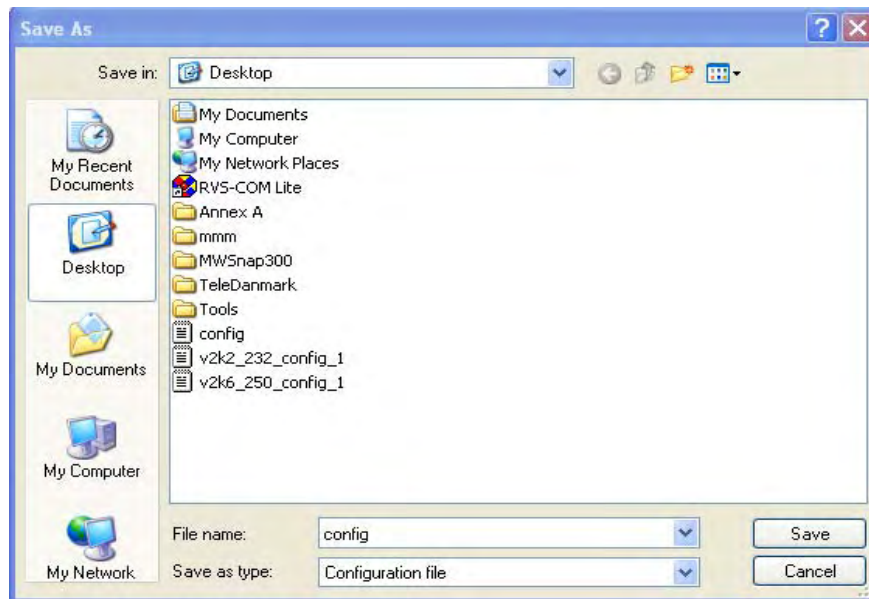
**Backup**

Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file.

2. Click **Backup** button to get into the following dialog. Click **Save** button to open another dialog for saving configuration as a file.



3. In **Save As** dialog, the default filename is **config.cfg**. You could give it another name by yourself.



4. Click **Save** button, the configuration will download automatically to your computer as a file named **config.cfg**.

The above example is using **Windows** platform for demonstrating examples. The **Mac** or **Linux** platform will appear different windows, but the backup function is still available.

**Note:** Backup for Certification must be done independently. The Configuration Backup does not include information of Certificate.

## Restore Configuration

1. Go to **System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.

### System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

**Configuration Backup / Restoration**

**Restoration**  
Select a configuration file.  
   
Click Restore to upload the file.

**Backup**  
Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file.

2. Click **Browse** button to choose the correct configuration file for uploading to the router.
3. Click **Restore** button and wait for few seconds, the following picture will tell you that the restoration procedure is successful.

## 5.14.5 Syslog/Mail Alert

SysLog function is provided for users to monitor router. There is no bother to directly get into the Web Configurator of the router or borrow debug equipments.

[System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert Setup](#)

**SysLog / Mail Alert Setup**

| SysLog Access Setup  | Mail Alert Setup   |
|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable                 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable <input type="button" value="Send a test e-mail"/> |
| Server IP Address <input type="text"/>                     | SMTP Server <input type="text"/>   |
| Destination Port <input type="text" value="514"/>          | Mail To <input type="text"/>   |
| Enable syslog message:                                     | Return-Path <input type="text"/>   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Firewall Log           | <input type="checkbox"/> Authentication  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VPN Log                | User Name <input type="text"/>   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User Access Log        | Password <input type="text"/>  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Call Log               | Enable E-Mail Alert:   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> WAN Log                | <input type="checkbox"/> DoS Attack  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Router/DSL information | <input type="checkbox"/> IM-P2P  |

### Enable (Syslog Access...)

Check **Enable** to activate function of syslog.

### Syslog Server IP

The IP address of the Syslog server.

### Destination Port

Assign a port for the Syslog protocol.

### Enable syslog message

Check the box listed on this web page to send the corresponding message of firewall, VPN, User Access, Call, WAN, Router/DSL information to Syslog.

### Enable (Alert Setup...)

Check **Enable** to activate function of mail alert.

### Send a test e-mail

Make a simple test for the e-mail address specified in this page. Please assign the mail address first and click this button to execute a test for verify the mail address is available or not.

### SMTP Server

The IP address of the SMTP server.

### Mail To

Assign a mail address for sending mails out.

### Return-Path

Assign an e-mail address of another mailbox to accept all returned messages if fatal problems occur at the recipient mailbox.

The e-mail address typed here also acts as the Sender address while Vigor sends out the alert e-mails.

### Authentication

Check this box to activate this function while using e-mail application.

### User Name

Type the user name for authentication.

### Password

Type the password for authentication.

### Enable E-mail Alert

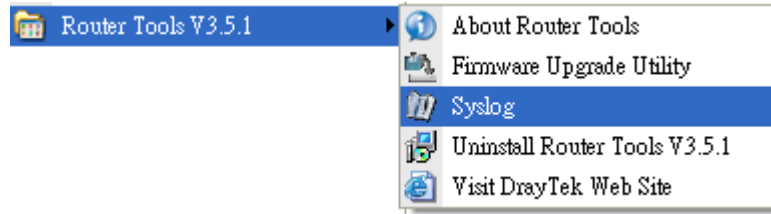
Check the box to send alert message to the e-mail box while the modem detecting the item(s) you specify here.

Click **OK** to save these settings.

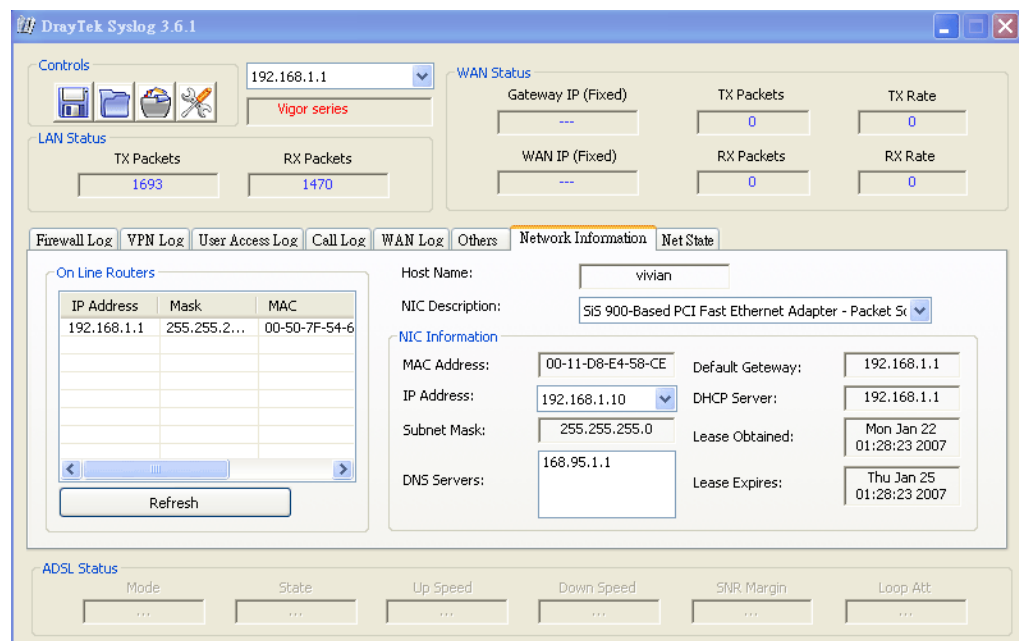


For viewing the Syslog, please do the following:

1. Just set your monitor PC's IP address in the field of Server IP Address
2. Install the Router Tools in the **Utility** within provided CD. After installation, click on the **Router Tools>>Syslog** from program menu.



3. From the Syslog screen, select the router you want to monitor. Be reminded that in **Network Information**, select the network adapter used to connect to the router. Otherwise, you won't succeed in retrieving information from the router.



## 5.14.6 Time and Date

It allows you to specify where the time of the router should be inquired from.

### System Maintenance >> Time and Date

#### Time Information

|                     |                             |              |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|
| Current System Time | 2007 Jun 28 Thu 5 : 53 : 42 | Inquire Time |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|

#### Time Setup

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Use Browser Time                    |                                    |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Internet Time Client |                                    |
| Time Protocol   | NTP (RFC-1305)                     |
| Server IP Address   | pool.ntp.org                       |
| Time Zone   | (GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin |
| Enable Daylight Saving                                    | <input type="checkbox"/>           |
| Automatically Update Interval                             | 30 min                             |

OK Cancel

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Current System Time</b>           | Click <b>Inquire Time</b> to get the current time.  |
| <b>Use Browser Time</b>              | Select this option to use the browser time from the remote administrator PC host as router's system time. |
| <b>Use Internet Time</b>             | Select to inquire time information from Time Server on the Internet using assigned protocol.              |
| <b>Time Protocol</b>                 | Select a time protocol.   |
| <b>Server IP Address</b>             | Type the IP address of the time server.   |
| <b>Time Zone</b>                     | Select the time zone where the router is located.   |
| <b>Enable Daylight Saving</b>        | Check this box to enable daylight saving. Such function is useful for certain areas.                      |
| <b>Automatically Update Interval</b> | Select a time interval for updating from the NTP server.  |

Click **OK** to save these settings.

## 5.14.7 Management

This page allows you to manage the settings for access control, access list, port setup, and SMP setup. For example, as to management access control, the port number is used to send/receive SIP message for building a session. The default value is 5060 and this must match with the peer Registrar when making VoIP calls.

### System Maintenance >> Management

#### Management Setup

| <b>Management Access Control</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Allow management from the Internet<br><input type="checkbox"/> FTP Server<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTP Server<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTTPS Server<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telnet Server<br><input type="checkbox"/> SSH Server<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Disable PING from the Internet |                      | <b>Management Port Setup</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> User Define Ports <input type="radio"/> Default Ports<br>Telnet Port <input type="text" value="23"/> (Default: 23)<br>HTTP Port <input type="text" value="80"/> (Default: 80)<br>HTTPS Port <input type="text" value="443"/> (Default: 443)<br>FTP Port <input type="text" value="21"/> (Default: 21)<br>SSH Port <input type="text" value="22"/> (Default: 22) |    |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |  |
|---|----------------------|--|----|-------------|---|----------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------|----------------------|---|----------------------|----------------------|---|--|
| <b>Access List</b><br><table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>List</th> <th>IP</th> <th>Subnet Mask</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>             |                      | List   | IP | Subnet Mask | 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <b>SNMP Setup</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable SNMP Agent<br>Get Community <input type="text" value="public"/><br>Set Community <input type="text" value="private"/><br>Manager Host IP <input type="text"/><br>Trap Community <input type="text" value="public"/><br>Notification Host IP <input type="text"/><br>Trap Timeout <input type="text" value="10"/> seconds |  |
| List  | IP                   | Subnet Mask  |    |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |  |
| 1   | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/>   |    |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |  |
| 2   | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/>   |    |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |  |
| 3   | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/>   |    |             |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |                      |                      |   |  |

OK

**Allow management from the Internet**

Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet. There are several servers provided by the system to allow you managing the router from Internet. Check the box(es) to specify.

**Disable PING from the**

Check the checkbox to reject all PING packets from the Internet.

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>Internet</b>             | For security issue, this function is enabled by default.   |
| <b>Access List</b>          | You could specify that the system administrator can only login from a specific host or network defined in the list. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed.<br><br><b>List IP</b> - Indicate an IP address allowed to login to the router.<br><br><b>Subnet Mask</b> - Represent a subnet mask allowed to login to the router. |
| <b>Default Ports</b>        | Check to use standard port numbers for the Telnet and HTTP servers.  |
| <b>User Defined Ports</b>   | Check to specify user-defined port numbers for the Telnet, HTTP and FTP servers.   |
| <b>Enable SNMP Agent</b>    | Check it to enable this function.  |
| <b>Get Community</b>        | Set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. The default setting is <b>public</b> .  |
| <b>Set Community</b>        | Set community by typing a proper name. The default setting is <b>private</b> .   |
| <b>Manager Host IP</b>      | Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IP address to specify certain host.   |
| <b>Trap Community</b>       | Set trap community by typing a proper name. The default setting is <b>public</b> .   |
| <b>Notification Host IP</b> | Set the IP address of the host that will receive the trap community.   |
| <b>Trap Timeout</b>         | The default setting is 10 seconds.   |

### 5.14.8 Reboot System

The Web Configurator may be used to restart your router. Click **Reboot System** from **System Maintenance** to open the following page.

[System Maintenance >> Reboot System](#)

#### Reboot System

**Do you want to reboot your router ?**

☒ Using current configuration  
☐ Using factory default configuration

OK

If you want to reboot the router using the current configuration, check **Using current configuration** and click **OK**. To reset the router settings to default values, check **Using factory default configuration** and click **OK**. The router will take 5 seconds to reboot the system.

**Note:** When the system pops up Reboot System web page after you configure web settings, please click **OK** to reboot your router for ensuring normal operation and preventing unexpected errors of the router in the future.

## 5.14.9 Firmware Upgrade

Before upgrading your router firmware, you need to install the Router Tools. The **Firmware Upgrade Utility** is included in the tools. The following web page will guide you to upgrade firmware by using an example. Note that this example is running over Windows OS (Operating System).

Download the newest firmware from DrayTek's web site or FTP site. The DrayTek web site is [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com) (or local DrayTek's web site) and FTP site is <ftp.draytek.com>.

Click **System Maintenance>> Firmware Upgrade** to launch the Firmware Upgrade Utility.

### System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade

#### Web Firmware Upgrade

Select a firmware file.

Click Upgrade to upload the file.

#### TFTP Firmware Upgrade from LAN

Current Firmware Version: 3.5.4\_211011

##### Firmware Upgrade Procedures:

1. Click "OK" to start the TFTP server.
2. Open the Firmware Upgrade Utility or other 3-party TFTP client software.
3. Check that the firmware filename is correct.
4. Click "Upgrade" on the Firmware Upgrade Utility to start the upgrade.
5. After the upgrade is complete, the TFTP server will automatically stop running.

Do you want to upgrade firmware ?

Click **OK**. The following screen will appear. Please execute the firmware upgrade utility first.

### System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade

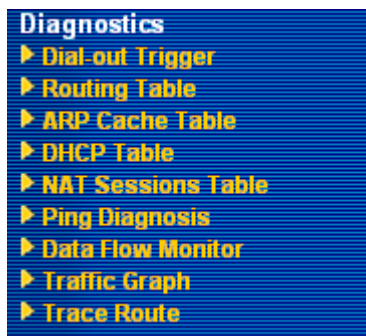


TFTP server is running. Please execute a Firmware Upgrade Utility software to upgrade router's firmware. This server will be closed by itself when the firmware upgrading finished.

## 5.15 Diagnostics

Diagnostic Tools provide a useful way to **view** or **diagnose** the status of your Vigor router.

Below shows the menu items for Diagnostics.



### 5.15.1 Dial-out Trigger

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Dial-out Trigger** to open the web page. The internet connection (e.g., ISDN, PPPoE, PPPoA, etc) is triggered by a package sending from the source IP address.

[Diagnostics >> Dial-out Trigger](#)

Dial-out Triggered Packet Header

[Refresh](#)

**HEX Format:**

00 50 7F 00 00 00-00 0E A6 2A D5 A1-08 00

45 00 00 30 89 C9 40 00-7F 06 80 01 C0 A8 01 0A  
41 36 EF 14 08 A4 07 47-33 20 94 D1 00 00 00 00  
70 02 FF FF B9 45 00 00-02 04 05 B4 01 01 04 02  
BE 9C 80 C9 9F A8 80 5B-3D D9 80 19 84 68 00 00  
00 00 00 00 00 00 00-00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

**Decoded Format:**

192.168.1.10,2212 -> 65.54.239.20,1863  
Pr tcp HLen 20 TLen 48 -S Seq 857773265 Ack 0 Win 65535

**Decoded Format**

It shows the source IP address (local), destination IP (remote) address, the protocol and length of the package.

**Refresh**

Click it to reload the page.

## 5.15.2 Routing Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Routing Table** to open the web page.

[Diagnostics >> View Routing Table](#)

| Current Running Routing Table                                     |      | <a href="#">Refresh</a> |
|---|------|-------------------------|
| Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private |      |                         |
| * 0.0.0.0/ 0.0.0.0 via 172.16.3.4, WAN2                           |      |                         |
| C~ 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 is directly connected,              | LAN  |                         |
| C 172.16.0.0/ 255.255.0.0 is directly connected,                  | WAN2 |                         |

**Refresh**

Click it to reload the page.

## 5.15.3 ARP Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **ARP Cache Table** to view the content of the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache held in the router. The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IP address.

[Diagnostics >> View ARP Cache Table](#)

| Ethernet ARP Cache Table |                   | <a href="#">Clear</a> | <a href="#">Refresh</a> |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| IP Address               | MAC Address       |                       |                         |
| 192.168.1.10             | 00-0E-A6-2A-D5-A1 |                       |                         |
| 172.16.2.240             | 00-05-5D-04-D2-C0 |                       |                         |
| 172.16.2.194             | 00-50-7F-33-31-E9 |                       |                         |
| 172.16.3.237             | 00-0C-6E-D0-CA-63 |                       |                         |
| 172.16.3.222             | 00-50-7F-1A-59-11 |                       |                         |
| 172.16.2.209             | 00-07-40-82-13-77 |                       |                         |
| 172.16.3.181             | 00-50-7F-1A-58-CF |                       |                         |
| 172.16.2.238             | 00-50-7F-C0-29-1D |                       |                         |
| 172.16.2.62              | 00-50-7F-28-6E-21 |                       |                         |
| 172.16.3.201             | 00-50-7F-1C-49-E5 |                       |                         |
| 220.130.52.220           | 00-50-7F-C1-06-4D |                       |                         |
| 172.16.3.115             | 00-1A-92-92-E8-1D |                       |                         |
| 172.16.2.114             | 00-50-7F-C0-25-BD |                       |                         |
| 172.16.3.134             | 00-50-7F-33-31-E3 |                       |                         |
| 172.16.2.229             | 00-50-7F-F0-00-5E |                       |                         |

**Refresh**

Click it to reload the page.

**Clear**

Click it to clear the whole table.

### 5.15.4 DHCP Table

The facility provides information on IP address assignments. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DHCP Table** to open the web page.

[Diagnostics >> View DHCP Assigned IP Addresses](#)

| DHCP IP Assignment Table |              |                   |             |                 | <a href="#">Refresh</a> |
|--------------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| DHCP server: Running     |              |                   |             |                 |                         |
| Index                    | IP Address   | MAC Address       | Leased Time | HOST ID         |                         |
| 1                        | 192.168.1.10 | 00-0E-A6-2A-D5-A1 | 0:00:06.820 | ok-lccgjyiy075u |                         |

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>Index</b>       | It displays the connection item number.  |
| <b>IP Address</b>  | It displays the IP address assigned by this router for specified PC.                   |
| <b>MAC Address</b> | It displays the MAC address for the specified PC that DHCP assigned IP address for it. |
| <b>Leased Time</b> | It displays the leased time of the specified PC.                                       |
| <b>HOST ID</b>     | It displays the host ID name of the specified PC.                                      |
| <b>Refresh</b>     | Click it to reload the page.   |

### 5.15.5 NAT Sessions Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **NAT Sessions Table** to open the setup page.

[Diagnostics >> NAT Sessions Table](#)

| NAT Active Sessions Table |      |              |               |      |           |  | <a href="#">Refresh</a> |
|---------------------------|------|--------------|---------------|------|-----------|--|-------------------------|
| Private IP :Port          |      | #Pseudo Port | Peer IP :Port |      | Interface |  |                         |
| 192.168.1.10              | 2473 | 52059        | 207.46.106.51 | 1863 | WAN2      |  |                         |
| 192.168.1.10              | 2476 | 52062        | 207.46.26.253 | 7001 | WAN2      |  |                         |
| 192.168.1.10              | 2477 | 52063        | 207.46.26.254 | 7001 | WAN2      |  |                         |
| 192.168.1.10              | 2477 | 52063        | 207.46.26.254 | 9    | WAN2      |  |                         |
| 192.168.1.10              | 2477 | 52063        | 207.46.26.253 | 7001 | WAN2      |  |                         |
| 192.168.1.10              | 2478 | 52064        | 207.68.178.16 | 80   | WAN2      |  |                         |
| 192.168.1.10              | 2479 | 52065        | 207.68.178.16 | 80   | WAN2      |  |                         |

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Private IP:Port</b> | It indicates the source IP address and port of local PC. |
|------------------------|--|

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>#Pseudo Port</b> | It indicates the temporary port of the router used for NAT.      |
| <b>Peer IP:Port</b> | It indicates the destination IP address and port of remote host. |
| <b>Interface</b>    | It displays the representing number for different interface.     |
| <b>Refresh</b>      | Click it to reload the page.                                     |

### 5.15.6 Ping Diagnosis

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Ping Diagnosis** to pen the web page.

[Diagnostics >> Ping Diagnosis](#)

**Ping Diagnosis**

**Note:** If you want to ping a LAN PC or you don't want to specify which WAN to ping through, please select "Unspecified".

Ping through:

Ping to:  IP Address:

**Result** [Clear](#)

**Ping through** Use the drop down list to choose the WAN interface that you want to ping through or choose **Unspecified** to be determined by the router automatically.

Ping through:

Unspecified  
 WAN1  
 WAN2

**Ping to** Use the drop down list to choose the destination that you want to ping.

**IP Address** Type in the IP address of the Host/IP that you want to ping.

**Run** Click this button to start the ping work. The result will be displayed on the screen.

**Clear** Click this link to remove the result on the window.



### 5.15.7 Data Flow Monitor

This page displays the running procedure for the IP address monitored and refreshes the data in an interval of several seconds. The IP address listed here is configured in Bandwidth Management. You have to enable IP bandwidth limit and IP session limit before invoke Data Flow Monitor. If not, a notification dialog box will appear to remind you enabling it.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Data Flow Monitor** to open the web page. You can click **IP Address**, **TX rate**, **RX rate** or **Session** link for arranging the data display.

Diagnostics &gt;&gt; Data Flow Monitor

[illegible]

**Note:**

1. Click "Block" to prevent specified PC from surfing Internet for 5 minutes.
2. The IP blocked by the router will be shown in red, and the session column will display the remaining time that the specified IP will be blocked.
3. (Kbps): shared bandwidth  
+ : residual bandwidth used  
Current/Peak are average.

## Enable Data Flow Monitor

Check this box to enable this function.

## Refresh Seconds

Use the drop down list to choose the time interval of refreshing data flow that will be done by the system automatically.

Refresh Seconds: 5

## Refresh

Click this link to refresh this page manually.

## Index

Display the number of the data flow.

## IP Address

Display the IP address of the monitored device.

TX rate (kbps)

Display the transmission speed of the monitored device.

**RX rate (kbps)**

Display the receiving speed of the monitored device.

## Sessions

Display the session number that you specified in Limit

## Action

Session web page.

**Block** - can prevent specified PC accessing into Internet within 5 minutes.

Page: 1 | Refresh |

| IPs | Sessions | Action |
|-----|----------|--------|
|     | 7        | Block  |
|     |          |        |
|     |          |        |
|     |          |        |

**Unblock** – the device with the IP address will be blocked in five minutes. The remaining time will be shown on the session column.

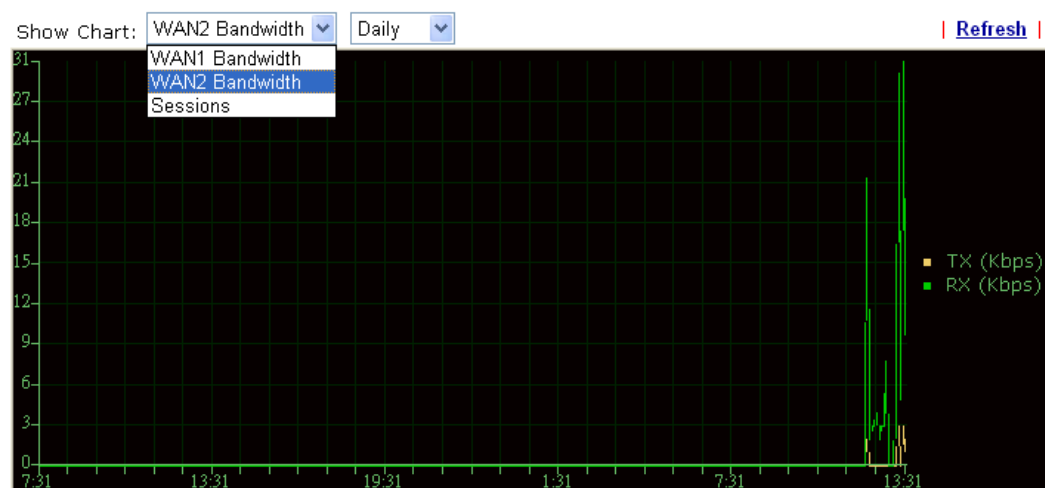
Page: 1 | Refresh |

| IPs | Sessions      | Action  |
|-----|---------------|---------|
|     | blocked / 298 | Unblock |
|     |               |         |
|     |               |         |
|     |               |         |

## 5.15.8 Traffic Graph

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Traffic Graph** to pen the web page. Choose WAN1 Bandwidth/WAN2 Bandwidth, Sessions, daily or weekly for viewing different traffic graph. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time.

[Diagnostics >> Traffic Graph](#)

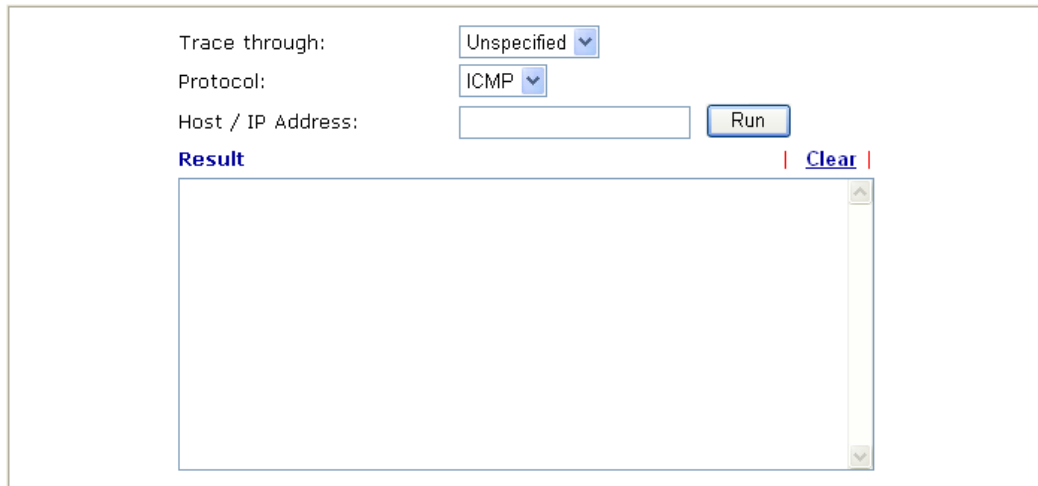


## 5.15.9 Trace Route

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Trace Route** to open the web page. This page allows you to trace the routes from router to the host. Simply type the IP address of the host in the box and click **Run**. The result of route trace will be shown on the screen.

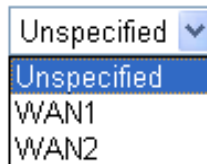
[Diagnostics >> Trace Route](#)

### Trace Route



#### Trace through

Use the drop down list to choose the WAN interface that you want to ping through or choose **Unspecified** to be determined by the router automatically.



#### Protocol

Choose a protocol (ICMP or UDP) for such route.

#### Host/IP Address

It indicates the IP address of the host.

#### Run

Click this button to start route tracing work.

#### Clear

Click this link to remove the result on the window.

This page is left blank.

# Chapter 6: Trouble Shooting

---

This section will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration. Please follow sections below to check your basic installation status stage by stage.

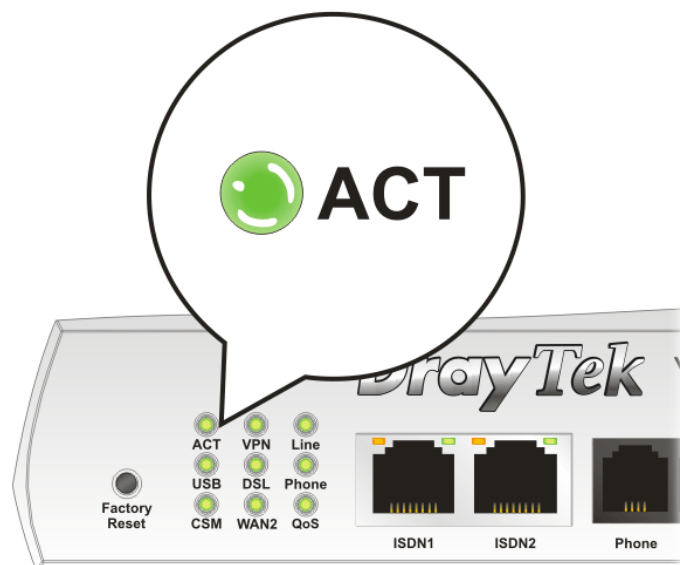
- Checking if the hardware status is OK or not.
- Checking if the network connection settings on your computer are OK or not.
- Pinging the router from your computer.
- Checking if the ISP settings are OK or not.
- Backing to factory default setting if necessary.

If all above stages are done and the router still cannot run normally, it is the time for you to contact your dealer for advanced help.

## 6.1 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not

Follow the steps below to verify the hardware status.

1. Check the power line and WLAN/LAN cable connections.  
Refer to “**1.3 Hardware Installation**” for details.
2. Turn on the router. Make sure the **ACT LED** blink once per second and the correspondent **LAN LED** is bright.



3. If not, it means that there is something wrong with the hardware status. Simply back to “**1.3 Hardware Installation**” to execute the hardware installation again. And then, try again.

## 6.2 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not

Sometimes the link failure occurs due to the wrong network connection settings. After trying the above section, if the link is still failed, please do the steps listed below to make sure the network connection settings is OK.

### For Windows

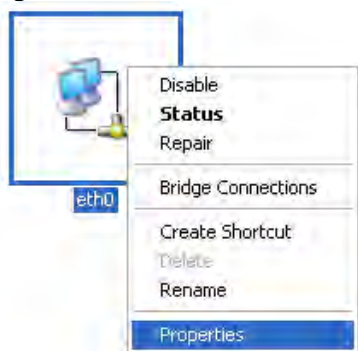


The example is based on Windows XP. As to the examples for other operation systems, please refer to the similar steps or find support notes in [www.draytek.com](http://www.draytek.com).

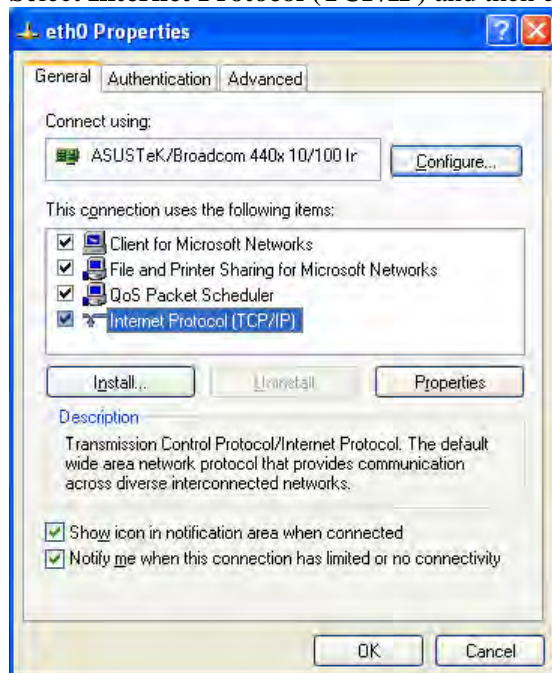
1. Go to **Control Panel** and then double-click on **Network Connections**.



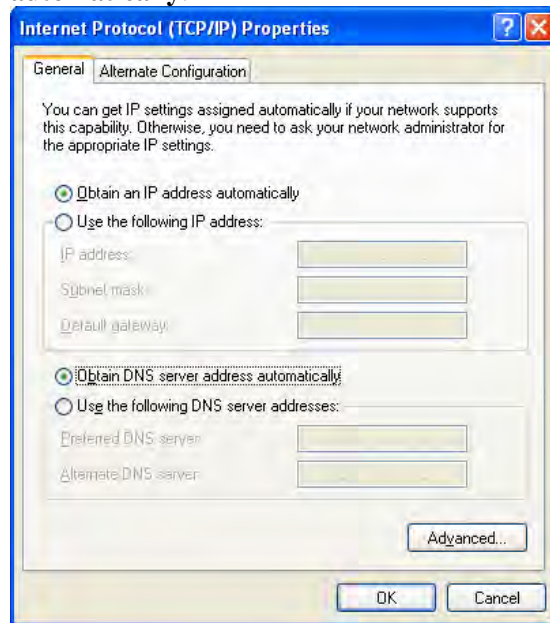
2. Right-click on **Local Area Connection** and click on **Properties**.



3. Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** and then click **Properties**.

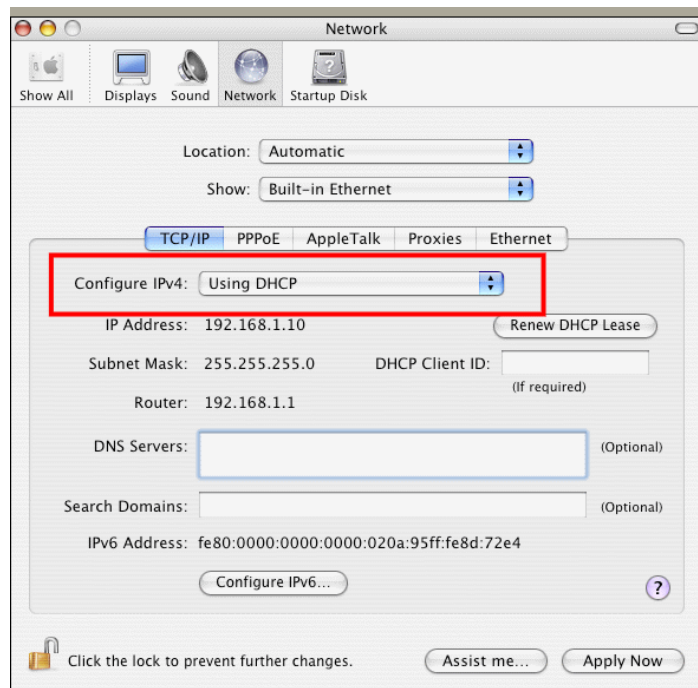


4. Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server address automatically**.



### For MacOs

1. Double click on the current used MacOs on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Network**.
3. On the **Network** screen, select **Using DHCP** from the drop down list of Configure IPv4.



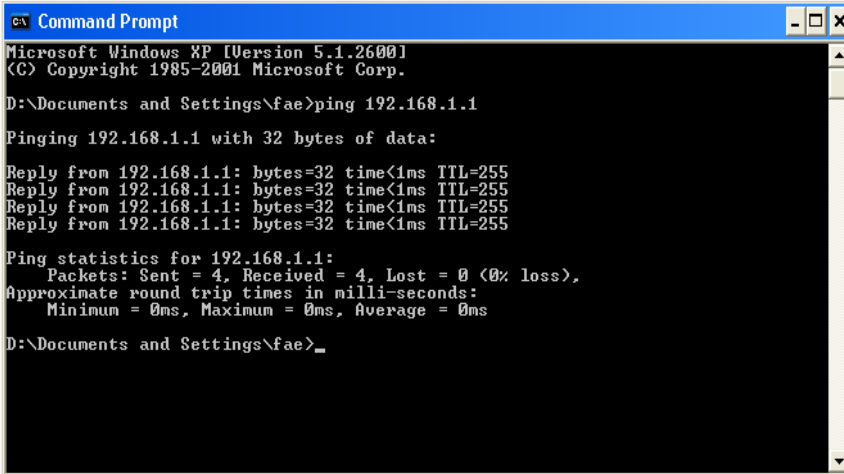
## 6.3 Pinging the Router from Your Computer

The default gateway IP address of the router is 192.168.1.1. For some reason, you might need to use “ping” command to check the link status of the router. **The most important thing is that the computer will receive a reply from 192.168.1.1.** If not, please check the IP address of your computer. We suggest you setting the network connection as **get IP automatically**. (Please refer to the section 6.2)

Please follow the steps below to ping the router correctly.

### For Windows

1. Open the **Command Prompt** window (from **Start menu> Run**).
2. Type **command** (for Windows 95/98/ME) or **cmd** (for Windows NT/ 2000/XP/Vista). The DOS command dialog will appear.



```

C:\ Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows XP [Version 5.1.2600]
(C) Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>ping 192.168.1.1

Pinging 192.168.1.1 with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 192.168.1.1: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255

Ping statistics for 192.168.1.1:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

D:\Documents and Settings\fae>_

```

3. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of **“Reply from 192.168.1.1:bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255”** will appear.
4. If the line does not appear, please check the IP address setting of your computer.

### For MacOs (Terminal)

1. Double click on the current used MacOs on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Utilities**.
3. Double click **Terminal**. The Terminal window will appear.
4. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of **“64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp\_seq=0 ttl=255 time=xxxx ms”** will appear.



```
Terminal - bash - 80x24
Last login: Sat Jan  3 02:24:18 on ttys1
Welcome to Darwin!
Vigor10:~ draytek$ ping 192.168.1.1
PING 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.755 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.697 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.716 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.731 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.72 ms
^C
--- 192.168.1.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.697/0.723/0.755 ms
Vigor10:~ draytek$
```

## 6.4 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not

Click **WAN>> Internet Access** and then check whether the ISP settings are set correctly. Click WAN1 or WAN2 link to review the settings that you configured previously.

[WAN >> Internet Access](#)

### Internet Access

| Index                | Display Name | Physical Mode | Config Information   |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------|--|
| <a href="#">WAN1</a> |              | ADSL          | Channel: 1, VPI: 0, VCI: 33, Protocol: PPPoE/LLC/SNAP, Modulation: Multimode, Dynamic IP |
| <a href="#">WAN2</a> |              | Ethernet      | IP Address: 172.16.3.229, Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0, Gateway IP: 172.16.3.4               |

### For PPPoE Users

1. Check if the **Enable** option is selected.
2. Check if **Username** and **Password** are entered with correct values that you **got from** your **ISP**.

[WAN >> Internet Access](#)

### WAN 1

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>PPPoE / PPPoA</b>  | <b>MPoA (RFC1483/2684)</b>   |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable |  |
| <b>DSL Modem Settings</b>   |  |
| Multi-PVC channel   | Channel 1  |
| VPI   | 8  |
| VCI   | 35   |
| Encapsulating Type  | VC MUX   |
| Protocol  | PPPoA  |
| Modulation  | Multimode  |
| <b>PPPoE Pass-through</b>   |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> For Wired LAN                                |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> For Wireless LAN                             |  |
| <b>ISDN Dial Backup Setup</b>   |  |
| Dial Backup Mode  | None   |
| <b>WAN Connection Detection</b>                                       |  |
| Mode  | ARP Detect   |
| Ping IP   |  |
| TTL:  |  |
| <b>ISP Access Setup</b>   |  |
| Username  |  |
| Password  |  |
| PPP Authentication  | PAP or CHAP  |
| Idle Timeout  | -1 second(s)   |
| <b>IP Address From ISP</b> <a href="#">WAN IP Alias</a>               |  |
| Fixed IP  | <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP) |
| Fixed IP Address  |  |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address                  |  |
| <input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address                           |  |
| MAC Address: 00 . 50 . 7F . 94 . E7 . 81                              |  |
| Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:                        |  |
| => , , ,  |  |

OK

Cancel

## For MPoA Users

1. Check if the **Enable** option is selected.

**WAN 1**

**PPPoE / PPPoA** | **MPoA (RFC1483/2684)**

☒ Enable ☐ Disable

---

**DSL Modem Settings**

Multi-PVC channel: Channel 2

Encapsulation: 1483 Bridged IP LLC

VPI: 8

VCI: 88

Modulation: Multimode

---

**ISDN Dial Backup Setup**

Dial Backup Mode: None

---

**WAN Connection Detection**

Mode: ARP Detect

Ping IP:

TTL:

---

**RIP Protocol**

☐ Enable RIP

---

**Bridge Mode**

☐ Enable Bridge Mode

---

**WAN IP Network Settings** WAN IP Alias

☐ Obtain an IP address automatically

Router Name: \*

Domain Name: \*

\* : Required for some ISPs

☒ **Specify an IP address**

IP Address: 172.16.3.229

Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

Gateway IP Address: 172.16.3.4

---

☒ Default MAC Address

☐ Specify a MAC Address

MAC Address: 00 . 50 . 7F . 94 . E7 . 81

---

**DNS Server IP Address**

Primary IP Address:

Secondary IP Address:

OK Cancel

2. Check if **DSL Modem Settings** is set appropriately.

Check if **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask** and **Gateway** are set correctly (must identify with the values from your ISP) if you choose **Specify an IP address**.

## For Static/Dynamic IP Users

1. Check if the **Enable** option is selected.
2. Check if **IP address**, **Subnet Mask** and **Gateway** are entered with correct values that you **got from your ISP**.

WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 2**

| PPPoE   | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP  |
|---|----------------------|--|
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable   |                      |  |
| <b>ISDN Dial Backup Setup</b><br>Dial Backup Mode: <span>None</span>  |                      |  |
| <b>Keep WAN Connection</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable PING to keep alive<br>PING to the IP: <input type="text"/><br>PING Interval: <span>0</span> minute(s) |                      |  |
| <b>WAN Connection Detection</b><br>Mode: <span>ARP Detect</span><br>Ping IP: <input type="text"/><br>TTL: <input type="text"/>                                      |                      |  |
| <b>RIP Protocol</b><br><input type="checkbox"/> Enable RIP  |                      |  |
|   |                      | <b>WAN IP Network Settings</b> <span>WAN IP Alias</span><br><input type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically<br>Router Name: <input type="text"/> *<br>Domain Name: <input type="text"/> *<br>*: Required for some ISPs<br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Specify an IP address<br>IP Address: <span>172.16.3.229</span><br>Subnet Mask: <span>255.255.0.0</span><br>Gateway IP Address: <span>172.16.3.4</span> |
|   |                      | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default MAC Address<br><input type="radio"/> Specify a MAC Address<br>MAC Address: <span>00</span> <span>.50</span> <span>.7F</span> <span>:94</span> <span>.F7</span> <span>.82</span>   |
|   |                      | <b>DNS Server IP Address</b><br>Primary IP Address: <input type="text"/><br>Secondary IP Address: <input type="text"/>   |

OK Cancel

## For PPTP Users

1. Check if the **Enable** option for **PPTP Link** is selected.

WAN >> Internet Access

**WAN 2**

| PPPoE   | Static or Dynamic IP | PPTP/L2TP  |
|---|----------------------|--|
| <input type="radio"/> Enable PPTP <input type="radio"/> Enable L2TP <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable  |                      |  |
| Server Address: <input type="text"/><br>Specify Gateway IP Address: <input type="text"/>  |                      |  |
| <b>ISP Access Setup</b><br>Username: <input type="text"/><br>Password: <input type="text"/><br>Index(1-15) in <a href="#">Schedule</a> Setup:<br>=> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> |                      |  |
| <b>ISDN Dial Backup Setup</b><br>Dial Backup Mode: <span>None</span>  |                      |  |
|   |                      | <b>PPP Setup</b><br>PPP Authentication: <span>PAP or CHAP</span><br>Idle Timeout: <span>-1</span> second(s)<br><b>IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)</b><br><span>WAN IP Alias</span><br>Fixed IP: <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No (Dynamic IP)<br>Fixed IP Address: <input type="text"/> |
|   |                      | <b>WAN IP Network Settings</b><br><input checked="" type="radio"/> Obtain an IP address automatically<br><input type="radio"/> Specify an IP address<br>IP Address: <input type="text"/><br>Subnet Mask: <input type="text"/>  |

OK Cancel

2. Check if **PPTP Server, Username, Password** and **WAN IP address** are set correctly (must identify with the values from your ISP).

## 6.5 Problems for 3G Network Connection

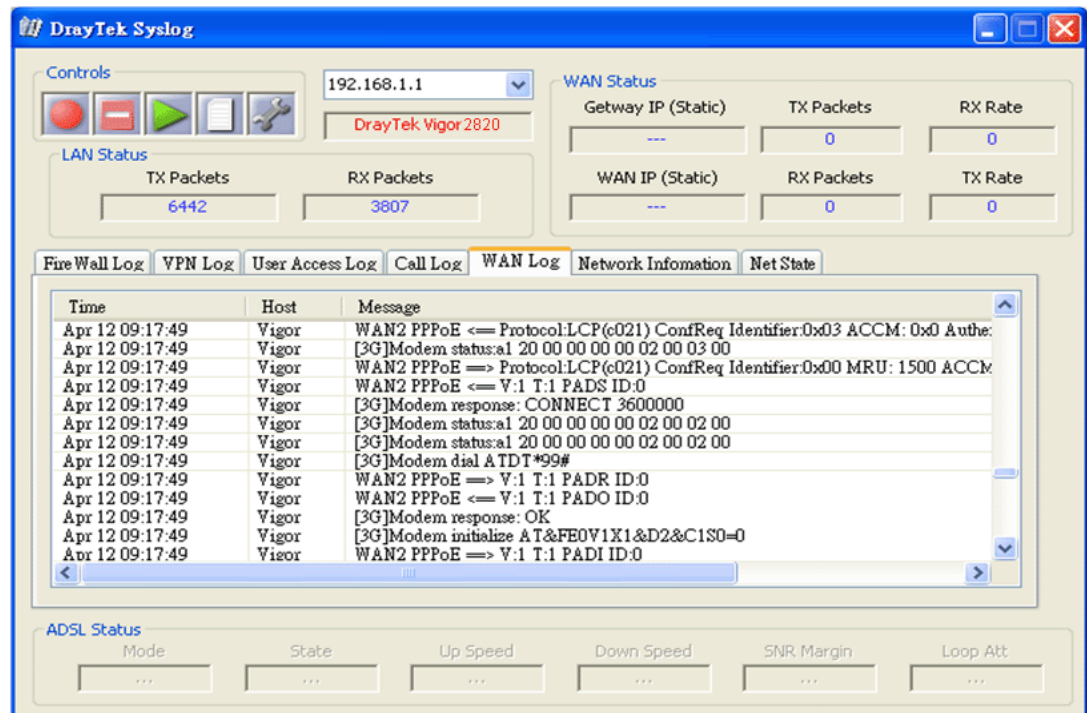
When you have trouble in using 3G network transmission, please check the following:

### Check if USB LED lights on or off

You have to wait about 15 seconds after inserting 3G USB Modem into your Vigor2820. Later, the USB LED will light on which means the installation of USB Modem is successful. If the USB LED does not light on, please remove and reinsert the modem again. If it still fails, restart Vigor2820.

### USB LED lights on but the network connection does not work

Check the PIN Code of SIM card is disabled or not. Please use the utility of 3G USB Modem to disable PIN code and try again. If it still fails, it might be the compliance problem of system. Please open DrayTek Syslog Tool to capture the connection information (WAN Log) and send the page (similar to the following graphic) to the service center of DrayTek.



### Transmission Rate is not fast enough

Please connect your Notebook with 3G USB Modem to test the connection speed to verify if the problem is caused by VigorIPPBX 2820. In addition, please refer to the manual of 3G USB Modem for LED Status to make sure if the modem connects to Internet via HSDPA mode. If you want to use the modem indoors, please put it on the place near the window to obtain better signal receiving.

## 6.6 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary

Sometimes, a wrong connection can be improved by returning to the default settings. Try to reset the router by software or hardware.



**Warning:** After pressing **factory default setting**, you will lose all settings you did before. Make sure you have recorded all useful settings before you pressing. The password of factory default is null.

### Software Reset

You can reset the router to factory default via Web page.

Go to **System Maintenance** and choose **Reboot System** on the web page. The following screen will appear. Choose **Using factory default configuration** and click **OK**. After few seconds, the router will return all the settings to the factory settings.

[System Maintenance >> Reboot System](#)

#### Reboot System

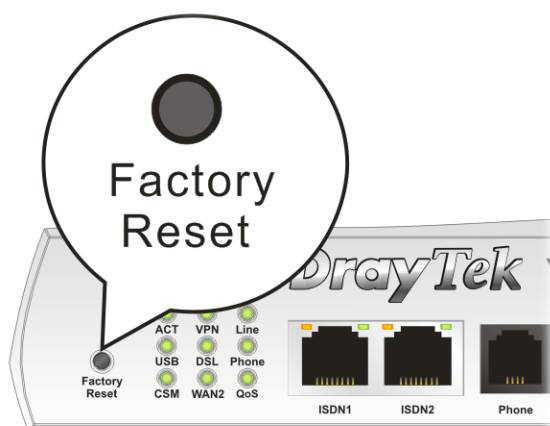
Do you want to reboot your router ?

- ☒ Using current configuration
- ☐ Using factory default configuration

OK

### Hardware Reset

While the router is running (ACT LED blinking), press the **Factory Reset** button and hold for more than 5 seconds. When you see the **ACT** LED blinks rapidly, please release the button. Then, the router will restart with the default configuration.



After restore the factory default setting, you can configure the settings for the router again to fit your personal request.

## 6.7 Contacting Your Dealer

If the router still cannot work correctly after trying many efforts, please contact your dealer for further help right away. For any questions, please feel free to send e-mail to [support@draytek.com](mailto:support@draytek.com).

# Appendix: Hardware Specifications

---

|                        |                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| Temperature            | Operating : 0°C ~ 45°C       |
|                        | Storage : -25°C ~ 70°C       |
| Humidity               | 10% ~ 90% ( non-condensing ) |
| Max. Power Consumption | 10 Watt                      |
| Dimension              | L241 * W165 * H44 ( mm )     |
| Power                  | DC 12V ~ 15V                 |